

# A SCHOOL HISTORY

OF

# ENGLAND

BY  
HARMON B. NIVER, A.M.

Teacher in New York City Public Schools

*REVISED*



AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY  
NEW YORK CINCINNATI CHICAGO  
BOSTON ATLANTA

**COPYRIGHT, 1904, BY  
HARMON B. NIVER.**

---

**Entered at Stationers' Hall, London**

---

**COPYRIGHT, 1922, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY**

---

**Niv. Sch. Hist. Eng. Rev.  
E. P. 1**

---

**MADE IN U. S. A.**

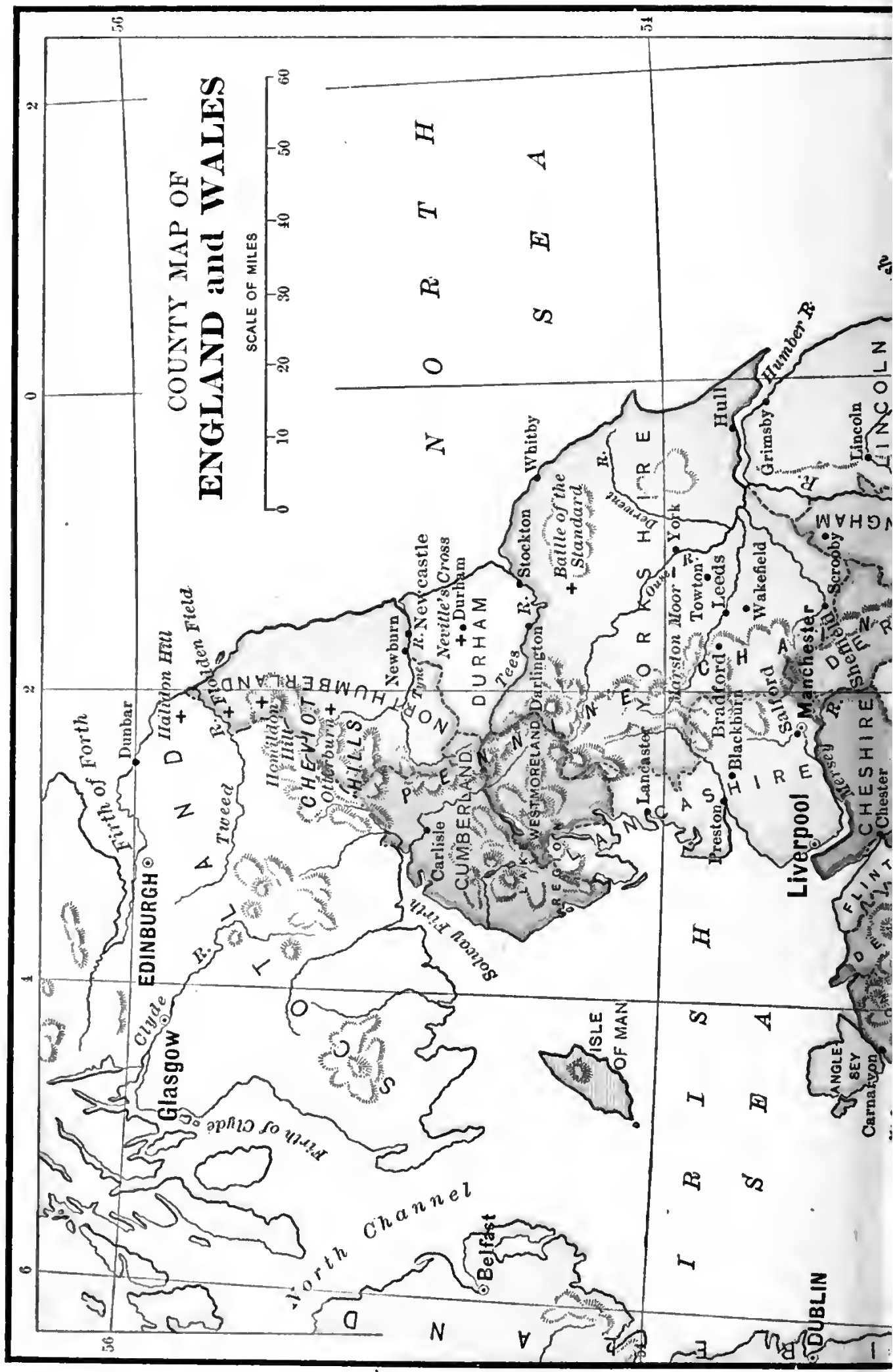
## PREFACE.

---

THE purpose of this book is to furnish a narrative history of England for use in the higher grades of the elementary schools. It traces not only the growth of those principles of liberty and self-government which are the common heritage of the Anglo-Saxon race, but also the gradual development of the British Empire and its rise to the front rank of the world's manufacturing and commercial powers.

In the selection of materials an attempt has been made to excite an interest that shall stimulate the pupil to a search for further knowledge. To this end there is given, in the appendix, a list of books easily accessible, some of which should be in every class-room where English history is taught. It is a good rule never to read less than two accounts of the same event. This provides training in comparison, discrimination, and judgment, thereby accomplishing the main objects of historical study. The questions and topics for home reading that are appended to each section are intended to encourage independent thought and to supplement the work of the class-room.

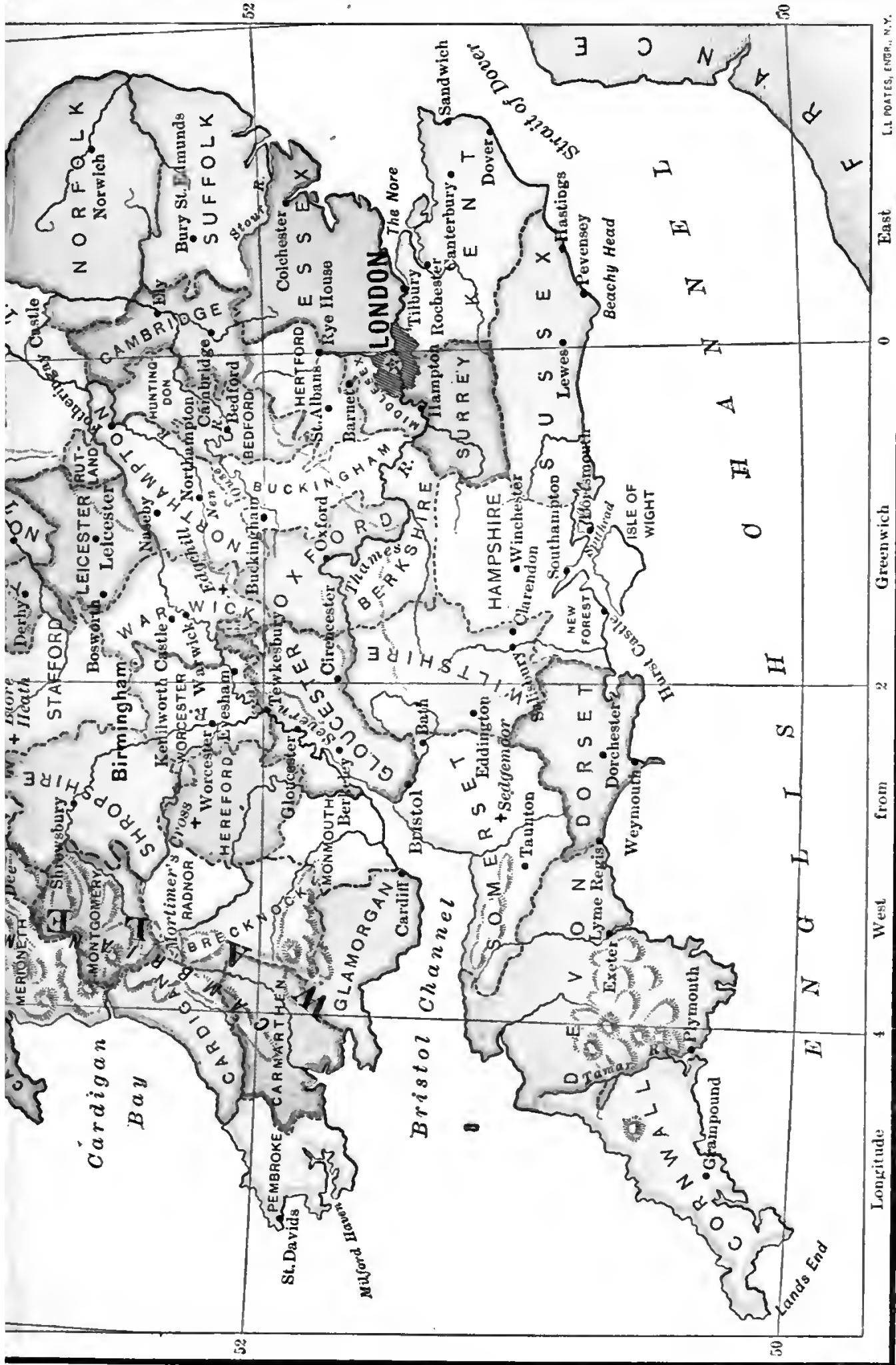
The pupil should not be asked to memorize paragraphs, but to discover the topics of which they treat, and to expand these in his own language. If this practice is persevered in, he will soon acquire facility in the process of gathering ideas from the printed page, and in writing and talking about them afterward. The possession of such power is the basis of all historical study.



COUNTY MAP OF  
ENGLAND and WALES

SCALE OF MILES  
0 10 20 30 40 50 60





L.I. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

# CONTENTS.

---

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. BRITAIN BEFORE 449 A.D. . . . .	9
II. ANGLO-SAXON ENGLAND . . . . .	26
III. ENGLAND UNDER NORMAN KINGS . . . . .	56
IV. THE EARLY PLANTAGENET KINGS . . . . .	75
V. THE LATER PLANTAGENET KINGS . . . . .	102
VI. THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK . . . . .	133
VII. THE HOUSE OF TUDOR . . . . .	156
VIII. THE STUART KINGS AND CROMWELL . . . . .	203
IX. THE STUART KINGS AND ORANGE . . . . .	242
X. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER (1714-1763) . . . . .	284
XI. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER (1763-1837) . . . . .	308
XII. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER (1837 —) . . . . .	359
Appendix: Chronological Table . . . . .	i
Books for Reference . . . . .	ix
Index . . . . .	x

## GENEALOGICAL TABLES.

Kings of England . . . 37, 48, 56, 75, 102, 133, 146, 156, 203, 284

## PRINCIPAL MAPS.

<p>County Map of England and Wales . . . . . 6, 7</p> <p>Roman Britain . . . . . 24</p> <p>Britain in 584, during the Anglo-Saxon Conquest . . 30</p> <p>England in 878, after the treaty of Wedmore . . . 42</p> <p>Dominions of Henry II. . . . 76</p> <p>Scotland . . . . . 106</p> <p>France in the Hundred Years' War : . . . . 114</p>	<p>England in Wars of the Roses . . . . . 144</p> <p>Europe in the Sixteenth Century . . . . . 164</p> <p>England in the Civil War . . 226</p> <p>Ireland . . . . . 232</p> <p>India . . . . . 298</p> <p>Eastern North America in 1754 . . . . . 303</p> <p>Europe in 1795 . . . . . 326</p> <p>The British Empire . . 400, 401</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

# A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

## I. BRITAIN BEFORE 449 A. D.

### A. EARLY BRITAIN.

**The English Race** to-day occupies or controls a fourth of the land surface of the globe. Four hundred years ago, it held only part of the island of Great Britain. We are to learn in this book how the English have gone out from their island home into foreign countries to plant colonies and to build up the British Empire.

Britain, in the earliest times, was a forest wilderness inhabited by savage tribes. We shall study the changes by which it has become a manufacturing and commercial country, the seat of great cities, and the home of wealth and learning.

**We Study English History** because our history has been so closely related with that of England. The thirteen American colonies were settled chiefly by English people, who brought from the mother country their language, customs, laws, and forms of government. English history, therefore, includes the early history of our own nation. If we seek to know why the American people elect their own rulers and make their own laws, we shall find one answer in the fact that the savage Angles and Saxons of the North German forests did these very things. When they settled in Britain and became Englishmen, we find them still governing their own towns, voting taxes, and electing the king.

Under the strong rule of some of their kings, the people lost their power for a time; but they succeeded in getting back what they had lost. King John was compelled to grant the Great Charter, assuring to the people many of the rights and liberties that we enjoy to-day. The spirit of liberty and independence has triumphed over every attempt at tyranny, until we have now in both England and America what Abraham Lincoln called "a government of the people, for the people, and by the people."



EUROPE IN EARLY TIMES.

**The British Isles**, consisting of two large islands and many smaller ones, are separated from the mainland of Europe by a narrow but stormy and dangerous channel. This channel has often served as a defense against enemies, and has enabled the English to live in their own way without being disturbed by many of the wars in Europe. Shakespeare, in his play "Richard II.," calls his country

"This royal throne of kings, this sceptered isle,  
This fortress, built by Nature for herself,  
Against infection and the hand of war;  
This happy breed of men, this little world,  
This precious stone set in the silver sea,  
Which serves it in the office of a wall,  
Or as a moat defensive to a house,  
Against the envy of less happier lands;  
This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England."

The islands belong to the class known as "continental islands," inasmuch as they were once joined to the mainland of Europe. The sea cliffs of Dover and Calais are made of the same white, chalky material, and the strait between them is less than two hundred feet deep.

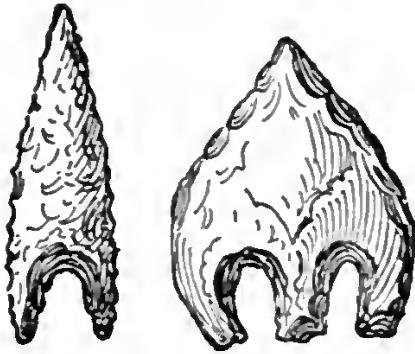
On the bottom of the shallow seas surrounding Britain are often found the bones of the same kinds of land animals whose remains have been dug up on the neighboring coasts. These animals could not have crossed by water from the continent to Britain, so we must believe that the British islands were once part of the mainland.

The mild climate and the natural resources of Great Britain have well fitted it to become the home of a great and progressive nation. Navigable rivers lead well into the interior, and the mountains contain vast supplies of coal, iron, copper, and tin. The upper waters of the rivers are rapid enough to turn the wheels of mills, and the deep and numerous estuaries along the coast afford safe harbors.

**The Earliest Races in Britain** made no written records. We can judge of their character only by the tools and weapons which they have left. In the gravel washed down by rivers, in shell heaps along the coast, and in caves where these early savages made their homes, are found rude pottery, stone knives, scrapers, arrow and spear heads, and axes. Some of these implements were roughly shaped by strik-

ing one stone upon another; others were ground into more exact form to be used with handles.

**The Stone Age.** The races that lived upon the earth before written history begins are named according to the works that they have left. Thus we have in Britain an "Age of Rough Stone," an "Age of Polished Stone," and an "Age of Bronze."



ROUGH STONE  
ARROWHEADS.

It is plain from the nature of their tools and weapons that the men of the Rough Stone Age were rude savages who lived by hunting and fishing, and on plants, berries, and roots. Their homes were caves, where we still find their skeletons mingled with the remains of animals that were killed for food.

The savage of the Polished Stone Age made a hut by digging a hole in the earth and roofing it



POLISHED STONE AX.

with boughs of trees covered with slabs of baked clay. He tamed animals, cultivated the soil, and made rude pottery and coarse cloth. He had some idea of religion and a future life, since we find in the mounds, or "barrows," where he buried his dead, weapons, tools, and various dishes for food and drink, which it was supposed would be needed after death. The men of



POTTERY FROM STONE AGE.

this age were warlike. The earlier savage with his club and flint knife retreated before the newcomer with his bow and arrow, spear, and ax. The savages of this later Stone Age used rafts and canoes. We

think, therefore, that Britain was probably separated from the mainland at this time.

**The Celtic Race**, a more civilized people, then came, armed with weapons of bronze. Many centuries before the birth of Christ, the Celts, fair-haired and taller than the earlier race, spread over western Europe. They had learned to smelt copper and tin, of which bronze is made, and to mold spear-heads and axes. Celtic tribes called Gaels crossed into the British Isles and overcame the natives there, establishing themselves in clans or villages under chiefs. Later Celtic tribes called Britons, coming into



BRONZE AX ; LATER  
CELTIC PERIOD.

“Albion,” as Britain was then named, pressed the Gaels westward into Ireland and northward into Scotland, keeping the central and southeastern parts of Britain for themselves.

It is in the time of these later Celtic tribes that the earliest written mention was made of the British Isles. Greek historians and geographers wrote of them as the “Tin Islands,” three or four hundred years before Christ. The tin mines in Cornwall were worked by the Phœnicians in the days of King Solomon and of Hiram, King of Tyre. The Phœnicians kept secret the source from which they obtained the metal. A ship belonging to Carthage, a Phœnician colony, was once followed by a Roman captain who wished to learn the location of the mines. But the Carthaginian captain ran his vessel ashore on the coast of Gaul and wrecked it rather than reveal the secret.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How does commerce help to civilize a nation?
2. Why are savage races more warlike than civilized ones?
3. What are continental islands?
4. How do we learn about nations who have left no written records?
5. Distinguish savage, barbarous, semicivilized, and civilized nations.



## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. **THE TIN MINES OF BRITAIN.** Lee, *Source Book of English History*, pp. 70-72; Colby, *Selections from the Sources of English History*, pp. 3-6.
2. **REMAINS OF EARLY RACES IN BRITAIN.** Gardiner, *Student's History of England*, pp. 1-10; Creasy, *Rise and Progress of the English Constitution*, Ch. II.

## B. THE ROMANS IN BRITAIN, 55 B. C. TO 410 A. D.

**Julius Caesar**, the great Roman general, has given us the best information that we have of the early Britons. The



JULIUS CÆSAR.

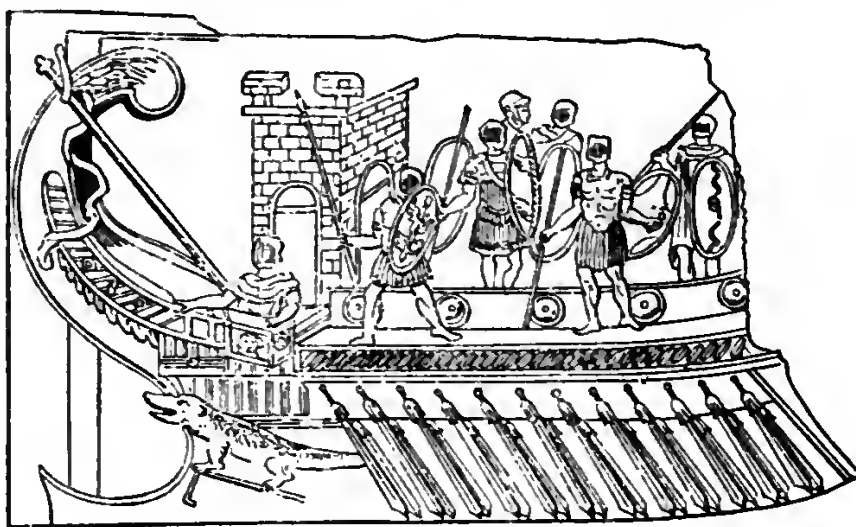
Romans of his time ruled most of the countries bordering on the Mediterranean Sea, and were the greatest civilizing nation in the world. Cæsar was made governor of the Roman provinces near the Alps, and in four years he conquered the Gauls and extended the Roman rule throughout their country from the Alps to the English Channel.

**The First Invasion of Britain.** The Gauls, like the Britons, were of the Celtic race, and in the wars with Cæsar the Britons had come to the help of their relatives south of the Channel. Cæsar resolved to teach the Britons that it was dangerous to oppose the Romans. He was an author as well as a general, and wrote an account of his wars in Gaul and Britain. He tells us in this book that in the year 55 B. C. he set sail with ten thousand men and about a hundred ships, and approached the white cliffs of Dover. He found the heights crowned with multitudes of armed Britons, who with loud cries and threatening gestures opposed his landing. As the coast was rocky, he sailed eight miles eastward, to a sandy beach that offered an easy approach. The Britons followed



along the coast with their war chariots and horses. Great numbers of them, armed with bronze axes, spears, and bows and arrows, tried to prevent the Romans from reaching the shore. Here is Cæsar's account of the landing:

"While our men were hesitating on account of the depth of the sea, he who carried the eagle of the tenth legion cried out, 'Leap, fellow-sol-



ROMAN WAR SHIP.

diers, unless you wish to betray your eagle to the enemy. I for my part will perform my duty to the republic and my general.' When he had said this with a loud voice, he leaped from the ship and carried the standard toward the enemy. Then our men, urging one another not to bring disgrace upon the army, all leaped from the ship. When those in the nearest vessels saw them, they speedily followed and approached the enemy. The battle was fought vigorously on both sides." The Britons on horseback attacked the invaders as they were wading through the water, but the Romans made their way to the shore, and as soon as they got a firm footing on dry ground, they put the Britons to flight.

The Britons were so much impressed by the bravery of the Romans that in a day or two they sent envoys to ask for peace. This Cæsar was ready to grant, but he demanded, as a pledge for their good behavior in the future, that some of their chiefs remain in his camp. Some hostages were given at once, but the Britons explained that others were in distant parts of the country, and it would take a few days to bring them.

In the mean time, misfortunes came upon the Romans. The ships containing the cavalry were driven back to Gaul by a storm; some of the vessels on the shore were wrecked by the high tides; and the Britons attacked and killed some of the soldiers sent out to collect food. A large force of Britons also gathered near the Roman camp. Cæsar made a vigorous attack on them, and pursued them to one of their villages, which he burned. Again came envoys to the Roman camp, asking peace. Cæsar again granted it, but asked for twice as many hostages as before. He did not wait to receive them, however, but returned hastily to Gaul. He had accomplished little during his three weeks' stay in Britain, and had not advanced more than a mile from the shore.

**The Second Invasion.** During the winter Cæsar gathered a large force of soldiers, and in July of the following year came sailing toward the British coast with eight hundred ships carrying 25,000 foot soldiers and 2,000 horsemen. When the Britons near the coast saw this great fleet approaching, they fled in terror. The Romans landed, and pursued the enemy to a fort in which they had taken refuge. This was a woodland surrounded by a wall of earth and a deep ditch. Caesar captured the fort and afterwards fought many battles with the Britons, but did not do them any serious injury.

The Britons were led by a famous chief, Caswallon, or "Cassivelaunus" as the Romans wrote his name. Seeing the superiority of the Roman soldiers, he prudently retreated when the battle went against him. This chief had subdued many of the neighboring tribes, who now, in the hope of regaining their freedom, joined the Romans. Five of these tribes went with Cæsar to attack Caswallon's town north of the Thames. This they captured with a great number of cattle, which was the chief wealth of the Britons. Caswallon now surrendered to Cæsar, gave him a large number of hos-

tages, and promised, in addition to paying a yearly tribute, not to molest the tribes who had made friends with the Romans.

As some of the tribes in Gaul had revolted, Cæsar soon re-crossed the Channel, thinking that he had sufficiently frightened the Britons to prevent their sending any more help to his foes in Gaul.

**Caesar's Account of the Britons** shows that he was a careful observer. "The people are numerous," he says, "beyond all counting, and their buildings very numerous; the number of their cattle is great. They use brass or iron rings, of a fixed weight, for money. Tin is produced in the interior regions, and iron along the seacoast; but the quantity of it is small. They have timber of every description, except the beech and fir. The climate is more temperate than in Gaul. Most of the inland inhabitants do not sow grain, but live on milk and flesh, and are clad with skins. All the Britons dye themselves with woad, which makes a bluish color, and gives them a terrible appearance in fight. They wear their hair long and shave all the body except the head and upper lip."

But what astonished Cæsar most was their manner of fighting, and their courage and daring in battle. If their weapons and discipline had been equal to those of the Romans, Cæsar might not have been able even to make a landing upon their shores. Each Briton had a long sword and a dagger, made of copper or bronze, and carried a small round shield of wickerwork covered with raw hide. But the bronze weapons were not very sharp, and would bend easily. On the other hand, the Roman carried a short two-edged sword of tempered Spanish steel, and a spear



ROMAN SOLDIER.

about six feet in length, tipped with a long steel point. For defensive armor, he wore a steel helmet, breastplate, and armor for the legs, and carried a light but strong shield large enough to protect the whole body. The Roman army was trained to perfect obedience to a single leader, while the Britons were



BRITISH WAR CHARIOT.

led by separate chiefs who often were at war with one another and were not willing to unite against the common enemy.

**The War Chariots** were the most effective part of the Britons' equipment.

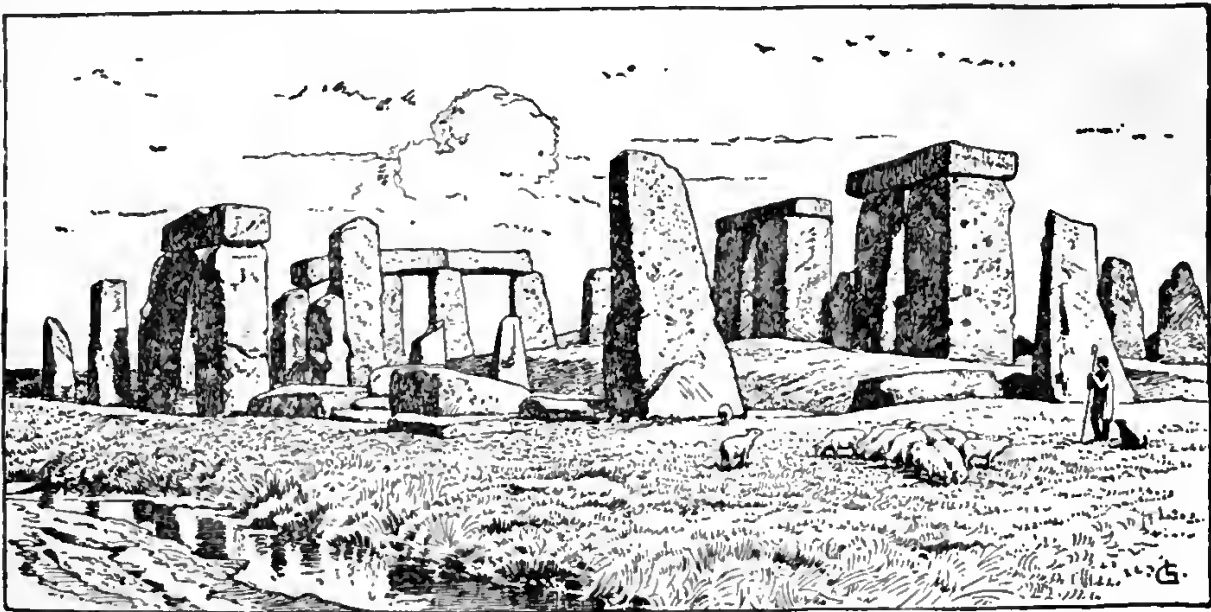
These were broad, low, two-wheeled carts, which would carry a driver and several warriors. Long, hooked scythes were fastened to the axles or corners, and stuck out on both sides. The horses were so well trained that they could be driven at furious speed over the roughest ground and into the ranks of the enemy, cutting down everything that came near them. The warriors, who wore no armor, would leap down and fight skillfully on foot, while the chariot was driven off to one side. If they were getting the worst of the fight, they would run swiftly to the chariot and drive away again, while the Roman soldiers, burdened with heavy armor, could not follow.

**British Life and Industries.** The Briton built his home by setting rough logs on end for the walls, in the form of either a circle or a square. On these walls of logs, poles were placed for rafters and bound together at the top. A roof was made of interlacing boughs covered with rushes or turf. The fire was built upon the ground, and a hole in the roof allowed the smoke to escape. The family slept around the fire on beds of straw or rushes covered with skins.

The Britons knew little of navigation. The only craft

they used to any extent was the coracle, made by fastening the skins of animals to a frame of wickerwork. It is said that a few larger boats of oak were built, with skins for sails.

Like the American Indians, the Britons were fond of ornaments and bright-colored cloths. They obtained these things, as well as their weapons, from the Gauls in exchange for cattle and grain.



STONEHENGE: RUINS OF A DRUID TEMPLE.

**Religion; the Druids.** The Britons worshiped many gods, very much like those of the Romans. They had a god of war, a god of medicine, and gods of the trees, streams, and sky. Their religious teachers were called "Druids," from a word meaning "oak tree." The oak and the mistletoe were sacred to them. The Druids held their religious services in oak groves, and taught their pupils sitting at the foot of some gnarled old oak. They thought their war god could be pleased only by human sacrifices, so they would pen up a large number of men and women in a huge wicker cage and set it on fire. They taught that the soul is immortal, but that at death it passes into another body.

Cæsar tells us that the Druids were doctors and astronomers

as well as teachers and priests. They knew something about the use of plants in diseases, and had "much to say about the stars and their motions, about the size of the heavens and the earth, and about nature and the power of the gods."

There is a famous old ruin near Salisbury, in southern England, called "Stonehenge" or "the hanging stones," which is thought to be the remains of a meeting place of the Druids. It was open to the sky and composed of two circles of upright stone slabs with other stones laid across the tops of them.

**When Cæsar Returned** to Rome, there was great rejoicing over his successful wars in Gaul and Britain, and the Roman Senate ordered a grand festival of twenty days in his honor. There was also great rejoicing among the Britons at his departure, and you may be sure that the tribute Chief Caswallon promised to pay was never sent. After Cæsar had made himself master of the Roman Republic, he was murdered in the Senate Hall at Rome, and a great civil war arose between his friends and the friends of the old republic, which ended in making Rome an empire. The Romans were so busy with these and other matters at home, that it was nearly a century before they came again to Britain.

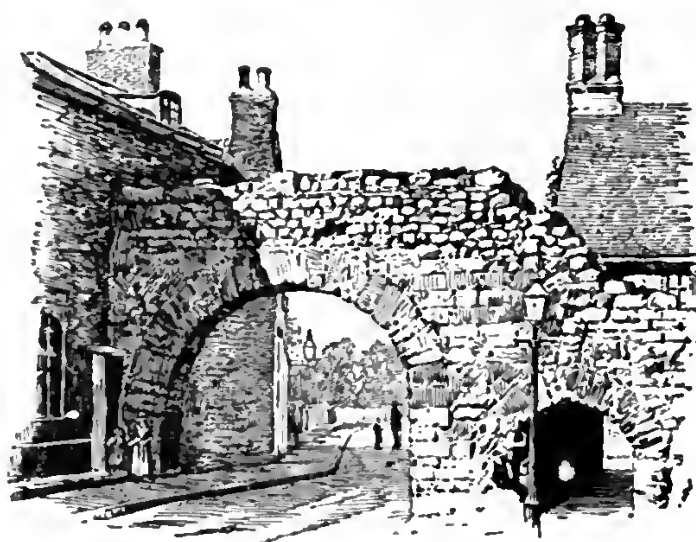
**The Third Roman Invasion** came in 43 A. D., under a general named Plautius, who was sent by the Emperor Claudius. Caradoc, or Caractacus, great-grandson of Caswallon, was then the ruling British chief. After nine years of bloody fighting, Caradoc was made prisoner, taken to Rome, and led in chains through the streets. As he saw the splendid buildings and the wealth of the capital city of the world, he exclaimed: "Strange that they who have such splendid possessions, should envy us our poor huts!" He was set at liberty by Claudius, but was not allowed to return to his native country.

It is said of the Romans that wherever they conquered, they



went to live, and so they now began to establish colonies in Britain. Colchester and London were settled by Roman soldiers, who built fine houses and temples, established Roman laws and government, and introduced the Latin language and the worship of the Roman gods. During the first century A. D. the Romans built nearly fifty walled cities in different parts of the country.

Soldiers were kept in them ready to check any attempt of the Britons to regain their freedom. You will find on the map of England many towns whose names end in "cester," "chester," or "coln," such as Gloucester, Winchester, and Lin-



ROMAN MASONRY AT LINCOLN.

coln. At every such place the Romans once had a settlement, for these endings come from the Latin word *castra*, meaning a military camp, and *colonia*, the word for colony.

Suetonius was a Roman general sent in 58 to govern Britain. He found that the Druids, who had gathered in their sacred groves on the island of Anglesey, were encouraging the young Britons to rise against the Romans and get back their freedom. So Suetonius landed on the island, put many to the sword, and burned numbers of Druids in their own altar fires. The Romans governed the people harshly and imposed heavy taxes, in order to get money to build fine houses, baths, and temples. But the poor Britons lived in mud hovels, and had to serve in the army and do all the hard work.

Boadicea, the widow of a British chief, was robbed of the property left her by her husband, and she and her daughters were shamefully scourged and abused. The English poet

William Cowper has described Boadicea's interview with a Druid:

“When the British warrior-queen,  
Bleeding from the Roman rods,  
Sought with an indignant mien  
Counsel of her country's gods,

“Sage, beneath a spreading oak,  
Sat the Druid, hoary chief,  
Every burning word he spoke  
Full of rage and full of grief.

“‘Rome shall perish,—write that word  
In the blood that she has spilt;  
Perish, hopeless and abhorred,  
Deep in ruin as in guilt.

“‘Rome, for empire far renowned,  
Tramples on a thousand states;  
Soon her pride shall kiss the ground—  
Hark! the Gaul is at her gates.’”

Boadicea roused the people by telling the story of her wrongs, and, gathering an army, attacked London and other Roman colonies. In a few days 70,000 Romans were slain. None were spared, but men, women, and children alike fell beneath the fury of the Britons.

Suetonius had hurried back from his massacre of the Druids at Anglesey, but was forced to leave London to its fate in order to save his army. He chose his battle ground on a great plain, with a forest in the rear, having 10,000 men in all. There he was attacked by the Britons, 120,000 strong, led by Queen Boadicea in her chariot. On the level ground, the discipline and superior arms of the Romans gave them the advantage. With solid ranks they charged wedge-like into the multitude before them, the cavalry and light troops spreading out in the rear and protecting the flanks. The Britons turned and fled in confusion. Countless wagons filled with women, who had come to witness a victory, blocked



the way, and 80,000 Britons were slain. Boadicea poisoned herself. The Roman conquest was assured.

**Results of Roman Conquest.** The revolt of the Britons resulted in securing better treatment from the Roman governors. Suetonius, who had allowed his officers to plunder the people, was at once recalled, and we hear no more of Roman injustice. The task of the Romans now was to secure the land against the marauders on the borders, especially the Gaelic tribes called Picts and Scots. The Picts made attacks from Scotland, and the Scots from Ireland (map, p. 24).

To keep off the northern invaders, the Roman governor Agricola built a chain of forts connecting the Clyde and the Forth in Scotland. The Emperor Hadrian visited Britain in 119 A. D. and, fearing that the Picts would break through Agricola's chain of forts, built a wall of earth between the Solway and the Tyne as a second line of defense. This was strengthened later by a wall of solid masonry, about eight feet wide and fifteen feet high, built just north of the earthen wall. This famous stone wall was 73 miles long. Parts of it still exist. Under the Emperor Antoninus another wall, of earth, was thrown up on the line of Agricola's forts.

In order to move their armies rapidly from place to place, the Romans built many roads, one extending the whole length of Hadrian's wall, and others connecting the various colonies and military camps. During the third century of Roman rule the eastern shore was troubled more and more by the attacks of the Saxons, who came over sea to plunder. To guard against their attacks, a watch tower and fort were built at every convenient landing, and placed under the command of a special officer who had the title "Count of the Saxon Shore."

**The Romans Leave Britain.** During the rule of the Romans, all these forts, walls, and military defenses of every sort were manned with soldiers. But the Germanic tribes, of which the Saxons were one, attacked the Roman Empire



CHIEF ROADS AND TOWNS OF ROMAN BRITAIN.

and finally overthrew it. In trying to defend Rome, the Emperors withdrew their troops from the outlying provinces. In 410, the last of the Romans left Britain, and never after that did they set foot on her soil.

During the Roman rule, Christianity took the place of pagan worship among the Britons. It was first brought to the island probably by soldiers and merchants who had been converted in Rome. After the Emperor Constantine (306-337) became a Christian, the new faith was spread rapidly as the religion of the Empire.

While the Britons learned much that was valuable from the Romans, they lost their warlike spirit and became dependent upon the leadership of others. And now, after the departure of the Roman garrisons, when their enemies began to swarm down upon them, they wrote to Aëtius, the commander of the Roman army, a beseeching letter which they called "The Groans of the Britons." "The barbarians," they said, "drive us into the sea; the sea drives us back to the barbarians; between them, we are exposed to two sorts of death; we are either slain or drowned." But no help could the Romans send them, and before long the fierce Saxons and their brother tribes ruled Roman and Briton alike.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did Cæsar show his skill as a general?
2. What was the Roman method of holding a conquered country?
3. Compare the Roman and British modes of fighting.
4. Compare the religion of the Britons with that of other heathen nations. What objects are usually worshiped by savage races?
5. What facts show the state of civilization among the Britons in the time of Cæsar? Contrast this with the Roman civilization.

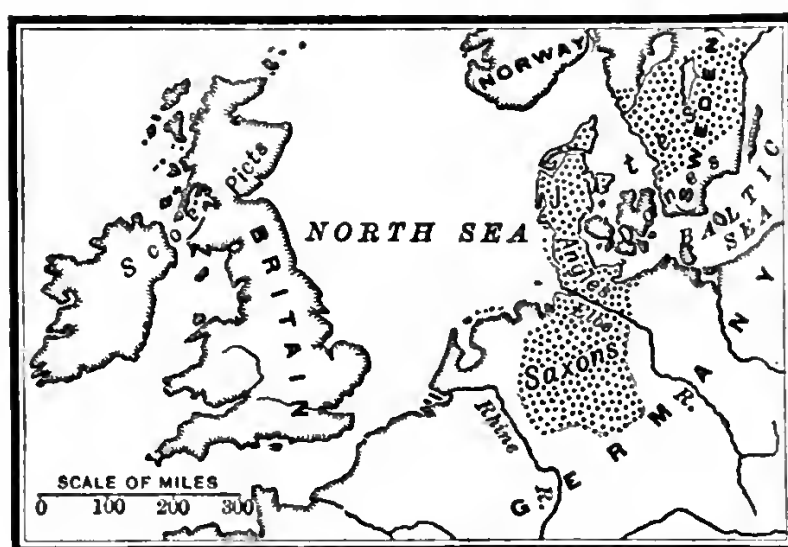
### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. ROMAN RULE IN BRITAIN. Henty, *Beric, the Briton*; Windle, *Life in Early Britain*.
2. COMPARE THE CIVILIZATION OF THE EARLY BRITONS WITH THAT OF THE AMERICAN INDIANS. Cæsar, *Gallic War*, Bk. IV., Ch. 30-37; C. W. Colby, *Sources of English History*, pp. 3-6.
3. BOADICEA. Church, *Stories from English History*, Ch. V.; Rolfe, *Tales from English History*, pp. 1-2.
4. THE DRUIDS. Church, *Early Britain*, pp. 7-10, 48-49; Harper's *Stories of English History*, pp. 3-6.

## II. ANGLO-SAXON ENGLAND, 449 - 1066.

### A. THE COMING OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

**Early Home and Customs.** The Britons and their neighbors, the Picts and Scots, belonged to the Celtic race. But



EARLY HOMES OF THE ENGLISH.

the Angles and Saxons, who invaded and conquered the land and laid the foundations of England, were of a different stock. They were Low Germans; that is, they lived in the *low* parts of Germany bordering on the North and Bal-

tic seas. They were much like the Dutch people of to-day in race and language.

We have learned that Cæsar wrote a description of the Britons. In like manner, a Roman historian, Tacitus, made a study of the German tribes, which is the best account we have of these ancestors of the English. He says that the Germans had no regular cities, but that each one settled by himself as "woodside, plain, or fresh spring attracted him." It was the custom of the chief to divide the land each year among his warriors, lest by living too long in one place they should become less hardy and active for war.

Each village, composed of independent farmers, was surrounded by a belt of waste land or forest. On the inside of this belt was a ditch and rude fence called the *tun*, from

which comes our word "town." This served as a fortification in case of war.

Within the village were three classes of people. The largest was the *ceorls*, or *churls*, described as the "free" men, or the "weaponed" men; for no free man, says Tacitus, "ever transacts business, public or private, unless fully armed." Another class was the *eorls*, or *earls*, who were of noble blood, and were held in great reverence. From this class, chiefs were



A SAXON HOME.

chosen in time of war, and rulers in time of peace. Besides these two classes there were in every village a small number of *thralls*, or slaves, who could be bought and sold at the master's pleasure. They were persons who had been captured in the frequent wars of those days, and who had not been ransomed.

When laws were to be made, or war entered upon, all the freemen assembled in a *tungemot* or town meeting. Says Tac-

itus, "Each man takes his place completely armed. Silence is proclaimed by the priests. The chief of the community opens the debate; the rest are heard in their turn, according to age, nobility of descent, renown in war, or fame for eloquence. If anything is advanced not agreeable to the people, they reject it with a general murmur. If any proposition pleases them, they flourish their spears, for this is their highest mark of applause, to praise by the sound of their arms."

These German tribes worshiped heathen gods, as taught by their priests and singers. The English names for four of the days of the week are derived from the names of some of their gods. Wednesday is the day of Woden, the great war-god, from whom the kings and chiefs claimed descent. Thursday is Thor's day; Friday is Freya's day; and Tuesday is named for Tiu, the god of death.

War was the chief occupation of these tribes. It was counted disgraceful to get anything by peaceful industry that could be obtained by war; and it was believed that the warrior who fell with his face to the foe was carried at once by the "war-maidens" to the great hall of Woden to enjoy an eternity of fighting and feasting in the company of heroes.

Cæsar tells of a German army which had conquered part of Gaul and which, according to its leader, *had not gone under a roof for fourteen years*. Cæsar drove this army back across the Rhine, for many years one of the boundaries of the Roman Empire; but in the end German strength and valor overcame even the Roman arms and discipline.

**How the Angles and Saxons came to Britain.** This is the story told by the Britons: "Vortigern, King of Kent, seeing that the Picts troubled him by land and the Saxons by sea, thought to himself, 'I shall do well if I can set these robbers, the one against the other.' So he said to Hengist, their chief, 'Let us make an alliance together'; and to this Hengist consented, and he made a feast to which he called

King Vortigern. Now Hengist had a daughter, Rowena, who was exceeding fair, and the maiden stood at the board and served the king with mead. When the king looked upon her, he loved her and he said to Hengist, for his reason had gone from him, 'Give me the maid to wife and I will give you the kingdom of Kent.' To this Hengist consented; but the nobles of the land would not have the stranger to rule over them. Therefore they put down Vortigern from his place and made Vortimer, his son, king in his stead. And Vortimer fought against Hengist and the Saxons till he drove them out of the land. Then for five years Hengist wandered over the sea in his ships. Vortimer died, and again Vortigern was made king. Then said Hengist to him, 'Give me the kingdom according to your promise.' Vortigern answered him, 'Let me ask counsel of my nobles.' So the nobles assembled themselves, three hundred in all, and for every British noble there was also a Saxon chief. And as they sat together, Hengist cried aloud, 'Draw your daggers!' As he spoke, each Saxon smote the Briton that sat next to him and slew him. So the three hundred fell in one day, all save King Vortigern; for him they spared by command of Hengist. And after this, the strangers held the land without further question."

Whether or not the strangers gained their first foothold through treachery, we do not know, but it is certain that they beat the Britons in many a fair fight afterward. It is also certain that the conquerors of Kent belonged to the tribe of Jutes, who were closely related to the Saxons. According to Saxon accounts, Vortigern gave some land to the Jute chiefs Hengist and Horsa, in the year 449, in return for aid against the Picts. The Jutes soon gained possession of all Kent; and the Angles and Saxons, hearing of this, were not long in conquering other parts of Britain.

A band of Saxons "beset Anderida and slew all that were







therein, nor was there afterward one Briton left" (491) ; and about this place grew up the kingdom of Sussex (land of the South Saxons).

The founder of Wessex (West Saxon land) was Cerdic, who came first in 495 with five ships, and fought the Britons on the southern coast. Six years later, he came again and slew five thousand Britons. The West Saxons continued to push their conquests into the interior, until they were met at Badon Hill, near Bath, by a mighty king, named "Arthur," who ruled in Wales. On the second day of the battle, Arthur and his knights broke through the lines of the enemy and saved western Britain for a time.

In the stories handed down by the Welsh bards, or singers, Arthur is celebrated as a king who united the warring chiefs of the Britons against the heathen invaders.

"And still from time to time the heathen host  
Swarmed over seas and harried what was left.  
And so there grew great tracts of wilderness,  
Wherein the beast was ever more and more,  
But man was less and less, till Arthur came."

According to later stories, Arthur made his residence at Caerleon in Wales, where he lived in splendid state, gathering about him many brave knights and beautiful ladies. Twelve of the noblest and bravest of these knights sat with the king about the "Round Table." These "Knights of the Round Table" were wont to go out in search of adventures, to protect women, chastise oppressors, chain up wicked giants and dwarfs, and drive back the heathen. And thus Arthur, having subdued the British chiefs,

"Drew all their petty pryncedoms under him,  
Their king and head, and made a realm and reigned."

But Arthur died, and his brave knights also passed away. The heathen Saxons took up arms again, and pressed the

<sup>1</sup>See Tennyson's poem, "The Coming of Arthur."

Britons further back into the highlands on the north and west, where their descendants still tell the story of their early hero king.

Meanwhile other Saxons had established themselves north of the Thames; they were called East Saxons and their kingdom Essex. About this time some of them took the strong city of London, and their land was called Middlesex.

During the Saxon conquests, the Angles were pouring in along the eastern coast, and finally established themselves in three leading kingdoms,—East Anglia, Mercia, and Northumbria. About a century after the first invasion, therefore, we find seven or more Anglo-Saxon kingdoms established in Britain.

As to the Britons, they were finally driven into Cornwall, Wales, and the mountains in the north. Large numbers of them fell in battle; probably some of them became the slaves of the invaders. We know little about their fate. The Angles and Saxons came upon them like a tidal wave and swept them from the face of the earth. In caves among the Yorkshire moorlands have been found coins, costly ornaments, and elaborate sword hilts, such things as might be caught up hastily by people fleeing for their lives. Charred bones and other signs of cooking seem to show that these caves were for some time the homes of the fugitives. The very name of Briton disappeared, and the country was called "Angle-land," or England.

**Wars among the Anglo-Saxon Kingdoms** began as soon as these were established, and continued until the time of Egbert, King of Wessex, who reigned from 802 to 839. He united the several kingdoms and gave them the name England. Before Egbert's time, it was customary to give the title of "Bretwalda," meaning "wide ruler," or "ruler of Britain," to the king who was most powerful.

There were seven or eight of these Bretwaldas before the

time of Egbert. Several of them are of especial interest, because they were converted to Christianity and helped to spread the Christian faith among their people.

**The Venerable Bede**, a Christian priest of Northumbria, in the eighth century wrote a history of the church in Britain. He has left us a good account of the first missionaries, of their converts, and the spread of the faith through the several kingdoms. The Britons had been Christians, but in England their religion had perished with them. It was to the invaders, indeed, one reason for killing them. When the first missionaries came, in 597, the country was completely heathen. The British Christians in the west of the island for a long time made no attempt to convert the English, regarding them as hateful to both God and man.

**The First Missionaries** came from Rome. Bede tells us that a noble Roman priest, named Gregory, while walking one day through the streets of Rome, saw some beautiful, fair-haired children exposed for sale by a slave dealer. He stopped and inquired: "Who are these children? Are they Christians or pagans?"

He was told that they were pagans and Angles.

"They are well-named," said Gregory, "for they have angelic faces and should be made co-heirs with the angels in heaven.

Alas! that the author of darkness should possess men with such bright faces. From what province do they come?"

"They are from Deira."

"Truly," said Gregory, "they shall be *de ira*,<sup>1</sup> saved from wrath, and called to the mercy of Christ. And who is the king of that land?"



ANGLE SLAVE BOYS.

<sup>1</sup>Latin for "from wrath."

“His name is Ella.”

“Alleluias shall be sung in those parts,” said Gregory.

Years afterwards when the priest Gregory became Pope Gregory the Great, he remembered the Angles, and sent to England a monk, named Augustine, with a company of missionaries, about forty in all. The missionaries were of the order of Saint Benedict, whose system of monastic life, established in Italy about seventy years before, had spread to most of the monasteries of Western Europe. During the early centuries of the Christian era, when the world was full of wickedness and heathen customs were yet common, men and women who wished to lead pure and religious lives withdrew into lonely places and built convents, or monasteries, where they spent their time in prayer and fasting to fit the soul for heaven. The men were called “monks” and the women “nuns.” Benedict’s system taught the duty of work as well as of prayer, and Augustine and his monks came to preach and to work for the conversion of the Anglo-Saxon heathen.

The missionaries landed in Kent in the spring of 597. Ethelbert, the king of that country, was then Bretwalda. His wife Bertha, a Christian, had already established a priest in an old Roman church at Canterbury. The king received the strangers in an open field, under an oak tree, where their magic arts, if they had any, his pagan priests told him, would lose their influence. Augustine and his monks came into the king’s presence in solemn procession, bearing a large cross of silver and a figure of the Christ wrought in gold and colors, while the air resounded with “Alleluias.” An interpreter explained to Ethelbert the message they brought. The king replied that while he could not abandon the gods of his fathers, the missionaries might preach without hindrance, and they should be supported at his expense. The kindness and piety of the Christians attracted the people from the first, and before the end of the year the king himself was baptized.

**Spread of Christianity.** During the next twenty-five years, the kingdom of Kent yielded the first place to Northumbria, which, under two warlike kings, Ethelfrid and Edwin, rose to great power. The story of Edwin's life and conversion is full of interest. An attempt had been made on the life of the king, and, since he had been told that he should offer thanks to God, he asked the advice of his council concerning the new religion.

Coifi, the high priest of Woden, spoke: "No one has served our gods more faithfully than I, yet no one has been more unfortunate. I am weary of deities who are so ungrateful, and I would willingly try a new religion."

A noble then spoke: "Often, O King, in the depth of winter while you are feasting with your nobles, and the great fire is blazing in the hall, you have seen a bird, pelted by the storm, enter at one door and escape by the other; and you have not known whence it came, or whither it went. Such is the life of man. He walks the earth for a few years, but what precedes his birth and what comes after his death, we cannot tell. If this new religion knows anything of these secrets, it must be worth our attention."

The Bishop Paulinus, who was present as the spiritual adviser of the queen, then explained the doctrines of Christianity. Coifi and Edwin expressed their belief; and the religion of Christ became the faith of Northumbria.

East Anglia, Wessex, and Sussex embraced Christianity. Both Kent and Northumbria returned to heathenism after the deaths of Ethelbert and Edwin. But in the end Christianity triumphed, and within a century after Augustine met the King of Kent under the sacred oak, the work of Christianizing England was complete.

**Ireland** had become Christian long before this, through the labors begun by Saint Patrick. Patrick was born in the fourth century, some years before the Romans left Brit-

ain. He was carried off to Ireland by pirates and forced to serve as a shepherd. After a time he escaped. But he believed that he heard the voice of God in a vision calling him to return to Ireland and preach to the people among whom he had worked as a slave. He traveled through the country, gathering them about him in the open fields, and taught them with success. He founded many churches and monasteries, where young men were taught who went out to Scotland and Gaul and carried on the missionary work. Patrick won the love of the Irish and he became, and has ever remained, the patron saint of Ireland.

**Saint Columba**, one of the Irish missionaries, built a famous monastery on the island of Iona, off the Scottish coast, where missionaries were trained for the work of converting Anglo-Saxons. These missionaries soon came into conflict with those sent from Rome, owing to the different usages as to the time for keeping Easter. So violent did the strife become in Northumbria, that King Oswy called a council at Whitby (664 A. D.) to decide which of the two practices should be adopted. The priests of both sides offered their arguments.

"You admit," said the king to an Irish priest, "that Christ gave to Peter the keys of the kingdom of heaven. Has he given such power to Columba?"

The priest could only answer, "No."

"Then will I rather obey the porter of heaven," said Oswy, "lest when I reach the gates he who has the keys turn his back on me, and there be none to open." The Irish priests could make no answer to this argument, and they left Northumbria, which, with the rest of England, adopted the discipline of the Roman missionaries.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Compare an old Saxon town with a town in New England at the present time. In what ways was each self-governing?

2. Why would the Britons and Saxons be likely to give different accounts of the conquest of Britain?
- . How do you account for the conquest of the civilized Britons by the savage Angles and Saxons?
4. How did the Anglo-Saxon conquest differ from the Roman conquest? Why?
5. Where are the descendants of the Britons found to-day? Why?
6. What is the importance of Arthur? Where did the Arthur stories come from?
7. Compare the Christianizing of the Anglo-Saxons with that of the Irish and that of the Britons.

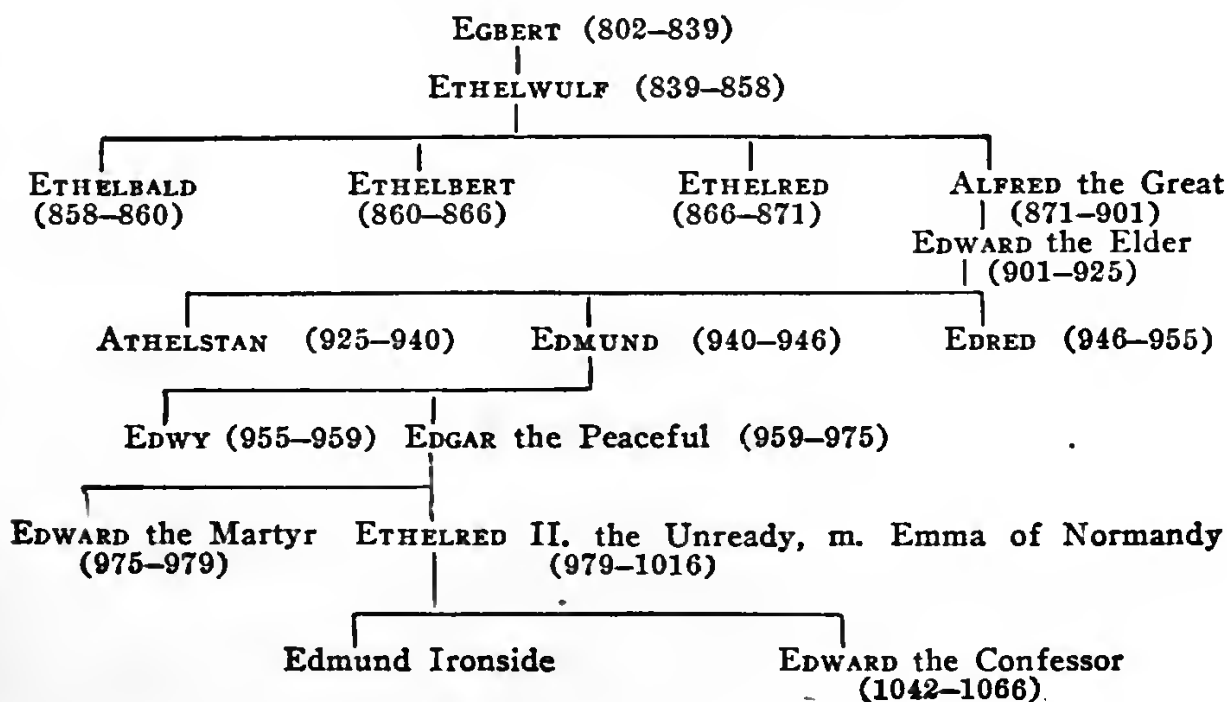
### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. KING ARTHUR. Lanier, *The Boy's King Arthur*; Greene, *King Arthur and His Court*.
2. ST. PATRICK. Lawless, *Story of Ireland*, Ch. V.; DeVere, *Legends of St. Patrick*.
3. THE EARLY GERMANS. Kendall, *Source Book of English History*, pp. 4-12.
4. ST. AUGUSTINE. Freeman, *Old-English History*, Ch. VI.

### B. ALFRED AND THE DANES.

Under the Rule of Egbert,<sup>1</sup> England prospered. His kingdom extended from the river Tamar to the Firth of

#### <sup>1</sup> THE SAXON KINGS OF ENGLAND





Forth, and from the Severn to the North Sea. The people were content to acknowledge one king, and devoted themselves



EGBERT'S KINGDOM.

to agriculture and herding. Manufacturing of a simple kind began, and churches and convents were built. But a new enemy had now appeared. In 787, we are told, in the "Anglo-Saxon Chronicle," written by Saxon monks, "three shiploads of Danes landed on the coast and slew the sheriff of the place who went to inquire who they were. These were the first ships of Danish-men who

sought the English nation." After this, there came more and more. The Danes sailed in light, swift vessels, which could ascend the rivers. They lived in the peninsulas between the Baltic and North seas, and, like the Angles and Saxons, were of the Germanic race.

In the churches and monasteries of those times much wealth was stored. The people gave many rich presents to them; the priests had chalices and crosses of silver and gold. Bibles made by the monks were splendidly bound and set with jewels. The heathen Danes hated the English for giving up the old gods Thor and Woden, and they killed the monks like sheep and robbed and burned the churches. So great was the fear of these robbers that in many places this



prayer was added to the church litany: "From the fury of the Northmen, Good Lord, deliver us!"

Even Egbert was unable to drive out these new invaders. In the year 832 he fought a great battle with thirty-five of these pirate vessels and was defeated. During the reigns of Egbert's son and grandsons, the Danes came again and again; finally they settled in the land, and most of the eastern coast came under their rule.



DANISH SHIP.

**Alfred**, the youngest and noblest of the grandsons of Egbert, came to the throne of Wessex in 871. He is the only King of England who has been honored with the title of "the Great." He was great in war, but when peace came, he showed himself greater still. A Welsh friend of Alfred has left us a book entitled "Annals of the Deeds of Alfred the Great." He tells us that Alfred from his boyhood was noted for his nobility of character and his love of wisdom. In those rough times it was not thought necessary that a king should know how to read, but he must be a stout fighter and skillful in defending his country. One day Alfred's mother was showing her sons an Anglo-Saxon poem, beautifully written on parchment with illuminated letters, and said, "Whoever of you shall first learn to read this book, shall have it to keep for himself." The parchment was so beautiful and valuable that Alfred thought at first his mother was joking; but when he understood that she was in earnest, he went to his teacher, and in a short time had learned to read and recite the poem. From that moment he never ceased to devote all his spare time to improving his mind. In a book of proverbs

said to have been written for the instruction of Alfred's sons, this verse is found:

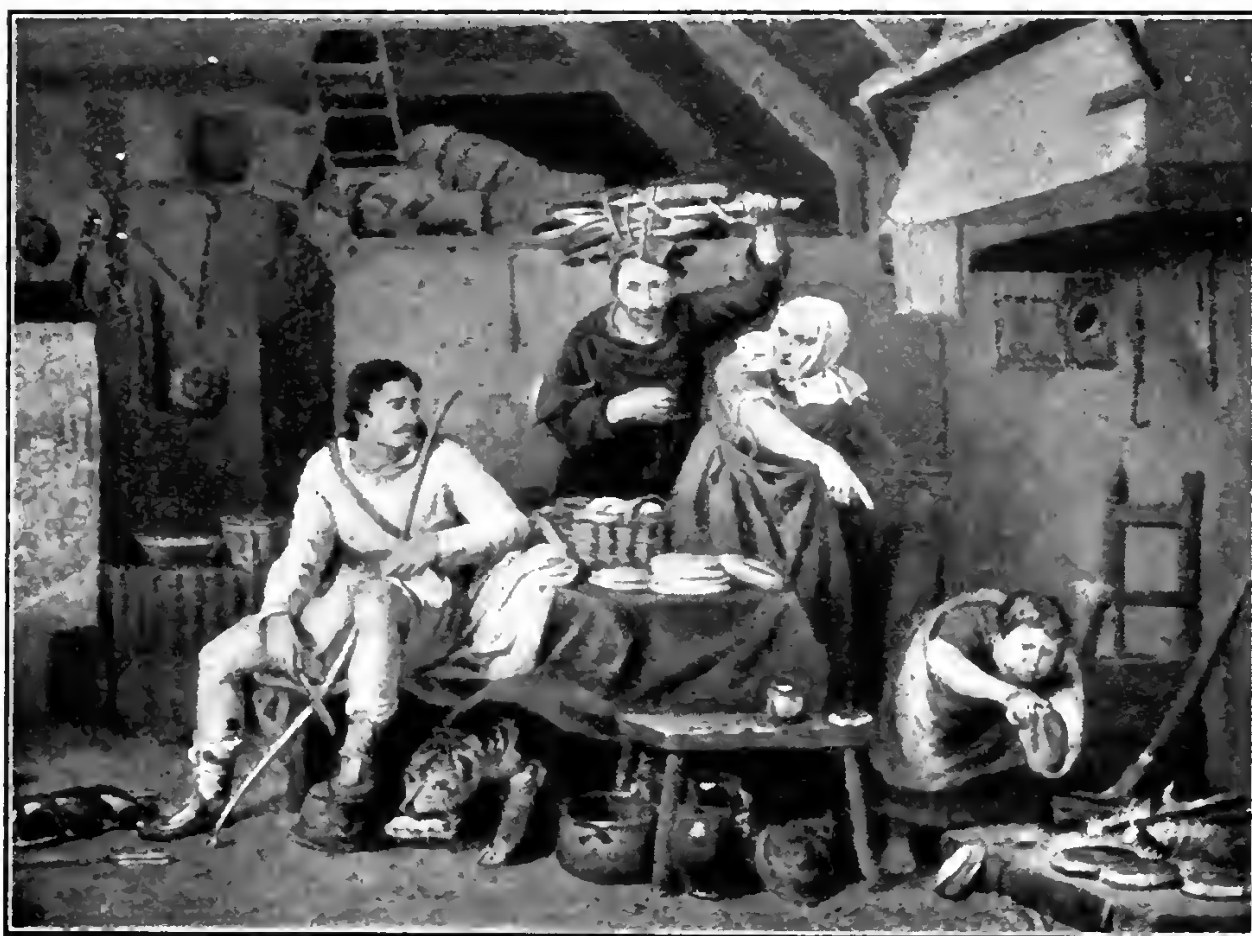
“Thus quoth Alfred, our delight:  
‘He may be no king of right  
Under Christ who is not filled  
With book-lore, in law well-skilled;  
Letters he must understand,  
And know his right to hold his land.’”

**Alfred and the Danes.** On his accession to the throne at the age of twenty-two, Alfred had a terrible war on his hands. The year before he was made king, he had fought the Danes with his brother, King Ethelred. In the first battle both armies fought long and bravely, and the Danes were defeated with heavy loss; but a few days later the Danes fought again and were victorious. The Anglo-Saxons had lost some of their warlike spirit in becoming farmers and tradesmen. They were therefore no match for the fierce Danes, who made war their main business. Alfred saw that he must build a navy and fight the enemy on the sea as well as on the land. He built several ships, and managed to capture one Danish vessel. This success so encouraged the people that during the next five years they built up a good-sized navy, with higher and stronger ships than even the Danes had.

In the mean time things were going badly on land. In 877, a terrible Danish army landed on the coast of Wessex. They marched through the country and carried everything before them. Their path was marked by the smoking ruins of homes and villages and the mutilated remains of the slain. Alfred was driven from his capital and forced to hide with a few followers in the swamps and woods. You have read in the story books how the cowherd's wife, in whose hut he had taken refuge, left him to tend some cakes baking on the hearth. But the king, who was mending his weapons and thinking of the Danes, left the cakes to burn. The woman,

on returning, took them hastily away and said to the king angrily, "Why dost not tarry to turn the cakes which thou seest burning, seeing how glad thou art to eat them when they are baked?"

Alfred gradually drew his men about him again, until they were strong enough to take the field. He met the Northmen again at Eddington (pp. 42, 7) and in a desperate battle defeated them. The fort in which they took refuge was be-



ALFRED AND THE CAKES.

sieged, and the whole army starved into surrender. The Danish fleet also, of one hundred and twenty ships, had been overtaken by a storm which wrecked half of them, and the remainder were captured by Alfred's navy off the coast of Hampshire.

**Wedmore.** Alfred was merciful to the conquered Danes. He made peace with Guthrum, the Danish chief, at Wedmore,



in 878, on condition that he should become a Christian. Guthrum and thirty of his followers were baptized, and the land was divided between the Danes and the Saxons as you see on the map. You will see in the Danish section many names ending in "by," as Derby, Whitby, and Grimsby. This shows that the Danes were the founders, for the ending *by* in Danish means town or village. The ending "ton" shows an Anglo-Saxon origin, and you will find names having this ending in central and southern England.

After the Peace of Wedmore the land had rest for a time; but then came another Danish army led by Hasting, a chief who had been harrying France as Guthrum had been harrying England. For three years war was again waged, but it ended in the defeat of the Danes. Those who did not care for peaceful homes in England, returned to their own land.

"Thanks be to God," wrote the monks, in the Chronicle, "the foreign army has not broken down the English nation."

As soon as peace came, Alfred set to work to provide against future invasions. He organized a regular army by dividing the fighting men of England into two classes, and arranged the term of service so that while half of them were at home attending to their own affairs, the other half were drilling and fitting themselves to defend their country in case of need. He also increased the navy so that he could station vessels in every bay and inlet against any attempt of the enemy to land. He built strong forts along the coast and fifty stone castles in the interior, which could be used as strongholds in case the enemy should enter the country.

**Alfred's Laws and Judges.** When Alfred felt secure from invasion, he turned his attention to the improvement of affairs within his kingdom. He caused the good laws of his ancestors and of the neighboring kingdoms of Mercia and Kent to be collected. He compelled his judges to study these laws and to give just decisions on cases brought before them.

Wicked judges were condemned to suffer punishments such as they had unjustly inflicted on others. And there must have been many wicked judges if we are to believe one writer who tells us that Alfred had forty-four executed in one year for unlawful judgments.

**The Law Courts.** The smallest unit in Anglo-Saxon government was the township, or *vill*. This consisted of land which had been apportioned by an earl or a king to one of his followers, who dwelt upon it with his men. The lord of the township was called a *thane*. He divided the land among his men, who were obliged, in return, to render a certain amount of service, but who were in other respects free. Each township elected a reeve and four assistants, to manage the town affairs and with the thane to hold the Town Court.

The next higher court was known as the Hundred Court. The hundred was a subdivision of a shire, or county, and may originally have embraced a hundred families or have furnished a hundred fighting men. The hundred court was presided over by a bishop and an earl; it was held monthly, and each township was represented in it by the reeve and his assistants.

Higher than the hundred was the County Court, held twice a year and presided over by the *shire-reeve*, or sheriff, together with the earls and bishops living within the county.

Highest of all was the supreme court of the kingdom, the *Witenagemote*, or assembly of wise men (*Witan*); that is, the bishops, earls, and thanes of the kingdom. It met at the summons of the king and was presided over by him. On the death of the king, the Witan met and chose his successor.

These courts were also legislatures, each one having the power to make laws for the government of the people under its jurisdiction. In early times all matters concerning law and judgment might be decided by a vote of all the freemen present. But later, criminal cases were decided almost entirely by the method of *compurgation* and the *ordeal*. The

people of each town were responsible for the good conduct of its citizens. Any citizen could bring an accusation before the court, though later the duty of accusing persons suspected of crime was assigned to twelve specially selected men whom we call *jurors*. If the accused person swore to his own innocence, and could get a certain number of his fellow-townsmen to swear that they believed him, he was acquitted. If he could not obtain the required number of compurgators, or "purgers," so called because they purged him of his crime, he had to admit his guilt or submit to the judgment of God, the ordeal. This required him to plunge his hand into boiling water, or to carry a red-hot iron of a certain weight a distance fixed by law. If, after three days, no mark was found on him, he was considered innocent. If found guilty, he had to pay the fine fixed by law for his offense. As a rule every man was a member of some "guild," or society, which furnished his compurgators or paid his fine.

**Alfred's Services to Education.** Alfred tells us that when he became king he knew no one south of the Thames who could read Latin, the language of the church, in which were written the books he wished his people to read. So he set to work to translate the Latin books. Bede's history of the church, a history of the world by the Spanish priest Orosius, and a book on the "Duties of a Christian Minister" by Gregory the Great, were some of these. He established schools in the monasteries, and one in his own palace. He brought in teachers from various parts of England and from other countries in order that the young nobles and other youth of his land might be fitted to perform the duties of men. He also rebuilt the churches and convents that the Danes had destroyed, and had many monks employed in copying manuscripts, for there were no printed books at that time, and in keeping the records of his country. He caused the famous book, the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, to be



compiled and recorded; this is our main source of information concerning the events in early English history. He was interested too in architecture, in art, in the working of metals, and even in the making and enameling of jewels.

We are told that the way Alfred managed to do so much was by dividing his time and devoting a certain part of it each day to whatever work he had in hand. There were no clocks in his time, so he had six candles made of such size that they would burn out in twenty-four hours. To prevent them from being affected by the draughts that came from the doors and the cracks in the walls of his palace, he had the candles set in boxes of wood or horn, thus making the first lanterns in England.

This great king, who was one of the best men that ever lived, died in 901, leaving worthy children and grandchildren to carry on his work.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Why were the Danes superior to the Anglo-Saxons in war?
2. What was the purpose of Alfred's navy? His army? His castles?
3. What do you think best shows Alfred's greatness as a king?
4. Why was the system of trial by compurgation and ordeal defective?
5. How did the people take part in government in Alfred's time?  
Were they represented in the Witan? How?
6. What do names teach us of the history of a country? Give examples.
7. Compare the local government in Alfred's time with that in New England to-day.

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE BATTLE OF BRUNANBURH. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 21-28.
2. KING EGBERT. Church, *The Story of Early Britain*; Guest and Underwood, *Handbook of English History*, Ch. VIII.
3. A SAXON VILLAGE. Green, *Short History of the English People*, pp. 2-4; Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 4-12.
4. ALFRED THE GREAT. Asser, *Life of Alfred*; Besant, *Story of King Alfred*; Guest and Underwood, *Handbook of English History*, Ch. IX.

### C. THE DANISH AND NORMAN CONQUESTS.

**Edward and Athelstan**, Alfred's successors, completed the conquest of the Danes. We hear nothing more of serious outbreaks until after the death of King Edgar in 975. So completely was Edgar master of England, that it is said he was rowed on the River Dee by eight subject kings. Until after his reign the descendants of Alfred kept up the wise policy of maintaining a fleet and garrisons of soldiers in strong forts to guard the coast. Dunstan, the wise Archbishop of Canterbury, was the chief counselor of Edgar. He wisely gave to the Danes local rulers of their own blood and allowed them to enjoy their own laws, thus gaining their good will and friendship.

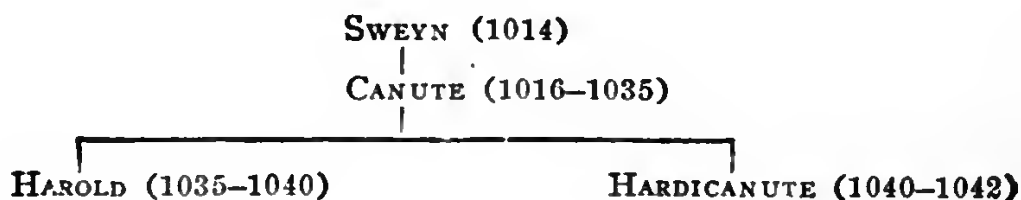
**Ethelred the "Unready,"** the younger of Edgar's two sons, became king in 979. His elder brother, Edward, called the "Martyr," had been murdered by an assassin employed by Ethelred's mother, who wanted her own son to be king instead of Edward, the son of Edgar by his first wife. Ethelred reigned thirty-seven years, but before he died, the Danes seized the throne of England. There was no wise Dunstan to give counsel. The earls of the northern provinces and the Danish chiefs in England rebelled. Pirates ravaged the coasts. In 982, the kings of Norway and Denmark came with a great swarm of Northmen to plunder England. Vast sums of money, raised by a tax on the land, were paid by Ethelred and the Witan to induce the Northmen to withdraw. They took the money, but became more insolent and warlike than before. At last Ethelred ordered a general massacre of Danes throughout the kingdom, on St. Brice's Day, the 13th of November, 1002. The unsuspecting people were killed by thousands. They crowded into the churches and were slain around the altars. Among the victims was Gunhilda, the Danish king's sister, who had become a Christian and had married in England.

**King Sweyn**<sup>1</sup> vowed to be avenged for his sister's death, and entered the river Humber with a great army. He marched southward, and city after city fell before him. Finally London surrendered, Ethelred fled to France, and Sweyn was made King of England. But Sweyn soon died, and Ethelred returned. Then Ethelred too died, and his eldest son, Edmund Ironside, was murdered. In 1016 Canute, Sweyn's son, became king of all England, after fighting the Saxons for several years.

**King Canute** made no change in the laws and government of England. He ordained that both Danes and English should be subject to their own laws, as in the good days of King Edgar the Peaceful. He became a Christian, in nature as well as in name. He urged his judges to be sparing of human life, while vigilant in punishing crime; to treat the criminals who repented with less severity than those who did not repent; to pity the weak, who were often driven to crime by oppression and want; but to mete out to the powerful the full rigor of the law. He forbade the sale of Christians into slavery, and prohibited the worship of the old heathen gods. Nor would he allow his officers to take any property for the king's use without making just payment.

**Canute Married Emma**, the widow of Ethelred the Unready. It was agreed that the crown should descend to their children, in preference to the children of Ethelred. When Canute had made his English throne secure, he went to Denmark, taking with him Earl Godwin and many other Englishmen. Godwin helped Canute to win a great battle in

#### <sup>1</sup>THE DANISH KINGS



Denmark, and in return the king made him the most powerful nobleman in England.

There was peace in England during all of Canute's reign; but at his death in 1035 a strife broke out between his two sons, Harold and Hardicanute. Each of them ruled a few years, but they left no children. Edward, the son of Ethelred, was therefore chosen king when Hardicanute died. The people hailed Edward with joy, for they were weary of Danish rule, and were glad to have a king descended from the great Alfred.

**Relations with Normandy.** It was not England alone that was subject to the incursions of the Northmen. They ravaged the coasts of France, Spain, and Portugal, made settlements in Iceland and Greenland, and even visited America. They proved so strong in France that the French king was forced to divide his kingdom with them, just as a few years before that time King Alfred had divided England with Guthrum. They received a province in the north of France, afterwards known as Normandy. Rolf, or Rollo, called the "Ganger" or "goer," because of his long legs, was baptized, took the title of duke, and swore allegiance to the French king, whom he faithfully served.

It was Rolf's great-granddaughter Emma, called from her beauty "the Jewel of Normandy," that was married to Ethelred and afterwards to Canute. Edward, the son of Ethelred and Emma, called on account of his piety "the Confessor," came to the throne of England in 1042. He brought with him a great number of Norman favorites, to whom he gave the best places in the government and church. He was devoted and unselfish, but so well did he like the Normans, that he named as his successor the Norman Duke William.

**Edward Died Childless** in 1066, and Harold II., a son of Godwin, was elected by the Witan to succeed him. It is said that Harold had once been shipwrecked on the coast of

Normandy and introduced to the Duke William's court, where banquets and tournaments were held in his honor. But when he came to depart, he was made to swear on the bones of the saints that when Edward died he would support the claim of William to the throne of England. Neither Edward nor Harold, however, had any right to give away the throne of England, because only the Witenagemote could choose the king.

**William's Claim to the Throne.** Besides the promise of Edward, and the forced oath of Harold, William claimed the throne of England as the inheritance of his wife Matilda, who was a descendant of Alfred. He had also obtained the approval of the Pope, who was displeased with the Witan for expelling the Archbishop of Canterbury in the time of Edward. However faulty William's claim seemed to Englishmen, the people of Normandy and of Europe generally came to believe in its justice. His Norman subjects, although at first unwilling to enter upon a foreign war, in the end joined heartily in his enterprise to take the crown of England by force. It is said that William was making ready to hunt when the news came to him that Harold had accepted from the Witan his election as king. "He stopped short in his preparations; he spake to no man and no man durst speak to him." He presently sent a demand to the new king to resign the crown to him, or at least to acknowledge him as superior lord, and to marry his daughter. Harold had but one answer to make, that he had been chosen king in a legal manner, and could not choose a wife without the approval of the assembly of his wise men. In fact, he had already married Aldwyth, the widow of the king of North Wales and the sister of Edwin and Morkar, the powerful earls of Mercia and Northumbria. This marriage served to draw the Celtic and Danish people closer to the English throne.

**Stamford Bridge.** While William was making preparations for the invasion of England, a new enemy threatened Harold in the north. His brother Tostig, who had been appointed Earl of Northumbria by Edward the Confessor, had been driven from his earldom on account of his misgovernment, and the people had chosen Morkar in his stead. Morkar was recognized as earl by Edward and by Harold; and Tostig went abroad in search of aid in regaining his earldom. He persuaded Harold Hardrada, king of Norway, to join him. The two sailed up the Humber River and attacked the city of York. They defeated the earls Edwin and Morkar in a fierce battle and compelled the Northumbrians to join them in a war on Harold of England, for Tostig wanted to be king himself.

When news of the battle was brought to King Harold, he gathered his army and started north as fast as men and horses could go. He fell in with the Northmen at Stamford Bridge on the Derwent. Tostig and Hardrada were taken by surprise, but they drew up their men in a circle with the standard in the center and spearmen on the outer lines. As Hardrada, conspicuous in blue mantle and glittering helmet, rode about the circle to see that all was ready, his horse stumbled and fell.

“Who is that chieftain on the ground?” asked Harold of England.

Some of the Northmen with him answered, “That is the King of Norway.”

“He is a gallant warrior,” returned Harold, “but his end is near.”

Then twenty of King Harold’s men rode out to parley with the Northmen. As they drew near one of them said, “Is Earl Tostig, the son of Godwin, in this host?” and Tostig himself replied. Then said the Englishman, “King Harold of England greeteth thee, and saith that you shall have all

Northumbria, nay, even a third of his kingdom to rule over, rather than that his brother should be an enemy."

Tostig replied, "My brother speaketh fair, but what shall King Hardrada of Norway have for his toil in coming hither?"

The Englishman answered, "Seven feet of earth for a grave, seeing he is a very tall man."

Tostig scorned to abandon his friend. For a time the spearmen of Hardrada held firm, but in their zeal they broke the ranks to pursue some of the fleeing enemy. The English rushed into the gap. Tostig and Hardrada were killed, and their army put to the sword. It was one of the bloodiest battles in the history of England, and for long afterwards the ground was whitened by the bones of the slain.

**The Battle of Hastings, 1066.** Four days after the battle of Stamford Bridge, Duke William landed on the coast of England. He had spent eight months in preparation and had a well equipped army and fleet. His own ship, a present from his duchess, Matilda, was a beautifully decorated vessel with a consecrated banner floating from the mast-head. His soldiers were mostly knights on horseback, clad in armor.

His landing was unopposed. He put up fortifications and gathered provisions for his troops.

In the mean time hurried messengers found Harold at York, celebrating in a banquet his victory over the Northmen. His army had been largely disbanded after the battle. The northern earls refused to follow him to the defense of the south. He marched at once to London, enlisting men by the way, and in six days after his arrival, we are told, "he gathered together an innumerable number of Englishmen." He took position on Senlac Hill above the town of Hastings, where William had fortified himself. This hill he guarded with three palisades. ~~His men~~ were ordered to keep close to the



defenses and repel the attack of the enemy. If they had obeyed, the battle of Hastings might have gone differently.

The Norman archers opened the battle, and then the Norman knights advanced to the attack. But they could not break through the English defenses, behind which, with spear and ax, the stout warriors cut down every Norman who was rash enough to enter. All day the English repelled the repeated charges of the enemy. At length they rushed out of their fort to pursue some fleeing troops. William rallied his men, and facing about they slaughtered their pursuers. The duke himself led a fierce charge against the king's standard, around which were gathered the flower of the English. They stood firm. William then feigned re-



PART OF THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS ; FROM THE BAYEUX TAPESTRY.

treat, and the undisciplined English troops were again drawn into a pursuit and great numbers of them were cut down by the Norman cavalry.

Toward sunset William gave the command, "Shoot upward, Norman archers, that the arrows may fall upon their faces!" One of the descending shafts entered the eye of the English king. The Norman knights rushed toward the royal standard, for while that waved the English would never retreat. Harold fell in the deadly struggle about the flag. His own guard would take no quarter and died to a man in his defense; but the rest of the army fled, and the Norman duke had won the battle of Hastings and the kingdom of England.

William's banner was set up where had stood the golden

dragon of Wessex. In after times, William built there his great minster, the Battle Abbey, whose altar marks the spot where the standard of the English king was taken.

**The Bayeux Tapestry**, in the public library of Bayeux in France (map, p. 76), is the most famous record of the Norman invasion and the battle of Hastings. On a piece of canvas seventy-one yards long by twenty inches in breadth, are embroidered in various colors seventy-two pictures representing the different scenes in the conquest. This work is said to have been done by Matilda and the ladies of her court. It is of great value in showing the dress and weapons of the time, the kind of ships and the manner of fighting, besides giving us pictures of many events in connection with this famous battle.

**Crowning of William.** After the battle, the Conqueror marched slowly to London, securing the important towns on the way. He was sturdily opposed in many places, but by his wise policy and kind treatment of the English, he secured their submission. The Archbishop of York crowned him on Christmas Day in the new church of Westminster, close to London, built by Edward the Confessor.

**The Four Conquests.** And so the first act in the fourth conquest of Britain was finished. The Romans had found the country rude and uncivilized. They subdued the savage people and taught them agriculture and the arts of civilized life. They built roads and cities, and encouraged trade and manufactures. But the severe Roman rule made the people little better than slaves. The Anglo-Saxon conquest wiped out in England every trace of the Roman influence except the roads and names of places. It brought in what was far better, however,—the Saxon idea that all men are equal before the law, and the practice of allowing every freeman to take part in the government. The Anglo-Saxons, after several hundred years of residence in England, became sluggish and corrupt, and

wasted their strength in civil wars. The Danish conquest (1016) brought peace and unity. This vigorous, daring race of Northmen stirred up the older Saxons to new life. In the next chapter we shall learn something about the important changes in England brought about by the Norman conquest.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What mistakes did Ethelred make in his treatment of the Danes?
2. Why was William's claim to the English crown of no value?
3. Compare the Norman and the English manner of fighting at Hastings.
4. Tell some advantage and some disadvantage resulting to England from each of the four conquests. Give the date of the beginning of each. What weakness in government made each possible?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE VIKINGS. S. W. Dasent, *The Vikings of the Baltic*.
2. ELFRIDA. Dickens, *A Child's History of England*, Ch. IV.; Morris, *Stories from English History*.
3. CANUTE. Freeman, *Old-English History*, pp. 222-246.
4. THE BATTLE OF HASTINGS. Green, *Short History*, pp. 75-77; Jewett, *Story of the Normans*, Ch. XV.

### III. ENGLAND UNDER NORMAN KINGS.<sup>1</sup>

#### A. THE NORMAN GOVERNMENT.

##### William I., 1066-1087.

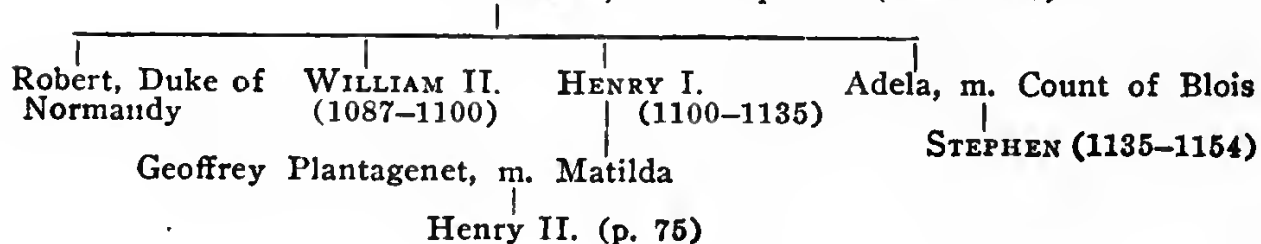
The English Thanes and Bishops offered allegiance to William on his arrival in London and were kindly treated. But the northern earls of Mercia and Northumbria hastened away to their estates.

William was not betrayed into a feeling of security by the apparent submission of the people. He feared especially the strong city of London with its free and independent population. He laid waste the land about the city so that no aid could be brought to it from outside. He built within the city a strong fortress that became the famous Tower of London, where so many distinguished prisoners have been confined and put to death.

Many such Norman castles were soon built throughout England, at first hastily; but gradually they grew into immense fortresses of solid stone, with towers from which missiles could be thrown upon besiegers. Each was surrounded with a mound of earth and a broad moat filled with

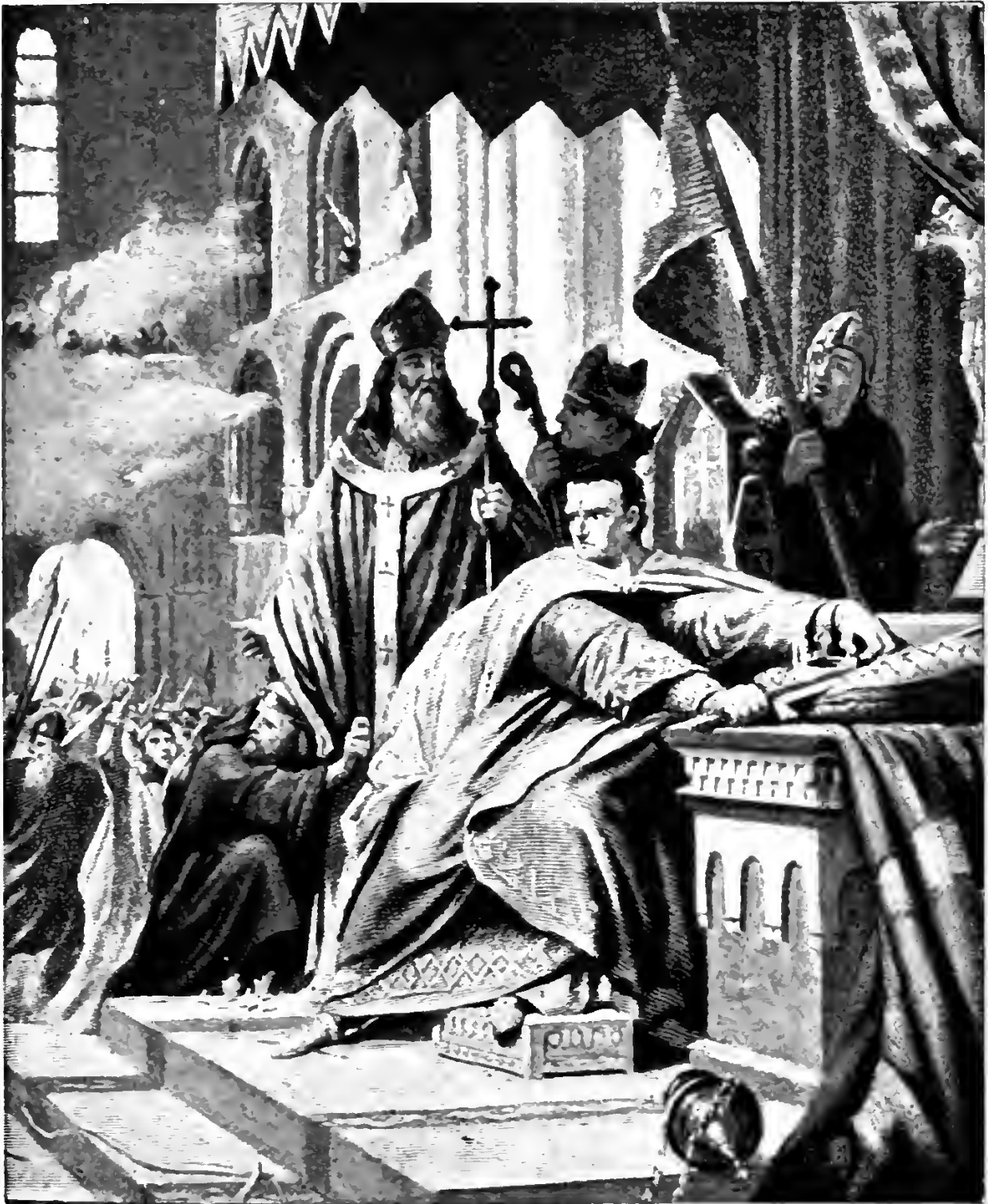
#### <sup>1</sup> THE NORMAN KINGS

##### WILLIAM I., the Conqueror (1066-1087)



water. Within was room for a large body of soldiers, and provisions and supplies of war.

**Greed of the Normans.** William had held out to his fol-



CORONATION OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR.

lowers promises of a rich booty from the conquest of England, and they could be restrained from plundering only by his immediate presence. Even while the coronation ceremonies

were taking place at Westminster, some of the Norman soldiers set fire to the adjoining houses and began to pillage in the confusion.

The estates of the English who fought at Hastings had been taken by the king, and his army had seized a vast amount of property on the march to London. But this was all too little to gratify the rapacity of his men, or to make good his promises. As he claimed to be the lawful successor of Edward, he was an English king, and it would not do to plunder his own people without a decent pretext.

**Outbreaks of the English** soon furnished the pretext. A few months after his coronation, William returned to Normandy. Thereupon the Norman soldiers in the different garrisons began to rob and abuse the English people. When the English protested against such treatment they were refused protection and justice. They now rose and began to attack the garrisons, and the news of this outbreak soon brought William to England.

It is probable that William secretly rejoiced at an opportunity to chastise the English. He was quite as greedy as his followers, and he resolved now to crush a people who he declared could not be won by kindness. On William's return he dismissed his English friends with promises of just government; but immediately afterward he levied a large tax on them for means of keeping them in subjection. He had gained the support of Earl Edwin of Mercia by promising his daughter in marriage, but as soon as he felt secure, he refused to keep the promise.

The people in the different parts of England did not unite against William, and he subdued one district after another in the course of the next three years. In the north, the people sent for help to the Danish king, who claimed the throne of England as his inheritance. The Danish forces were joined along the river Humber by a company from Scotland, and by

men from the west and north of England. The united forces besieged York and massacred its garrison of three thousand Normans.

When William heard this news he swore a great oath that not a Northumbrian should be left alive. He bribed the Danes to retire. He then laid waste the country between the Humber and the Tees. His orders were that every living thing, men, women, children, and animals, should be slain; that all crops and buildings should be burned; and that farming tools should be broken so that there might be no means of supporting life. Of the people who escaped to the moors and mountains, it is said a hundred thousand died of starvation. So thoroughly was the work done, that the country north of the Humber was spoken of for fifty years afterward as a "waste," a desert.

In a later revolt against William the "promise-breaker," Earl Edwin of Mercia was killed, but his brother Morkar of Northumbria escaped and joined Hereward, the "last of the English," who had taken refuge in the island fortress of Ely.

Years afterward the English loved to honor the name of Hereward. He had been banished by Edward, and had served in foreign wars. When he heard of the death of his father and that his mother had been driven from the old home by a Norman, he returned to England and, gathering his vassals, drove the Normans out. On this exploit being noised abroad, every Englishman who wanted to avenge his wrongs hastened to Hereward. William resolved to subdue this determined chief. He stationed ships along the Wash to prevent an escape, and built a solid road for two miles across the fens to the island. Hereward attacked the workmen with such fury and success that the Normans thought the devil must have been helping him. To encourage them William placed an old sorceress in a wooden tower which was pushed along in front of the men. Then



one day Hereward sallied out suddenly and burned the tower and sorceress together. But the work was pushed steadily on until Hereward's men were forced to surrender. He alone escaped across the swamps and hid in the woods. The king, who admired a brave warrior, offered to give him back his father's estate. Hereward swore allegiance to William and was faithful to him the rest of his life.

**Scotland.** After one of the English revolts William invaded Scotland and compelled King Malcolm to kneel before him and swear to be faithful. He then allowed Malcolm to keep his crown as a vassal of England. This meant that if he should ever rebel or again assist William's enemies as he had done, William would have the right to declare the crown forfeited and to give the kingdom to another. Malcolm's kingdom had grown up gradually from a kingdom founded by a tribe of Scots who came from Ireland in the sixth century. The rule of the Scottish kings was extended over the native Picts and also over the Anglo-Saxons of the Lowlands. The Scots of this time were thus partly Celtic and partly English in race.

**How William Divided the Land.** There was now peace in England. The nobles were completely vanquished. William declared to be forfeited all property of those who had fought against him. He therefore became the owner of nearly the whole of England. He allowed the English thanes to keep some small estates, but the greater part he divided among his Norman followers. In this way about twenty thousand Normans became landholders in England.

William did not, however, give to any one many estates in the same county, but each baron's possessions were scattered over England. This prevented the noble from becoming too powerful and made him dependent on the king for the protection of his scattered estates. Each baron in return for his land agreed to furnish at the call of the king a certain

number of knights, mounted and completely armed. It was customary to divide the land into portions called "knights' fees," the holder of each knight's fee being bound to furnish one knight at the call of the king. There were about sixty thousand knights' fees in England, thus placing a powerful army of cavalry at the king's service. The large landholders, after reserving part of the land for their own use, would divide the rest into knights' fees to be sublet to vassals on the same conditions as those which had been made by the king. Only *their* knights' fees might be much smaller than those which were held of the king.

**Aids and Reliefs**, as well as military service, were required of the tenants of the king. These were names given to certain taxes. There was the "scutage," or war-tax, which was required in case the required number of knights was not supplied. If the king was taken prisoner and a ransom required, if his eldest son was to be made a knight, or his eldest daughter married, he could call upon his tenants for an "aid," or money tax, to defray the expense. Every heir, before he could have his inheritance, had to pay to his lord a sum of money called "relief." If the heir was under age the lord had the income of the land until the heir attained his majority. If a tenant died without heirs, the land reverted to the lord. If a tenant committed any one of a long list of crimes, he forfeited his estate to his lord,



A NORMAN KNIGHT

his blood was held to be "attainted," and no heir could inherit property through him.

**Fealty** was required of every tenant. Kneeling, with his hands placed between those of his lord, he repeated the oath: "I become your liege man of life and limb and earthly worship; and faith and truth I will bear to you to live and die." The man then was obliged to respect and obey his lord; and the lord was obliged to protect his man in life and property.

**Domesday Book.** When William had finished his division of the estates of England among his followers, he caused a grand survey of the realm to be made, together with a list of every man's property. "So carefully did he have it done," says the Chronicle, "that there was not an ox, or a cow, or a pig passed by." All this information was written down in a great book called "Domesday Book," the word *dome*, or *doom*, meaning judgment. After this when a dispute arose concerning what was due the king, judgment was given by appealing to the figures in this book.

**Fealty to the King; Feudal System.** The land which a vassal held of his lord, for which he took the oath of fealty, was called a "fief" or "feud," from an old French or Latin word meaning faith. Hence the system of military government through the holding of land, which has just been described, was called the "Feudal System." In some countries where this system prevailed, the lower tenants swore fealty only to their immediate lord. But William would have every landholder swear fealty to him, so that the first duty of every one of them would be to his king. He accordingly caused all the nobles, landholders, and their vassals, to the number of 60,000, to assemble on Salisbury plain and there kneel before him and take the oath of allegiance. Henceforth every man in the realm was bound to fight first of all for the king, even if he had to fight against his lord.

**How the English were Kept Faithful.** The English were far more numerous than the Normans, and if they had not been in fear of the king and his trained army, they would have risen and driven the Normans out. Thus the Norman landowner must depend upon the king for protection against the English. The English hated the Normans, who lived upon land which had been theirs; and to whom they were obliged to swear allegiance for the little strips of land that they held. They perhaps hated the king too, but they hated the nobles far more; and since they could not have an English king, a Norman king was better than none at all. Hereafter, when trouble arises between the king and his Norman lords, we shall find the English fighting on the king's side.

**The Forests.** William was fond of hunting. Miles of country were cleared of houses to make forests for the king's hunting. Sixty parishes were devastated in Hampshire to make room for the "New Forest." There were in later times sixty-eight of these forests. Any one who was caught chasing the king's game was punished with the greatest cruelty.

**William and the Pope.** The Pope who had sanctioned William's attack on England was now dead, and a new Pope, Gregory VII., known as Hildebrand, had taken his place. It was owing to Gregory's influence that William had received the Pope's sanction. As Gregory now wished to make reforms in the church, he counted on William's aid. He would abolish the sale of offices in the church and would enforce the laws forbidding the marriage of priests; and he thought that all countries and kingdoms should do homage to him as the head of the church.

William agreed to help the Pope, but insisted that all communication between him and the church in England must receive the king's approval. As for doing homage, William

refused, but he promised the same fealty that other English kings had paid; and exacted that no subject of his should be put out of the church without the king's permission, that no meeting of church authorities in England should make laws without his leave, and that all letters coming to England from the Pope should first be submitted to the king.

**The Character of William** was stern, cruel, and severe, but he was a lover of peace. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle tells us "he made such good peace in the land that a man that was good for aught might travel over England with his bosom full of gold without molestation." He was a man of great height and immense strength. No other man could bend his bow or follow him upon the march, and when he was in anger his appearance was so terrible that we are told no man dared speak in his presence. William instituted the odious curfew, and he appointed only Normans to high places, but he never appointed ignorant or wicked men to important positions in the church. He made Lanfranc, who had been the head of a Norman abbey, his chief adviser and Archbishop of Canterbury, and none could be found with a keener mind or a purer heart.

**William's Council** was composed of the great landholders—that is, of the higher clergy and nobility of the realm. Three times each year they were summoned to meet the king to advise with him about the government of the country. Archbishops, bishops, earls, and barons came from all over England, and the king was able to learn everything of importance concerning the state of the kingdom. This body became known as the "Great Council." It was the successor of the Witenagemote. It was the aim of William to continue as far as possible the English institutions and laws, for he wished to be considered, not as a conqueror, but as the rightful successor of Edward. The history of the Great Council is of the utmost importance, for out of it grew up

the House of Lords, the Commons, the Courts of Law, and the Cabinet.

**Last Days.** William's later years were made sad by the rebellion of his eldest son, Robert. Robert had demanded of his father the rule of Normandy, and when it was refused him, tried to take it by force. He was driven out and compelled to live in exile. Soon after this, during a war with the King of France, William was so injured by the stumbling of his horse that he died. He divided his possessions among his three sons. To William, called Rufus, or the Red, he gave the kingdom of England; to Robert he left the duchy of Normandy; and to Henry, called "Beau Clerc," or "fine scholar," who had been the pupil of the learned Lanfranc, he left five thousand pounds, with the prediction that in the end Henry would obtain both England and Normandy.

### William II., 1087-1100.

**William Rufus** hurried to England to secure the crown and royal treasure. Henry made equal haste to get his money into a safe place; but Robert, who as eldest son might have claimed the throne, made no exertion to obtain it.

William II. had all the greed, cruelty, and willfulness of his father, but none of his sense of justice, respect for religion, or wise statesmanship. He was blustering and very wicked, and irritated his great nobles to such a degree that they soon formed a conspiracy to dethrone him and to put Robert in his place. They knew that generous, easy-going Robert would allow them their own way in everything. The people saw that they would become the slaves of the barons if there were no king strong enough to protect them. When William II. called on them for aid and promised to restore the good laws of Edward, they rallied to his support twenty thousand strong. Two of the most powerful nobles were



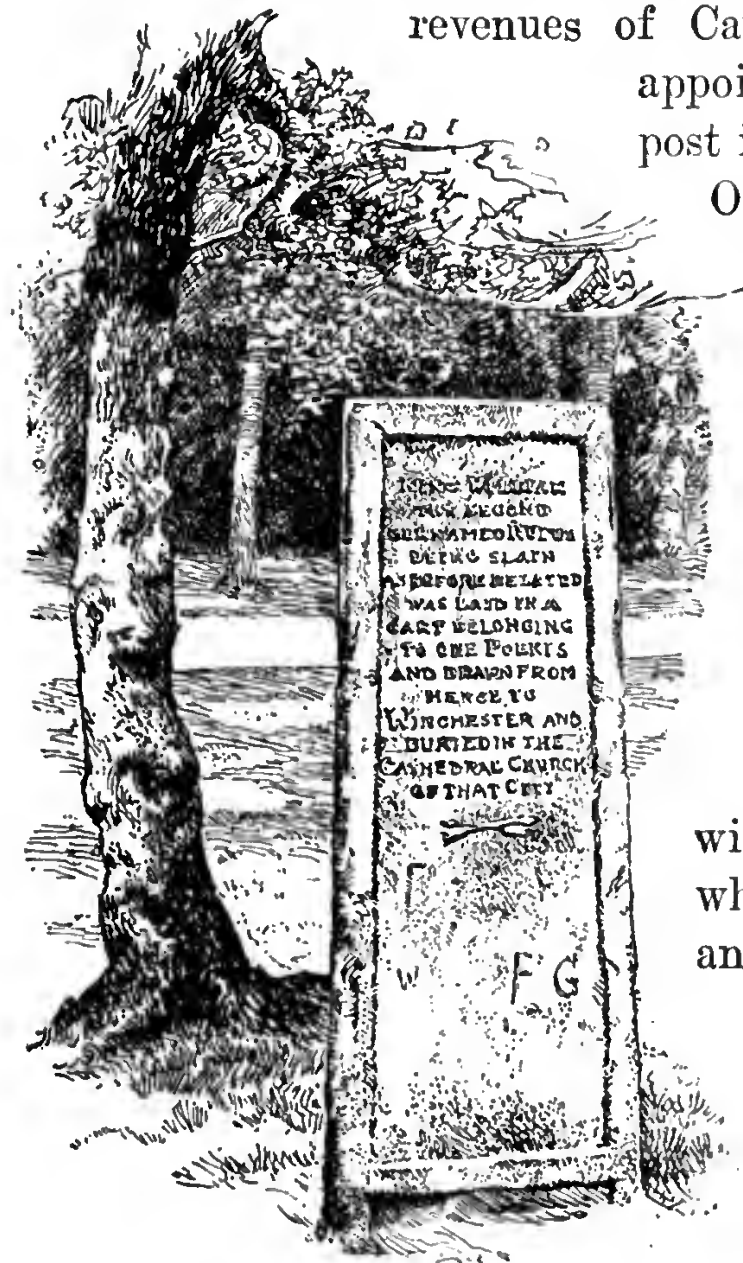
captured with the strong castle of Rochester, where they had prepared for defense; the other rebellious nobles were soon compelled to surrender, and the struggle was at an end. But William did not fulfill his promise to the English to restore the old laws, and he levied heavier taxes than ever.

**Anselm.** The pious Lanfranc, who had been the adviser of William I., now died, and William II. seized upon the revenues of Canterbury and refused to appoint any one to the highest post in the church in England.

Other vacancies in the church also were kept open by William, who would not fill them unless he were paid a sum of money corresponding to the revenue of the post. But once he was taken very ill, and was persuaded as a pious act to appoint a virtuous and wise priest named Anselm, who like Lanfranc had been an abbot in Normandy, to

be Archbishop of Canterbury. Soon William recovered his health and demanded contributions from his barons for one of his expeditions. Anselm sent

five hundred pounds of silver, which was refused by the king. Anselm then distributed the silver among the poor. But his quarrels with the king finally forced him to leave England.



RUFUS STONE, NEW FOREST.



**The Crusades** were wars waged by the Christian nations of Europe to recover the holy city of Jerusalem from the Saracens. The first Crusade, or "war for the cross," was stirred up by a French priest, Peter the Hermit, who went about telling how shamefully the Saracens treated pious pilgrims to the Holy Land. He aroused great enthusiasm everywhere. Among those who wished to lead an army to Palestine was Robert. He had already sold a third of Normandy to Henry for three thousand pounds, and he now offered William the income of the duchy for five years, for the ten thousand pounds he needed to equip his expedition. William agreed at once. Robert accordingly went on the crusade and took part in the capture of Jerusalem, but he loitered on his return, so that he lost a second opportunity to claim the throne of England.

**William's Death.** After a hunt in the New Forest, the king was found dead, with an arrow in his breast. It was never known who shot the arrow. Some said it was shot at a stag and struck the king by accident. Others recalled an old prophecy that "the New Forest would bring evil upon the descendants of the Conqueror," who had destroyed so many homes of the poor to obtain it; and whispered that the king had been murdered by some revengeful Englishman.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Compare the Anglo-Saxon and Norman ways of dividing the land.
2. How did William keep both the Norman nobles and the conquered English in subjection?
3. What was the value of the Domesday Book?
4. Describe the feudal system, mentioning social classes, taxation, fealty, and the duties of lords and vassals.
5. How was feudal government adapted to a lawless and unsettled country?
6. Explain the relations of William and Gregory VII.
7. Why did the conquered English favor the king rather than the barons?

8. Give three reasons for the importance of the Norman Great Council. Who attended it?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. HEReward. Kingsley, *Hereward*; Morris, *Hereward, the Wake*.
2. ROBERT OF NORMANDY. Dickens, *A Child's History of England*, Ch. X.; Jewett, *Story of the Normans* (see index).
3. ANSELM. Green, *Short History*, pp. 73-74, 90, 91, 96.
4. THE KING'S FORESTS. Kendall, *Source Book*, p. 48; Jewett, *Story of the Normans*.

### B. THE STRUGGLE WITH THE BARONS.

#### Henry I., 1100-1135.

Henry rode at full speed to Winchester to demand the crown and royal treasure. An attempt was made by the keeper to hold them for Robert, but Henry had the determination of his father, and his threat of instant death changed the keeper's mind. In the absence of Anselm, the Bishop of London placed the crown upon his head.

A **Charter of Liberties** was issued to the people at the beginning of Henry's reign, to secure their support against any attempt to place Robert on the throne. This charter contained the king's promise not to steal the money of the church, as his brother had done. It forbade all lords to extort from their tenants too large aids and reliefs; and it promised to restore to the nation at large the old English law as William the Conqueror had amended it. The king also became suddenly virtuous, drove all wicked men and women from his court, and recalled the distinguished Archbishop Anselm, professing for him the highest regard.

At the request of his advisers he married Matilda or Maud, the daughter of the Scotch King Malcolm and descended through her mother from Alfred the Great. You may imagine how the English rejoiced over a queen of their own race, but the Normans held up to ridicule the pretended

goodness of the king and the real goodness of the queen, and gave them the English nicknames "Godric" and "Godiva."

**War with Robert.** The year following the coronation of Henry brought Robert back to Normandy. After duly celebrating his return, he leisurely began preparations to invade England. But the two brothers held a conference and made peace. Henry soon afterward sought a quarrel with Robert and invaded Normandy. In the battle of Tinchebrai, Robert was totally defeated and made a prisoner; and he was shut up in Cardiff castle, near the Severn, for the rest of his long life. Henry now became Duke of Normandy as well as King of England.

**The Appointment of Church Officers** was the cause of a quarrel between Henry and the Pope. To understand this quarrel, we must bear in mind the fact that the estates set apart for the support of the clergy were held on the same conditions as the barons held theirs, namely, those of fealty and military service. Each bishop and abbot had to do homage to the king, furnish soldiers, and pay aids and taxes. These officers were selected by the king, though by church law they were supposed to be elected by the priests or monks of the cathedral church or abbey. But we have seen how shamefully William II. had abused his power. To prevent such abuses it seemed necessary for the Pope to take away from kings the appointment and control of all church officers. Anselm refused to do homage to Henry, and a dispute arose which was finally settled by giving the Pope the right of investing the bishops with the ring and staff, the symbols of their spiritual power, while Henry reserved the right of exacting military service and aids, and of having their election by the lower clergy take place in the king's court. The king thus kept the power of preventing the election of an enemy to a prelacy in England, while the Pope had the power to exclude incompetent or immoral men, by refusing to install them in office.

**The King's Justice.** As soon as Henry felt safe on his throne he did not hesitate to break all the good promises he had made in his charter. But he would allow no one else to break the laws. During his reign crime was severely punished; it was said, "No man durst misdo against another in Henry's time." At one sitting of a court (1124), forty-four robbers were hanged. He would not allow any coin to be made less than legal value, and any coiner who dared to do it had his hands struck off or his eyes put out. He would not allow any of his lords to take the people's property unjustly, and gained from them the title, which he did not deserve, of "the Lion of Justice."

Really, Henry was cruel, treacherous, and greedy. He enforced justice because it brought money into the royal treasury. Every criminal either forfeited his estate to the king or paid a large fine. Henry's word could not be depended upon for a moment. When a certain nobleman was told that the king had said pleasant things about him, he cried out, "Alas! I am ruined; for misfortune has come to every man that the king praises." It would take the rest of this book to tell the story of all those whose hands or feet Henry had cut off, or whom he caused to be blinded.

**Henry's Only Son William** was drowned in crossing the Channel in a vessel called the "White Ship." The courtiers sent a little child to tell Henry the sad news; and this king, so hard and cruel to others, fell fainting to the floor, so stricken was he by his loss.

"The bark that held a prince went down,  
The sweeping waves rolled on;  
And what was England's glorious crown  
To him that wept a son?  
He lived — for life may long be borne  
Ere sorrow break its chain;  
Why comes not death to those who mourn?  
He never smiled again."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>From the poem "He Never Smiled Again," by Mrs. Hemans.

His daughter Matilda married Geoffrey, Count of Anjou, one of the most important provinces of France. Henry wished Matilda to succeed him, and had induced some of his barons to swear to support her; but when he died a stronger candidate for the throne appeared in the person of her cousin Stephen, Count of Blois. He was a good-natured, brave, and gallant gentleman, but lacked the sternness and force necessary to hold the haughty barons in check.

### Stephen, 1135-1154.

**The Reign of Stephen** taught the people of England how to value the rule of a stern king like Henry the First. All the evils of the feudal system were felt in Stephen's time. "Soon did the land fall into trouble," the Chronicle says, "and every man began to rob his neighbor as he might." The barons, secure in their great stone castles, set the king's authority at defiance. "When the traitors saw that he was a mild man, and a soft and a good, and that he did not enforce justice, they broke their oaths of allegiance to him, and built castles throughout the land. They greatly oppressed the wretched people, making them work at these castles, which, when finished, they filled with devils and evil men." Some of them did not take the trouble to build for themselves. They seized upon the nearest church or monastery and converted it into a castle.

The robber barons went out at night and seized men and women whom they suspected of concealing property, and tortured them until they gave it up. "They hung some up by their feet and smoked them with foul smoke, and some by the thumbs, and some by the head, and they hung burning things on their feet. And they put knotted cords about their heads and twisted them until they went into the brain. And some they put into a chest that was short and narrow and not deep, and they put sharp stones in it and crushed the

man therein, so that they broke all his limbs. And this state of things lasted the nineteen years that Stephen was king, and ever grew worse and worse."

The land about these castles was soon deserted, and the barons themselves frequently were reduced to starvation and were obliged to ride many miles before they could obtain food. "Then was corn dear, and flesh and cheese and butter, for there was none in the land; wretched men starved; some lived on alms, who had before been rich. Some fled from the country. Never was there more misery, and never acted heathen worse than these."



BEFORE THE BATTLE OF THE STANDARD.

**The Wars of Stephen and Matilda** added to this horrible state of lawlessness. Some of the nobles had attached themselves to the cause of Matilda, some to that of Stephen. But a large number held aloof from both. They wanted no sovereign at all, in order that they might be free to continue their robbery and murder.

David, King of Scotland, took up the cause of his niece, Matilda, and three times invaded England. The third time he was defeated by a brave priest, Thurstan, the old Arch-

bishop of York, in the "Battle of the Standard." A tall cross mounted on a cart and surrounded by the banners of Yorkshire saints was taken into the field. At the foot of the cross the archbishop read prayers, and the English archers and Norman knights pledged themselves to conquer or die. A furious attack of the Scots was repulsed, and David retired, leaving twelve thousand men dead upon the field.

Next, Matilda won a fierce battle at Lincoln. Stephen was made prisoner. She then marched to London and was acknowledged as queen. She enjoyed but a brief reign. London had been first to accept Stephen, and, to punish the city, Matilda levied a heavy tax upon the people and revoked the laws of King Edward, which had been sanctioned by Stephen. At this crisis, the followers of the captured Stephen appeared before the city. The bells were rung and the people at once joined his party. They attacked Matilda's army, drove them out of the city, and in the pursuit captured many of her followers, including Robert, Earl of Gloucester, the leading spirit of her cause. To save his life, he was forced to release Stephen, for whom he was exchanged. The war was now renewed, and Matilda was driven out of the country.

**Henry Plantagenet**, Matilda's son, had been growing in prosperity and power. First he was made Duke of Normandy, and then from his father he inherited the province of Anjou. In 1152, Henry married Eleanor, the former wife of the King of France, and with her came the two provinces of Aquitaine and Poitou. Henry now had more territory in France than the French king himself. He took the field against Stephen in support of his mother's claim. Stephen became alarmed and disheartened, and made peace by adopting Henry as his successor. The barons on both sides were compelled to take oath to carry out the agreement and to give hostages to Henry. Stephen and Henry then visited the chief cities of England, and were joyfully received by



the people, who felt now that the period of lawlessness was at an end. Henry now retired to France. But in the following year (1154) Stephen died, and Henry returned to England to become the first of the Plantagenet kings.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How were the people affected by Henry's charter?
2. In what ways was each of the Conqueror's sons unlike him?
3. What policy was agreed on with regard to the church appointments?
4. What does Stephen's reign teach us of the people of England?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. NORMANDY. Green, *Short History*, pp. 71-74; Jewett, *Story of the Normans*.
2. THE WHITE SHIP. C. W. Colby, *Sources of English History*, pp. 49-52; Mrs. Hemans's poem, *He Never Smiled Again*; D. G. Rossetti, *The White Ship*.
3. THE ROBBER BARONS. Green, *Short History*, pp. 101-103; Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 51-55.
4. ROBIN HOOD. Lang, *Book of Romance*, pp. 323-355; Pyle, *Merry Adventures of Robin Hood*.

## IV. THE EARLY PLANTAGENET KINGS.<sup>1</sup>

### A. THE DAYS OF CHIVALRY.

#### Henry II., 1154-1189.

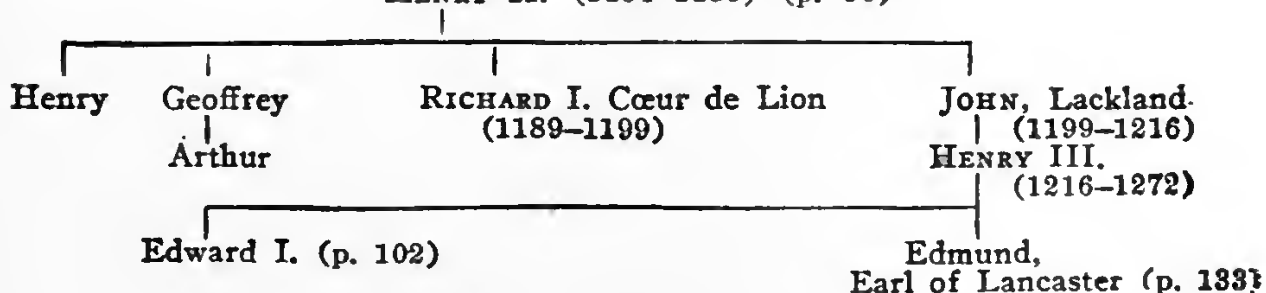
The Extent of Henry's Possessions made him the most powerful king in Europe. His dominions extended from the Pyrenees to Scotland, and included more than half of France. So far as his French lands were concerned, he was the vassal of the French king, but he was more powerful than his lord. The King of Scotland became his man, and during his reign parts of Wales and Ireland were joined to his dominions.

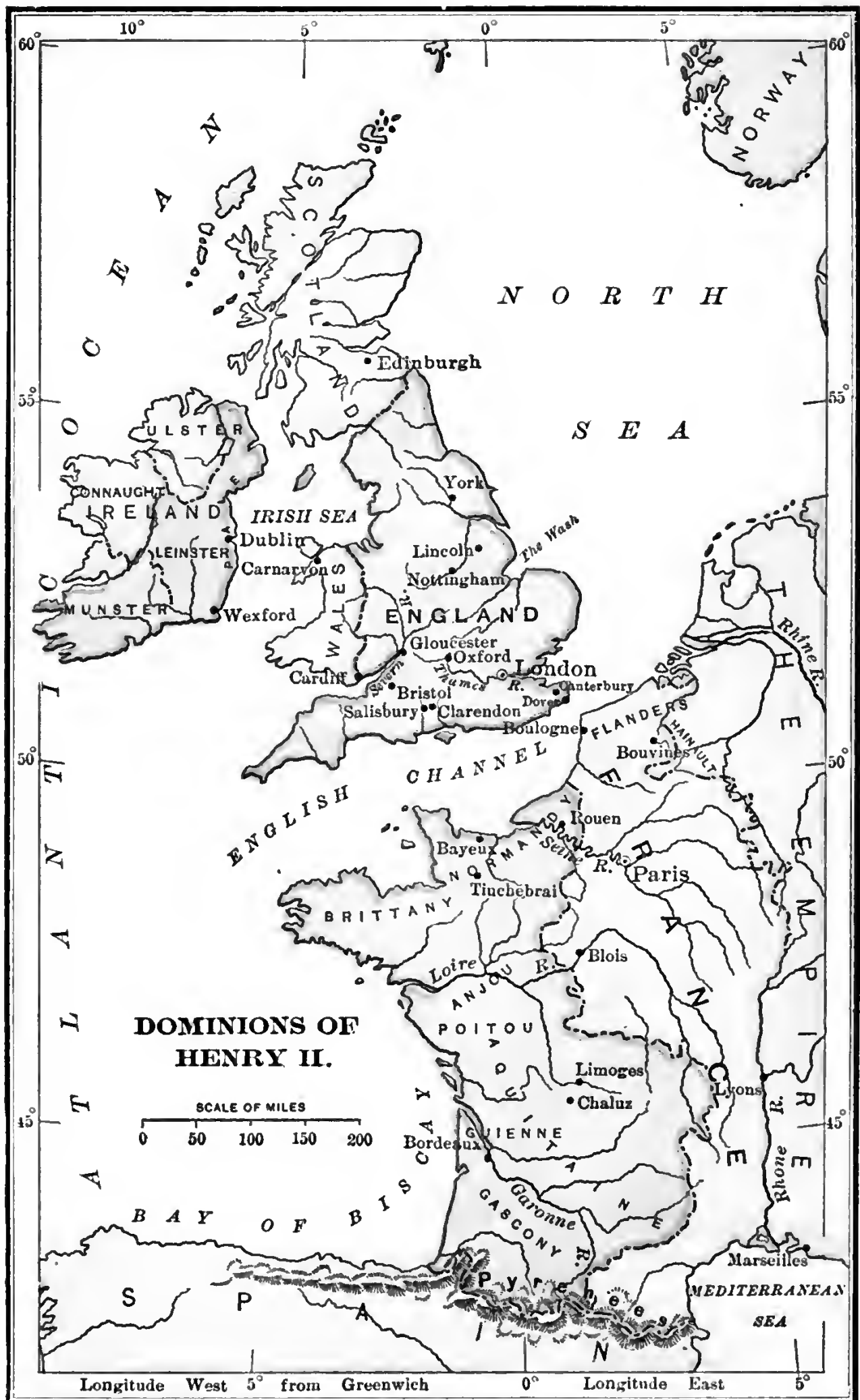
The Name Plantagenet reminds us of the beginning of the custom of having surnames. They were introduced by the Normans. Count Geoffrey, Henry's father, wore on his helmet a sprig of the broom plant (in Latin, *planta genistæ*). This gave rise to his surname, Plantagenet. *Went*

Henry's Character and Rule. Henry II. was a tall, strong man. He was always at work, and could not sit still, even when at church. In the early part of his reign he managed his own affairs, and, as he had a very large realm, was always busy. More than half his time was spent in France looking after his possessions there, and arranging marriages for his children and keeping them in order. This last grew

#### <sup>1</sup> THE EARLY PLANTAGENETS.

HENRY II. (1154-1189) (p. 56)





to be a very difficult business, on account of his queen, Eleanor, who brought them up to be willful and disobedient.

**Reforms of Henry.** Many castles that had been built in England during the civil war were still dens of robbery and murder, and one of the first acts of Henry's reign was to demolish several hundred of them. Henry declared that there should be peace and justice in the land, that the ancient laws should be restored, and that he would "spare neither friend nor foe who resisted." Accordingly those nobles who would not surrender their castles were besieged and compelled to yield. Henry also made reforms in the courts.

**The Circuit Courts.** A court is a means of securing to every man what rightfully belongs to him, and of fixing the punishment of those who break the laws. In the time of the Norman kings the county or shire court became the most important. The judges were the chief lords of the county, assisted by the king's sheriff, whose duty it was to see that justice was meted out to the offender. The sheriff was also the collector of the king's revenue, which came from a tax on the land, from the aids and reliefs of the feudal system, and from the fines imposed by the courts. In the troubled times of the preceding reign, the barons had driven out the king's sheriffs and conducted the courts for their own benefit. The unfortunate people who fell into their hands were sure to be fined, whether guilty or innocent, and the fine went to the lord instead of to the king.

Henry put a stop to these evils by carrying out more fully a practice that his grandfather, Henry I., had begun. He divided the kingdom into circuits and appointed men, called "the king's judges," who were to go through the country holding court in each hundred and county, hearing the suits of the people and punishing criminals. These judges did not fear to enter the estates and castles of the proudest nobles in the land. They also assisted the sheriff in the collection of

taxes. The people soon came to have the greatest respect for the king's court. The feudal courts held by the barons were abolished.

**Jury Trials.** Besides the ordeals of fire and water, and the Norman custom of wager of battle whereby contestants settled their dispute by a combat, Henry revived or established an agency for determining a man's guilt or innocence which we still use,—the grand jury. Wherever the king's judges held court, the sheriff would summon twelve men to form a jury. It was their duty to bring before the judges every person in their hundred who in their opinion had committed a crime. In Henry's time, if the accused pleaded not guilty and the jury could not prove his guilt, he was sent to the ordeal by cold water; this consisted in throwing the accused into a pond; if he floated without swimming, he was held innocent. In later times it became and still is the duty of a jury to pronounce an accused person guilty or innocent according to the evidence brought before them. Such a jury we call a trial jury.

**Taking Shield Money,** or scutage, was another way in which Henry crushed the power of the barons.

Every tenant of the king was bound to keep for the king's use a certain number of trained knights armed and mounted. But in the last reign the barons had used these soldiers to fight their own battles, and not the king's. In time of peace, these knights, who despised any employment except war, would enter the service of some foreign king, or go on a crusade to fight the infidels, or, if they remained at home, they would prey upon the defenseless people. Two measures adopted by Henry put a stop to these evils.

Instead of asking a soldier of his tenant, he taxed him "shield money," that is, enough money to pay a soldier. A baron who was bound to furnish ten knights now paid the king a tax sufficient to hire ten knights. When the king

wanted soldiers, he hired them where he pleased. If he did not want them, he put the money into his treasury. As the barons were unable to support their knights and pay the tax too, they had to disband them; and so large numbers of knights were obliged to make homes for themselves and engage in some useful occupation.

The second measure consisted in arming the people. Every freeman must be provided with spear and bow, or with sword and armor, according to his station. This was the old Anglo-Saxon system, which had enabled Harold II. to raise a large army in six days. The people were quick to see the benefit of this reform, while the barons regarded it as a humiliation.

**Relations of Church and State.** In order to understand the quarrel of Henry with the church and the Archbishop of Canterbury, we must see how the church was related to the government.

Christianity was established in England by the missionaries sent by the Pope. Augustine, the first missionary, became the first Archbishop of Canterbury and primate of the church in England. When there were several Saxon kingdoms, constantly engaged in war, there was always one church, peaceful and united. The union in the church helped to bring about unity in the state, and to preserve it. Feudal relations among the Saxons did not extend to the clergy; but with the coming of the Normans, the holders of the estates belonging to the church were obliged to take the oath of allegiance to the king, to render military service, and to perform other feudal obligations. The bishops and archbishops in England were always active in political affairs. We find Dunstan the leading statesman in the time of the later Saxon kings, and after that time nearly every wise statesman was a churchman.

William I. had kept the church in subjection to the state, but about the time he came to the throne the Pope began to

make the affairs of the church everywhere less dependent on the state. We have seen the compromise made by Henry I. as to the appointment of bishops. The control of the bishops had become especially important in England because of a change in the manner of trying accused clericals, — priests, deacons, and monks of all ranks, — including nearly all the educated men in the kingdom. In Saxon times, the bishop and sheriff presided over the same court, in which all classes of criminals were tried. But in the reign of William I. the bishop's court for the trial of clerical offenders was separated from that of the sheriff. Moreover, the penalties imposed in the bishop's court were much milder than those used in the other courts, and could not involve the shedding of blood. No clerical, for instance, could be sentenced to death, even for murder.

The **Constitutions of Clarendon** were drawn up at the king's order, and presented at a meeting of the lords and bishops of the realm at Clarendon in Wiltshire. They were intended to secure equal punishment for clericals and laymen guilty of the same offense, and to increase the king's power. A clerk charged with a secular offense was to answer in the king's court, then be tried in a church court, and if convicted, was to be degraded and punished as a layman. The constitutions forbade church appointments or appeals to the Pope without the consent of the king, and contained other obnoxious provisions. These laws, as affecting the church, had to be agreed to by the Archbishop of Canterbury, who was the representative of the Pope in England. If he should refuse, it would make no end of trouble for Henry.)

**Thomas à Becket** was the son of a returned crusader and a Saracen lady. There is a very pretty romance told of Thomas's father and mother, which you will find in the story books. Thomas received a careful education and became an archdeacon in the church. His brilliant qualities brought him into favor with the young king. In a short time he be-



came chancellor, or chief minister. Presently the king had him elected Archbishop of Canterbury; so Becket was ordained priest, and then consecrated as bishop. Henry chose Becket for the primate of the English church, supposing that his long-time friend and chancellor would do anything that he desired. But as soon as Becket entered his high office, he resigned the chancellorship, and set about to reform matters of church discipline. He refused to approve the Constitutions of Clarendon. The king, however, put these laws into operation without the archbishop's consent, and "clerics" who had committed crimes were "carried in carts before the judges just as though they were ordinary men." Henry showed his displeasure with Becket in so many ways that the archbishop fled to France.

**The Murder of Becket.** In order to insure a peaceful succession to the throne, Henry adopted a custom in use generally among the kingdoms of Europe, of having his eldest son crowned during his own reign.

The Archbishop of York officiated at the coronation ceremonies, but as this was an invasion of the rights of the primate, the Pope excommunicated the Archbishop of York and the bishops who had assisted him.



MURDER OF BECKET; FROM AN  
ILLUMINATED MANUSCRIPT.

Henry was now frightened, and made peace with Becket, who returned to England. Becket was asked to remove the sentence of excommunication, but he refused until the prelates had made amends. When the news of this was brought to Henry, in Normandy, he leaped up in passion and cried out in the presence of his court, "Among all the cowards here who eat my bread, is there not one who will rid me of this insolent priest?" Four of his knights immediately crossed the Channel and set out for Canterbury. They forced their way into the palace of the archbishop. When he refused to recall the excommunication they followed him into the church and slew him before the altar.

**The Result of the Murder** was to arouse much popular sympathy. When the news of his death, or martyrdom, spread through the land, there was a general outcry of horror against the king and the murderers. The Pope declared him to be a saint, and for three hundred and fifty years no shrine received the veneration of more numerous or devoted pilgrims than that of St. Thomas à Becket.

Henry, when he heard the news of the murder, foresaw the storm and prepared to meet it. He sent envoys to the Pope, promising to grant whatever terms might be required for absolution,—that is, for the forgiveness of his sin,—and insisting that he never meant by his hasty words that Becket should be slain. After withdrawing to Ireland for a time, he went barefoot to the shrine of Becket, and asked forgiveness on his knees at the grave of the dead man. The monks of the abbey scourged him with rods, and he then received absolution. This happened four years after the death of Becket.

**The Invasion of Ireland** was made by Henry with the intention of making his youngest son, John, king of that island. He allowed Richard de Clare, who was surnamed "Strongbow," to enlist English soldiers for this adventure. A feud among the native Irish kings had compelled Dermot,

the King of Leinster, to fly from the island. He now returned, and joined his native forces to those of Strongbow. Dublin was captured, and after a council at Cashel, the bishops submitted to Henry, who agreed to help them in their reforms. But the Norman barons in Ireland became thoroughly Irish. The English part of the island, known as "the Pale," was soon reduced to a small area around Dublin. During Henry's reign was begun the policy by which England would neither establish a government nor permit the Irish to rule themselves.

Henry's Troubles with his Sons made his later years heavy with sorrow. He had crowned his eldest son, Henry, as his successor, but this young man was impatient to come into possession of power, and wished his father to give him Normandy or England at once. Being refused, he joined his brothers Richard and Geoffrey, and King Louis of France, in an attempt to take away from King Henry his French provinces. Queen Eleanor also joined her sons against her husband, and the king shut her up in a strong castle, where he kept her the rest of his life. He also subdued his sons and defeated King Louis in this war.

Prince Henry sickened and died a few years later, during another rebellion, and it is said that no one shed a tear at his death. His treachery to his father, who was only too kind and forgiving to him, brought upon him the dislike of even those who pretended to be his friends.

Richard and the new king of France, Philip II., made war on King Henry in 1188 and drove him out of his father's old province of Anjou. The poor king was ill, broken in spirit, and tired of life. His only desire was to leave the kingdom to John, the only one of his sons he thought faithful to him. But he had no heart to fight against Richard. He surrendered to Philip and among other things promised to forgive all the rebels. On opening the list given him,

he saw among the first names that of John, who had secretly joined his enemies. This broke the old king's heart, and turning his face to the wall he said, "I have nothing left to care for now. Let all things go their way." A few days after this, he died.

### Richard I., 1189-1199.

**Richard** came to the throne without opposition, although his elder brother Geoffrey had left an infant son, and although his father had intended to leave the kingdom to John. Richard was crowned with great pomp at Westminster. The ceremonies attending his coronation have been followed in the case of every English sovereign since his time.

**The Third Crusade.** About two years before this, news came that Jerusalem, where the Christians had set up a



CRUSADERS.

kingdom in 1099, had been taken by the great Mohammedan leader Saladin. Both Richard and his father took the cross, that is, agreed to go on the crusade to deliver the holy city; and now all Europe was aflame with enthusiasm. Richard's friend Philip, King of France, was going, and Frederick, the greatest of the German Emperors, was on the way with a large army.

Two months after receiving his crown, Richard began his preparations. He needed vast sums of money, and his kingdom was of value to him only as a means of raising it. For he was really a foreigner; he had been brought up in Normandy and could not speak a sentence in English. During his reign of ten years, he spent only a few months in England, and he governed his kingdom through a minister.

In order to raise part of the needed money, he sold offices; the sheriffs, judges, and bishops purchased appointments. Those who held office paid in order to keep it. The Scottish king purchased his independence for a huge sum. Many of the larger towns purchased charters and the privilege of governing themselves. The king, as well as many of the nobles, compelled the Jews to lend vast amounts of money, and then massacred them by the hundred to be relieved of the necessity of paying it back. The estates belonging to the king were sold to the highest bidder. On his enemies, he imposed fines; from his friends he exacted presents, and everybody was taxed. The same processes were repeated when Richard passed over to Normandy on his way to the East. His final preparations were made in France, in connection with Philip. A hundred thousand men were marshaled beneath their banners, and marched southward to Marseilles, whence vast fleets transported them to Palestine.

Meanwhile the German army had gone on by land; but Emperor Frederick was drowned in crossing a river, and only a few of his men succeeded in fighting their way to Acre. This was a Moslem stronghold on the coast of Palestine, blocking the way to Jerusalem. The combined crusaders captured it, but only after the loss of many men. Richard was so domineering and jealous that King Philip quarreled with him and went home; and before long Richard also insulted Duke Leopold, the leader of the Germans. Weakened by dissensions, the crusaders accomplished little more. Jaffa

was taken, and Richard led his army almost to Jerusalem; but it was now much weaker than Saladin's, and Richard had to give up the struggle. Before turning back he ascended the Mount of Olives, whence he was told he could see within the walls of Jerusalem. But refusing to look, he covered his face and turned away, saying that he was not worthy to look upon the Holy City, if he could not deliver it from the enemies of the cross.

In the next hundred years there were several more crusades; but excepting a few years Jerusalem remained in Moham-medan hands. The chief effect of the crusades was to make western Europe acquainted with two higher civilizations — the Arabic and the Greek — and to give an impulse to trade.

**Richard's Return to England.** In returning overland through Austria Richard fell into the hands of his enemy Duke Leopold. In those days it was a piece of rare good fortune to get hold of a king. Leopold turned his prisoner over to his superior lord, the German Emperor, who locked him up in a strong castle until his mother and friends in England paid a heavy ransom for him.

During Richard's absence there had grown up serious trouble between his minister and the nobles. The King of France had conspired with John and several great barons to keep Richard a prisoner and place John upon the throne. Civil war had broken out, when Richard landed in England in 1194. The mere report of Richard's arrival scattered John's followers at once, so great was the dread of his prowess as a warrior. He regarded the rebellion with such contempt that he scarcely deigned to punish the leaders, and he forgave his brother for his treason. After a two months' stay in his kingdom, he gathered his soldiers together and sailed away to France.

**Wars with Philip and Death.** After Philip's return from the Holy Land, he had prepared to attack Richard's posses-



sions in France, and the rest of this reign is a tedious account of treaties, truces, and alliances which were broken as soon as made. Richard, however, held all his provinces and left them to be lost by his brother a few years later. In 1199 word came to Richard that one of his vassals, the Viscount of Limoges, had found upon his estate a buried treasure of silver and gold. Richard asserted his royal right to all the treasure. The viscount would not give all, although he surrendered the larger part of it. Richard accordingly besieged his castle at Chaluz, and swore he would take it by storm and hang every man within. The garrison offered to yield if he would promise safety, but were refused, and prepared to defend the castle to the last extremity. Before the castle was taken Richard was wounded by an arrow shot from the battlements. After twelve days of suffering he died.

**Knighthood and Chivalry.** Richard stands out in history as the ideal knight of the days of chivalry. His bravery in battle gained him the surname of Cœur de Lion, or "Lion-Heart." He fought more for the love of fighting than for victory, and treated his conquered enemy with generosity. He even pardoned the archer who from the walls of his own castle shot the arrow that caused his death. "What harm have I done you, that you have killed me!" asked Richard.



CONFERRING KNIGHTHOOD ON THE FIELD  
OF BATTLE; FROM AN ILLUMINATED  
MANUSCRIPT.

The archer replied, "You slew with your own hand my father and brothers." "I forgive you my death," returned the king, and ordered him to be released.



The Normans introduced into England the form of military education which ended in knighthood. The boys of noble parentage who were poor were put under the care of some distinguished noble, at whose castle they grew up and received their training. They first served as pages, their duties being to carry messages, to attend the ladies, and to learn the details of feudal service, and the duties and exercises of knighthood. At fourteen, the page became a squire. He now had to attend his lord in battle, carry his lance, assist him in putting on his armor, and rescue or defend him if he was wounded. At the age of twenty-one the squire became a knight and a member of the "chivalry," as the order of knights was called.

He was initiated into knighthood usually with a great deal of ceremony. He first had to spend a night fasting and praying in the church; the next day a discourse was made to him on the duties and qualities of a knight. He then knelt before his lord and promised to be faithful to him "with life and limb." Finally he received his armor and weapons, his golden spurs were buckled on, and the lord, striking him on the shoulder with the flat of his sword, said, "In the name of God, of St. Michael, and of St. George, I dub thee Knight; be brave, bold, and loyal." It was the duty of the knight not only to fight bravely, but to be gentle and merciful; to be kind to the weak, to treat women with courtesy and respect — in one word, to be *chivalrous*.

**The Tournament** was made by Richard of great importance in England to give the young men practice in the use of arms. This was a mock battle fought by mounted knights in full armor, but with blunted weapons. A large field was leveled and fenced in, called the "lists." Two companies of knights would then be chosen, taking their places at opposite ends of the lists. At a given signal they charged, meeting in the center with a terrible shock, the object of each knight

being to unhorse his adversary. If all the knights were unhorsed, they fought on foot with swords until one side yielded. The victors' names were then proclaimed by a herald, and the victors received prizes from the hands of the lady who had been chosen queen of the tournament. Sometimes two champions would joust by themselves, and then the victor would fight any one who chose to dispute his championship.

**The People**, during Richard's long absence from England, had made great progress in the art of carrying on their own government. Under the rule of Hubert Walter, the king's minister, or "justiciar," as he was then called, they were encouraged and trained in this respect. He taught them to choose assessors to levy and collect taxes; to elect juries for the courts and representatives to transact any business that needed to be done. He thus prepared the people to take a more active part in the government of England.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Who were benefited by Henry II.'s reforms? In what way?
2. Why did the church object to the Clarendon Constitutions?
3. Compare the jury of Henry's time with the compurgators of the Saxons.
4. How did Richard's reign affect the cities? The people?
5. Why were the king's courts better than those of the shire?
6. What does the story of Becket teach about the power of the church?
7. What led to the Crusades? How did they affect Europe?
8. How did the training of a knight fit him for life? Describe the tournament; its value; good and bad results.

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THOMAS À BECKET. DeVere, *St. Thomas of Canterbury*; Green, *Short History*, pp. 106-112.
2. THE CRUSADE OF RICHARD I. Archer, *Crusade of Richard I.*; Scott, *The Talisman*, Ch. XXVII.
3. KNIGHTHOOD AND CHIVALRY. Green, *Short History*, pp. 182-3; Blaisdell, *Stories of English History*, 96-100.
4. RICHARD'S IMPRISONMENT AND ESCAPE. Morris, *English Historical Tales*, pp. 87-100.

## B. THE WINNING OF THE CHARTER.

John, 1199-1216.

**King John** had all the bad qualities of the Norman house, and none of the good ones. He was avaricious, cruel, and desperately wicked. When fortune smiled upon him, he was haughty and contemptuous; when in difficulties, abject and cowardly. It was said of him that "he neither feared God nor regarded man." His coronation oath required him "to defend the church, to maintain justice, to make good laws and abolish evil customs." He did none of these things. His very meanness and cruelty, however, had good results; they drove his subjects to revolt and put a check upon his power in the form of the *Magna Charta*, or Great Charter, which has ever since been the safeguard of the people's liberties.

**Loss of the French Provinces.** The lawful heir to the throne was not John, but Arthur, Duke of Brittany, the son of John's elder brother Geoffrey. Richard had wished Arthur to become king, but Arthur was only a boy, and the old Saxon custom of electing from the royal family a man who could lead in battle, prevailed. John was so thoroughly hated in France that the people refused to acknowledge him, and supported the claim of Arthur. As a vassal of the King of France, Arthur called upon his lord to protect his rights in the French provinces, and King Philip put an army at Arthur's disposal.

In the war which followed, Arthur laid siege to a castle in Poitou where Queen Eleanor was living. Though she had been John's strongest supporter, Arthur hoped by taking her prisoner to secure her aid for himself. But John suddenly appeared and raised the siege, taking Arthur prisoner. He shut the boy up in Rouen and, it is said, commanded the jailer to put out his eyes, but Arthur's pleadings were so pitiful that he was spared. A short time after this, Arthur disap-

peared and was never seen again. The tradition is that his uncle came to see him one night, accompanied by his squire, and that they took the boy out in a boat on the Seine, and there murdered him and sank his body in the river.

Whether John committed the murder or not, Philip accused him of it, and summoned him to Paris to answer for the death of his vassal. According to the feudal law, as John and Arthur were both his vassals, so far as their French provinces were concerned, Philip had a right to try John in his own court. As John refused to appear, Philip declared his estates forfeited and immediately took possession of Anjou, Normandy, and the other provinces north of the Loire which had belonged to the English king.

When the news was brought to John that Philip was taking one castle after another, and that the people were accepting his rule, he said, "Let them go; by and by I will recover in a day what they have taken in a year." By and by he tried, but his army was terribly defeated in the battle of Bouvines in Flanders. By that battle England and Normandy became separated. Since the Norman conquest, there had been two races in England, Normans and English; henceforth there was to be but one. There had been two languages, but from this time they gradually blend. The proud Norman could no longer point to the despised English as a conquered race, for his own country had now been conquered, and he must call himself an Englishman. "Thus the two races, so long hostile, found at last that they had common interests and common enemies."

**Stephen Langton.** John's second quarrel concerned the appointment of an Archbishop of Canterbury. We have seen that when this important place became vacant, the king usually selected some one to fill it. When John ordered the monks of Canterbury to elect his treasurer, the Bishop of Norwich, they secretly chose one of their own number, their sub-

prior Reginald, and sent him off to Rome to be confirmed by the Pope. He began to chatter about his new dignity, however, as soon as he had crossed the Channel, and the action of the monks came to the ears of John. In a great rage he compelled them to elect his own candidate.

It happened that the papal throne was occupied at this time by one of the wisest and greatest of the Popes, Innocent III. He declared both elections void, and by his advice the monks elected a learned and pious Englishman, then at Rome, Stephen Langton, whom John highly esteemed.

But John refused to allow Langton to land in England, and began to plunder the monks. He drove them out of the convent with armed men and compelled them to leave the country. Innocent then laid England under an interdict; that is to say, he forbade the clergy to perform any church service. When the appointed day came the churches were instantly closed. No marriage service could be performed, and the dead had to be buried without a prayer in unhallowed ground. The sudden cutting off of all forms of religion filled the people with horror. Deprivation of the public exercises of religion and of consecrated burial meant shutting against them the gate of heaven. John, however, was apparently content to stay out of heaven anyway, and he took especial pleasure in confiscating the property of all the clergy who obeyed the interdict.

When the interdict had lasted a year the Pope excommunicated the king. This deprived him of all connection with the church and forbade all pious persons to associate with him. As John treated the excommunication with as much contempt as the interdict, Innocent threatened to declare his throne vacant, to absolve his subjects from the oath of allegiance, and to give his kingdom to Philip the King of France. Philip quickly gathered an army to make good his claim.

The situation threw John into a panic of fear. He knelt at the feet of the Pope's legate and took the crown from his head. By this act he gave his kingdom to the Pope. He then took the same oath to the Pope that vassals took to their lords, and received his crown again, on condition that he pay to the Pope annually the sum of one thousand marks. He was no longer a sovereign, but a vassal. Langton was received as archbishop, the property of the monks was restored, and Philip, who had already met defeat off the coast of Flanders, gave up his idea of invasion.

**The Great Charter.** It was just after these events that John tried to regain his French provinces north of the Loire, and lost the battle of Bouvines (1214). After this failure he brought to England soldiers hired in France, determined to master the barons who had refused to fight for him, and who were making plans, under the direction of Stephen Langton, to protect the English people against the king. For John not only took away the property of his subjects by force, but got rid of his opponents by poison and secret assassination. No man's life was safe. Many were thrown into dungeons and left to starve, never being brought to trial for their pretended offenses.

Once he sent to demand the children of a Sussex baron, William of Braose, as hostages. But the baron's wife said, "He did not take such good care of his nephew that I should want to entrust my children to him." For this, she and her children were put in prison and left to die of hunger. He once demanded a large sum of money from a rich Jew, and when refused, he locked up the Jew and ordered one of his teeth to be pulled out each day. After losing seven, the Jew paid the money.

In 1213 it was proposed to the barons that John be asked to reissue the charter given by Henry I. The next year the barons met in the church at Bury St. Edmunds, in

Suffolk, and one by one they swore at the altar that if the king did not grant the charter they would begin war against him.

When the charter was presented to the king by a large number of barons, he turned pale and trembled as he looked into the stern and resolute faces before him. "Give me till Easter to think about this," he said. The barons understood him, and when they presented the charter again, at Oxford, they had two thousand armed knights at their back. Langton read aloud the demands of the people, which ended with the



THE BARONS TAKING OATH AGAINST JOHN.

sentence: "And if these claims are not immediately granted, our arms shall do us justice."

John angrily refused the charter. The barons at once levied war against the king, calling themselves "the army



of God and of the Holy Church." Robert FitzWalter was elected commander, and London opened her gates to the army. When John saw that further delay meant the loss of his crown, he asked the leaders to name a day and place where he could meet them.

"Let the day," they replied, "be the 15th of June and the place Runnymede." And there on the Thames near London the nobility of England and the representatives of the people met the king with a few followers, and compelled him to sign the Great Charter, or Magna Charta, which became the foundation stone of English liberty. Besides the provisions of Henry's charter it contained many new ones, for the protection of life, liberty, and property. It has been confirmed by more than thirty kings and parliaments since that time, and is still considered the most important document in the history of the English people.

**Provisions of the Charter.** In the charter the king agrees to levy no tax without the consent of a general council of the kingdom. "No freeman," it declares, "shall be taken or imprisoned or deprived of his property, or outlawed, or banished, or in any way destroyed, nor will we pass upon him or send upon him, unless by the lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land. We will sell to no man, nor will we deny to any man either justice or right." These two are the most famous sentences in the Great Charter, and their meaning is this: The King of England was henceforth not to take the people's money, nor put them in prison and punish them as John had done. Such things could be done only after a fair trial before a jury of their fellow-countrymen. The king was bound to obey the law as much as the humblest subject.

**Final Troubles and Death of John.** The king had no mind to live up to such principles as these. He appealed to the Pope, who issued an order declaring the charter of

no effect. He also pronounced the curse of the church against the barons and suspended Langton from his office for taking part in the matter. The charter said that John should dismiss his hired troops, but as soon as he got away from Runnymede he hired more and set out into the north of England to punish the barons who had led the movement against him. And the barons did not suffer alone. Never since the days of the Conqueror were such horrors known in England. The people were murdered, tortured, and plundered. Castles, cities, and even the humble homes of the poor were burned. In the morning, John himself applied the torch to the home where he had slept at night.

The barons had in the mean time invited the King of France to come to their help with an army, promising in return the crown of England to his son Louis. Louis came and laid siege to some castles held by the retainers of John, when suddenly matters were brought to a standstill by the death of the king. As his army, in its career of murder and plunder, was crossing the Wash, the tide suddenly rose and carried away his baggage, including a large amount of money. His rage at this misfortune made him ill, and a few days later he died.

### Henry III., 1216-1272.

**The People and the Barons** fought together against King John. Under the early Norman kings we have seen the people fighting against the barons. But now that the king had grown strong enough to oppress both the barons and the people, we find the last two combining their powers against a wicked king. The situation must have been desperate indeed when they were willing to accept a French king. But when they saw that it was the purpose of Louis to take away their estates and give them to his French followers, they gave the crown to Henry, the nine-year-old son of John.

**Henry's Guardians.** As Henry III. was under age the kingdom was put under the care of a guardian chosen by the Great Council. The French were driven from the country, and the charter was reissued in a form which left out the provision that the king could levy a general tax only by the consent of the council.

After the first guardian's death, Hubert de Burgh became the chief power in England. His great work was in driving out the foreign soldiers that John had brought in from France, and to whom he had given large estates. Hubert's motto was "England for the English." Henry, who became of age about this time, favored the French, and had Hubert put in prison.



WESTMINSTER ABBEY.

**Henry's Government.** Henry reminds us of Edward the Confessor in his liking for foreigners. His wife was a French lady, and as his mother also was French, it took a large number of estates, castles, and lordships to supply all their relatives that came swarming over to England. Only a few leavings remained for the Englishmen themselves. To add to the troubles, the Pope, as feudal lord, levied heavy taxes upon the laity and the clergy to carry on his long struggle with the Emperor Frederick II.

As soon as Henry was freed from the restraints of his guardians, he began the old practice of taxing the people without consulting their willingness in the matter. Unlike the kings who came before him, he lived at peace with the church. He rebuilt Westminster Abbey as it is to-day. He

built the cathedral at Salisbury and one hundred and forty-seven other churches and convents in various places throughout England. His extravagance at home and his lavish expenditures on foreigners, however, at last drove his people to revolt.

**Provisions of Oxford.** In 1258 there was a failure of crops in the land, owing to continued heavy rains. Many thousands of people died of starvation. In the midst of the general distress, came a demand from the Pope for 130,000 marks for sustaining the cause of Henry's son Edmund in Sicily. When the king entered the Great Council, or Parliament, which had been called to Westminster to consider the condition of the realm, there was an ominous clatter of swords. He looked timidly around and asked, "Am I a prisoner?"

"No, sir," said Roger Bigod, "but your extravagance and your foreign favorites have brought misery upon the country, and we demand reform."

This Parliament drew up a series of resolutions which were known as the Provisions of Oxford. The chief feature of these was the appointment of a committee of the barons to supervise the actions of the king. The Pope complicated matters by declaring the Provisions null and void, and releasing the king from his oath to observe them. The whole dispute was then referred to Louis IX. of France, who decided in favor of the king. The barons, however, refused to accept the decision, and both sides prepared to settle the dispute by open war.

**At Lewes** the king's army was surprised by the barons. Though Prince Edward defeated a section of the barons' army, the barons carried the day, and captured both the king and the prince.

**Simon de Montfort** was the leader in this Barons' War. He was a Frenchman by birth, but had inherited an earldom in England through his mother, and had become the most

English of Englishmen. He was a soldier and statesman of the highest order, and was popularly known, on account of his strict justice and moral worth, as "Sir Simon the Righteous." Henry stood in mortal terror of Earl Simon. Once when he was rowing on the Thames in his pleasure barge, a thunderstorm came on. The king, who was dreadfully afraid, took refuge in a garden along the river, where he was met by de Montfort.

"Why do you fear?" asked the earl of the trembling king. "The storm has passed over."

The king replied, "I fear thunder and lightning beyond measure, but I am more afraid of you than of anything else in the world."

Some of the barons had fought against the king for selfish reasons, but Simon insisted that all the people should be represented in the government, so that whatever was done in Parliament would receive the support of the whole nation.

**De Montfort's Parliament** was called in 1265, the year after the battle of Lewes. Writs were issued to certain cities and boroughs, asking each of them to send two representatives, and two knights were sent from each shire. These, together with the bishops and barons, made the English Parliament complete. This Parliament did no work of importance, but the people had been taught by Simon the manner in which they might exercise their power, an important matter in time of need.

**Evesham.** But the king's supporters had not laid down their arms. Many barons were afraid that Simon was getting too much power. What they wanted was a forceful and patriotic king who could rule by himself, and not a king ruled by Sir Simon, be he ever so righteous. Prince Edward had been held as a hostage after the battle of Lewes, but he escaped from his guardians. Joining his forces to those of the dissatisfied barons, he attacked Simon's party at a dis-

advantage at Evesham and utterly defeated it. When the earl saw the great array led by the prince, he said, "They are approaching with wisdom; let us therefore commend our souls to God, for our bodies are Edward's." He asked no quarter, but died with his son, sword in hand, in a little valley where the carnage was thickest.

**General Progress in the Time of Henry III.** Henry's taste for the fine arts led to a great improvement in English architecture. The heavy, massive style of the Norman castle with its round arches and prison-like exterior gave place to the Gothic style, characterized by the pointed arch, tapering spires, and stained glass windows, giving to the whole structure a graceful and lofty appearance. The century in which Henry lived was famous throughout Europe as an age of architecture. The building trades were organized into guilds, or societies, which gave the greatest attention to training their apprentices into finished workmen.

**The Friars and their Charitable Work.** It was in Henry's reign that Mendicant or Begging Friars, followers of Saint Francis and Saint Dominic, came to England. Most of the earlier monks had shut themselves up in convents, where they devoted themselves to learning and to the salvation of their own souls; but these new brothers went among the humblest people, tending the sick, teaching the ignorant, and reforming the vile. They did a splendid work in spreading intelligence among the lowest classes.

**Language and Literature.** For a century and a half after the Norman conquest, the English tongue was a despised language and was not used in writing. But in the thirteenth century it began to come into use again, and a number of short songs and ballads and two longer poems were written. The first of the longer poems was a history of England called the "Brut," from Brutus, the supposed founder of Britain, written by Layamon, a priest. The second was the "Ormu-

lum," an arrangement in verse of parts of the New Testament. The following are the first two lines of the "Ormulum":

"Thiss boc iss nemmed Orrmulum  
Forrthi that Orrm itt wrohhte."

(This book is named Ormulum, for the reason that Orm wrote it.)

**Roger Bacon** was a Franciscan monk who lived at Oxford, devoting his time to the study of science. He knew how to make gunpowder and predicted steamboats, locomotives, airships, telescopes, and suspension bridges. His experiments and discoveries were so wonderful that he was accused of receiving the aid of the devil, and was imprisoned in a dungeon for ten years. People were not allowed to read his writings until long after his death.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What three quarrels make up the story of John's reign? How did each end?
2. How did the loss of the French provinces affect the people of England?
3. Why did the people gain power in the reigns of John and Henry III.?
4. What did Hubert de Burgh and Simon de Montfort do for the people? What rights did the Great Charter secure to them?
5. Describe the effects of interdict and of excommunication.
6. Name some good and some bad features of Henry III.'s reign.
7. Compare the work of the Friars with that of the older orders of monks.

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. **THE GREAT CHARTER.** Green, *Short History*, pp. 122-132.
2. **PRINCE ARTHUR.** Shakspeare, *King John*.
3. **SIR SIMON THE RIGHTEOUS.** Green, *Short History* (see index).
4. **THE BLACK AND GRAY FRIARS.** Green, *Short History*, pp. 147-152; Guest and Underwood, *Handbook of English History*, pp. 212-215



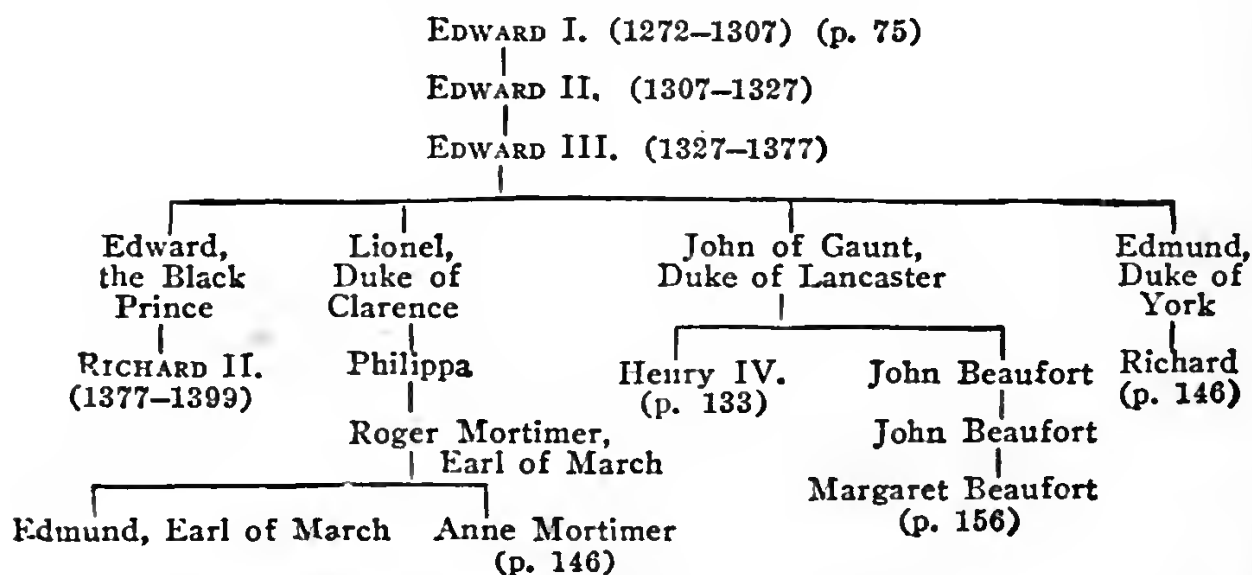
## V. THE LATER PLANTAGENET KINGS.<sup>1</sup>

### A. THE WARS WITH SCOTLAND.

#### Edward I., 1272-1307.

**The Greatest of the Plantagenets**, Edward I., born in 1239, was a grown-up man when he became king. He was tall and commanding in appearance, a superb horseman, and accomplished in the use of weapons. But more than this, **he** was wise and prudent in his actions, seldom lost control of his temper, and was faithful to his family, his friends, and his people. His wife, Eleanor, the daughter of the King of Castile, accompanied him on a crusade to the Holy Land. Edward became such a terror to the Saracens that an attempt was made to get rid of him by assassination. A Moslem fanatic gained access to his tent, and suddenly stabbed him in the arm with a poisoned dagger. The prince struck the would-be murderer dead, and Eleanor sucked the poison from the wound until a surgeon could be found to dress it.

#### <sup>1</sup>THE LATER PLANTAGENETS.



Edward and Eleanor were greatly beloved by their people. When the queen died, her body was brought to Westminster for burial. At every halting place of the funeral procession Edward caused to be set up a richly ornamented cross, that those of after times might cherish her memory. Three of these crosses, one of which is Charing Cross in London, are still preserved.

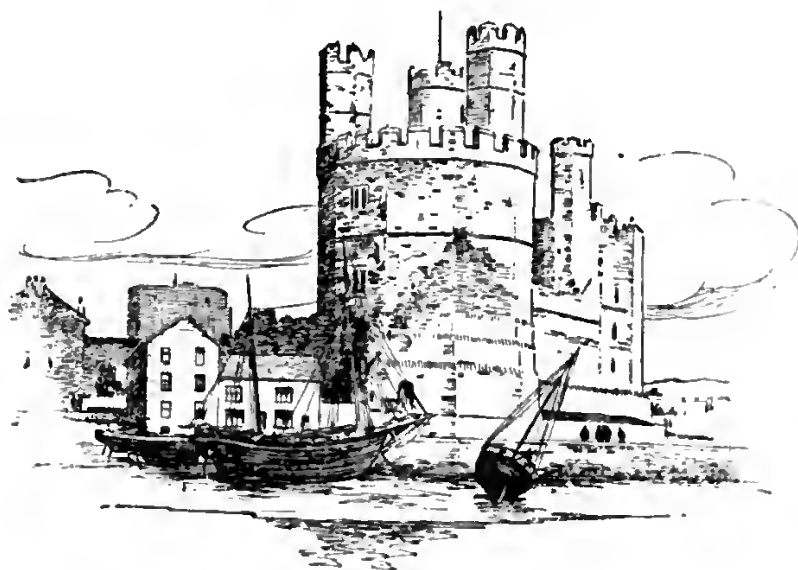
**Edward's Policy.** Edward had slain Earl Simon at Evesham, but continued his policy in keeping foreigners out of the country and in giving all classes of the people a share in the government. When he wanted to make a law that affected the barons, he called them to consult about it. And so with the farmers, the townsmen, and the merchants. In this way he secured many excellent laws to which the people gave a willing obedience.

**Order Restored.** The civil wars in the time of Henry III. had left the land infested by bands of robbers. A man's life was not safe if he traveled alone, and even the walled towns had to be carefully guarded. Once, at the time of a great fair in Boston, a company of robbers disguised themselves as priests and gained entrance to the town. In the middle of the night they attacked and murdered all who resisted them, and got away with an immense amount of plunder. Edward ordered that every man from fifteen to sixty years of age should provide himself with arms, and all were bound to pursue and capture lawbreakers. The trees and bushes were cleared away from the sides of the roads, in order that travelers might not be waylaid by robbers, and the evils left by the former reign soon passed away.

With the consent of Parliament, a higher export duty was levied on wool and leather. Another law, called the Statute of Mortmain, forbade the giving of any land to the church without the king's consent. Lands belonging to the church escaped certain feudal dues to the king, such as reliefs and

wardship. The church now owned a large part of England; besides, it had become the custom for some landholders to give their land to the church and then receive it back again as tenants on easy terms, simply to escape these dues.

**The Rulers of Wales** had, since the time of Athelstan and Edgar, acknowledged the English king as overlord. But Llewellyn, the Prince of Wales, refused to obey the summons to attend Edward's coronation. A fleet and an army



CASTLE OF CARNARVON.

soon obliged Llewellyn to submit. Six years later, news suddenly came that large bands of Welsh had attacked the western counties and were murdering the people and carrying away their property. War began again and was pressed vigorous-

ly. Llewellyn was defeated and slain, his brother David was put to death as a traitor, and Wales was annexed to England.

The Welsh had an old tradition that none but a native-born prince should ever rule over them. While Edward and his queen were living at the castle of Carnarvon, which he had built, a son was born to them. The king showed the child to the people as their prince; and they were satisfied to accept him, for he was born in the land according to the old prophecy. The prince afterward became King Edward II.; and from that time on the title of Prince of Wales has usually been borne by the heir to the English throne.

**Expulsion of the Jews.** Shortly after the conquest of Wales, the king by a royal edict expelled all the Jews from England. They were the money lenders of the country and

were useful to the king when money was needed quickly. The Jews had been shamefully treated in England. They were under the special protection of the king, but the kings "protected" them as men protect cattle which they fatten for slaughter. The people demanded their expulsion on the ground that they were usurers and extortioners. About sixteen thousand of them left the country, and very few dared to return. Until Cromwell's time, several hundred years later, we hear no more about Jews in England.

**Scottish Wars Begun.** The year after the conquest of Wales, the King of Scotland was killed, leaving as nearest heir to the throne a granddaughter whose father was the King of Norway. Edward now proposed to marry his son, Prince Edward, to the Maid of Norway, hoping in this way to unite England and Scotland. The Scots agreed to this marriage; but it was prevented by the death of the little maid (she was only seven years old) on the voyage to Scotland.

So many claimants to the throne of Scotland now appeared, that the Scottish nobles agreed to let Edward select from among them the rightful heir. They also admitted Edward's claim that the Scottish king should do homage to him, as Scottish kings had unwillingly done a few times to the Saxon and Norman kings of England. Edward chose John Baliol to be King of Scotland, and received his oath of fealty.

It was the right of any man who had lost a case at law in a vassal's court to appeal to the court of the lord to review the suit. The right of hearing appeals from Scottish courts had never been insisted on by the English kings; but Edward now demanded this right. The Scots were so angry that they compelled their king to resist at the cost of war. Edward invaded Scotland with a strong force, defeated and captured Baliol at Dunbar (map, p. 106), declared the kingdom forfeited, and placed it under the control of English governors.

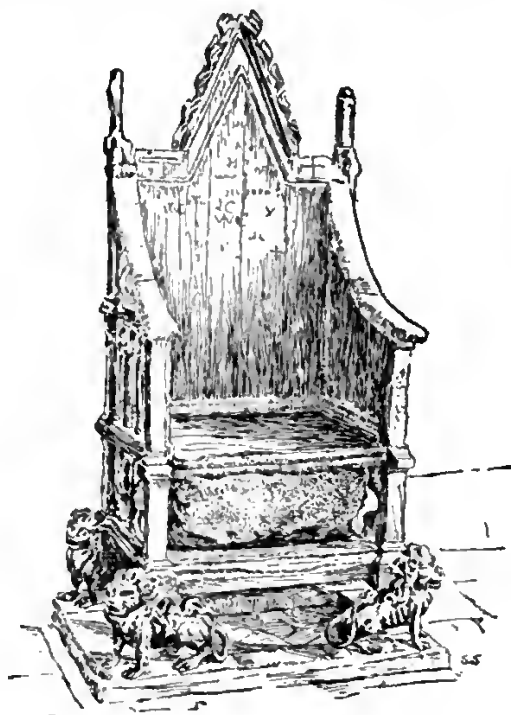


SCOTLAND.

**The Stone of Destiny.** At Scone was kept a wonderful block of stone on which the kings of Scotland always sat when they were crowned. This stone was said to be the very one on which Jacob rested his head when, in his dream, he

saw the angels ascending and descending a ladder let down from heaven. Edward now took it away to Westminster and placed it under the coronation chair of the kings of England, where you may see it to-day.

**The Model Parliament of 1295.** Two years before the beginning of the Scottish war, trouble broke out between Edward's province of Gascony in the south of France and the king of that country. Having two serious wars in prospect, Edward called together a full Parliament of the realm. As he said, "Any measure that concerns the whole nation should be agreed to by the whole nation." This Parliament was attended by all the bishops, abbots, earls, and barons, besides two knights from each shire and two burgesses, or citizens, from every important borough, or town. The clergy of each cathedral and parish also sent a delegate. This was called the "Model Parliament," and is important because it did serve as a model for later Parliaments.



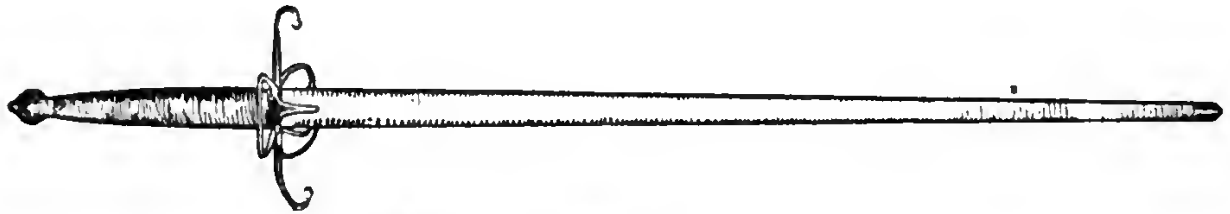
CORONATION CHAIR.

This Parliament voted taxes to carry on the war. The war was so expensive that two years later Edward called for more money, this time without the Parliament voting it.

**Confirmation of the Charters.** Edward's arbitrary taxes alarmed the people. The barons were especially offended, and refused to go with Edward to fight in France. When the king told the Earl of Norfolk with an oath that "he would either go or hang," the earl replied with the same oath, "he would neither go nor hang." The clergy and nobles now joined hands and compelled the king to grant a "confirmation" of the previous charters, by which he also agreed never

to take any tax from the whole realm without the consent of Parliament.

**William Wallace.** Among the Scots who quarreled with their English governors was Sir William Wallace. He retreated to the mountains and gathered there a band of outlaws, which soon grew into an army. The English governors advanced to attack him at the end of a bridge crossing the river Forth near Stirling. Wallace waited till the English were half across the bridge, and then fell upon them and defeated them. In a few days Wallace was master of Scotland



SIR WILLIAM WALLACE'S SWORD.

and had begun to ravage the northern English counties.

**Falkirk.** Edward, having concluded a peace with France, returned and speedily marched against Wallace, coming up with him at Falkirk. The Scottish army consisted of footmen armed with long pikes or spears. They were drawn up in circles to oppose the cavalry and archers of the English. The English "long bow" and "cloth-yard shaft" were at this time famous throughout Europe. Every village green was the scene of archery contests on festival days. The English aim was true, and, with "bowstring drawn to the ear," the effect was deadly. The king ordered the archers to concentrate their fire upon one point in the Scottish ranks. A great gap soon appeared. Into this charged the armored knights with lance and sword. Many brave Scots refused to fly and grimly died where they stood. Others kept up the struggle for independence, and it was seven years before Edward was able to join Scotland to England. Wallace was betrayed to the English and hanged as a traitor.



**Robert Bruce.** The Scotch did not want the rule of Edward, however good it might be, and they determined to manage their affairs in their own way. A new leader was soon found in Robert Bruce, grandson of John Baliol's chief rival in the contest for the Scottish throne.

When King Edward heard of the new revolt, he vowed to take vengeance upon the traitors. But though many of the Scotch leaders were seized and executed, Bruce himself escaped, hiding in the caves among the mountains. Here he remained; and though hunted with bloodhounds, and often in danger of capture, he waited patiently until a fitting time should come for renewing the struggle. Before the year had passed, he reappeared in Carrick, his home, and the whole population rose at once to join him. In 1307 Edward again set out for Scotland. But he was now nearly seventy years old, and, worn out with toil and strife, he fell sick and died before reaching the border.

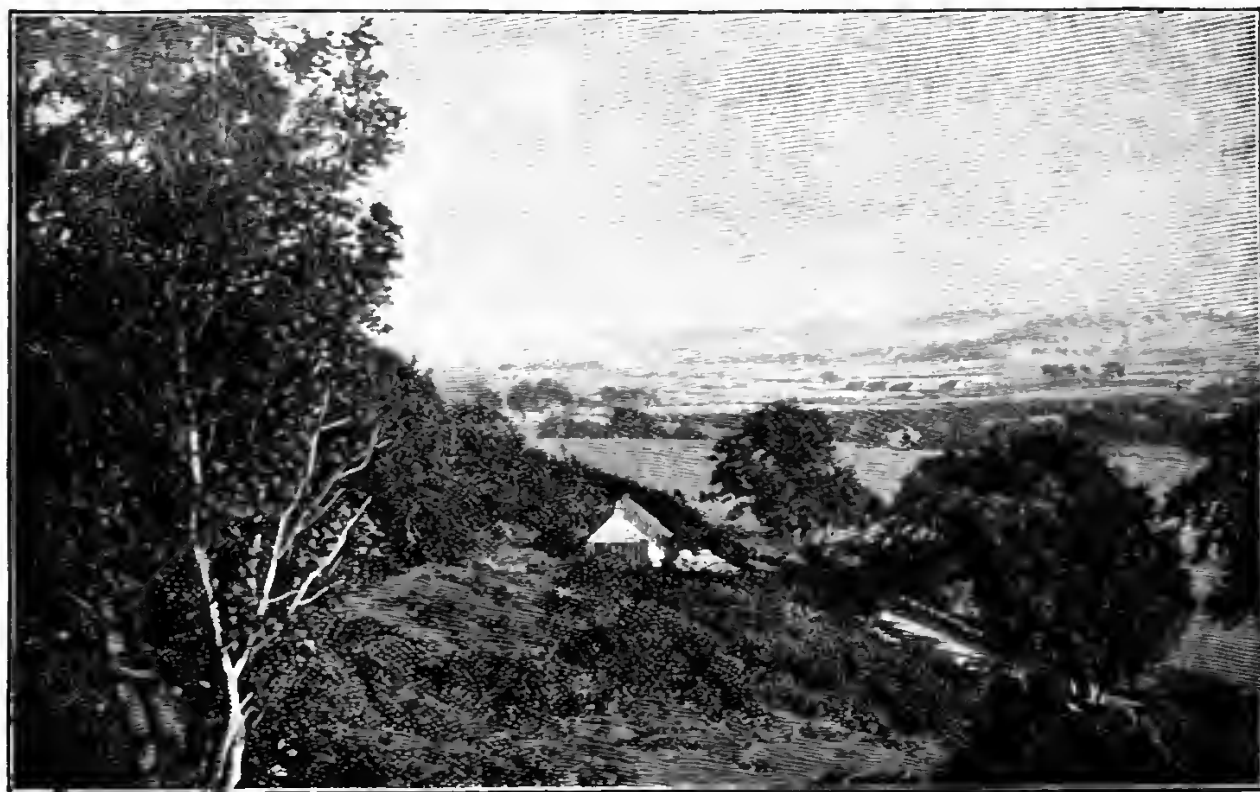
### Edward II., 1307-1327.

**The Reign of Edward II.** showed how necessary it was to the peace and safety of England to have a strong king. Edward's wise and good mother had died when he was six years old, leaving him to be brought up by servants. He grew up in idleness, caring only for pleasure. He was a vigorous young man and liked to ride in the tournament and the chase, but as for the work of governing England, Edward would have none of it. As you have noticed in the history of England so far, a strong king has often been followed by a weak one. In one way this was an advantage, because the people had to keep sharp watch of the king and his government, and were gradually educated to take entire charge of it.

**Piers Gaveston,** Edward's most intimate friend, was the son of a favorite old Gascon servant of his father. Piers was a clever, witty knight, but conceited, insolent, and greedy of

money. Edward I. had seen the bad influence of this man on his son and had banished him from the country. But Edward II., as soon as his father died, recalled Gaveston and made him Earl of Cornwall. When Edward went to France to marry, Gaveston was left in charge of the kingdom; and on Edward's return he kept Gaveston in power. The barons, smarting under their humiliation, insisted on his banishment; but Edward soon recalled him.

**Bannockburn; Scotland Independent.** The old king's dying injunction to his son was to finish the Scotch war himself,



FIELD OF BANNOCKBURN.

but Edward II. appointed a new governor of Scotland, and went away to his court in the south. Robert Bruce improved his opportunity. Within a few years he got back everything that Edward I. had taken from him, and laid siege to Stirling, the last stronghold of the English across the border. The garrison there agreed to surrender if not relieved by midsummer, 1314. This news at last roused the king, and he led an army against the Scots.

At Bannockburn, Bruce made preparation for the reception of the English by digging great pits in front of his army, in which he placed sharpened stakes, concealing them with a covering of turf. The English archers as usual began the battle, but they were poorly supported, and were driven off by the Scottish cavalry. Then an English charge over the pitfalls threw the whole English army into confusion. While the knights and the horses were floundering about, wounded by the sharp stakes, a body of Scotch servants and camp-followers appeared over the brow of a hill. The English, taking this for a reënforcement, fled in haste, pursued by the Scots, who overtook and slew hundreds in their flight. After this Bruce had everything his own way, and a few years later Edward gave up the attempt to reconquer Scotland. The Scots honor the battle of Bannockburn as the greatest event in their history, and Bruce as the savior of his country. Robert Burns, the chief of Scottish poets, wrote "Bruce's Address to his Army":

"Scots, wha hae wi' Wallace bled,  
Scots, wham Bruce has aften led,  
Welcome to your gory bed,  
Or to glorious victorie.

"Now's the day, and now's the hour;  
See the front of battle lower;  
See approach proud Edward's power —  
Edward! chains and slaverie!

"Lay the proud usurpers low!  
Tyrants fall in every foe!  
Liberty's in every blow!  
Forward! let us do, or die!"

**The Lords Ordainers** were a committee of twenty-one barons chosen by Parliament in 1310 to oversee the realm and to watch the actions of the king. Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, the king's cousin, was the chief man among them. It need scarcely be said that these nobles were disliked by Ed-

ward, who was greatly amused by the rude names that Gaveston bestowed upon them. The Earl of Warwick was "the Black Dog," and Lancaster "the Old Hog." Warwick vowed that Gaveston should "some day feel the Black Dog's teeth." When Edward refused to allow his favorite to remain out of England, the nobles carried him, a prisoner, to Warwick's castle, where he was put to death.

For twenty years after the battle of Bannockburn, the history of England consists of little more than the contests among these lords for power. The king, who had adopted two new favorites, named Despensers, father and son, got some of the barons on his side, attacked the Lancaster party, captured the earl, and had him executed.

**Deposition and Death of the King.** Shortly after this, the queen, Isabella, went to France. While there, she met one Roger Mortimer, an exiled English lord, and with him formed a plot to depose her husband. Gathering a small army in France, she landed on the coast of Suffolk. The strongest of the barons of England joined her, while King Edward, almost deserted, fled with the Despensers and a few followers towards Wales. Being captured, the Despensers were executed, and Edward was compelled to resign the crown in favor of his son. He was imprisoned in Berkeley castle, near the river Severn, where he was cruelly murdered by the command of Mortimer and Isabella.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How can you account for the lawlessness at the beginning of Edward I.'s reign?
2. Why was Edward asked to confirm the charters?
3. What led to the conquest of Scotland? Was it a just war? How was Scotland lost?
4. Compare the government of Edward II. with that of Edward I.
5. What king did Edward II. resemble in character?
6. With whom may Bruce be compared? Why?
7. Compare the Parliaments of 1265 and 1295.

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. ROBERT BRUCE. Porter, *Scottish Chiefs*; Henty, *In Freedom's Cause*.
2. BANNOCKBURN. Porter, *Scottish Chiefs*; Lansdale, *Scotland, Historic and Romantic*, Vols. I., II.
3. EDWARD II. AND PIERS GAVESTON. Dickens, *Child's History of England*, Ch. XVII.
5. THE HEART OF BRUCE. Rolfe, *Tales from English History*.

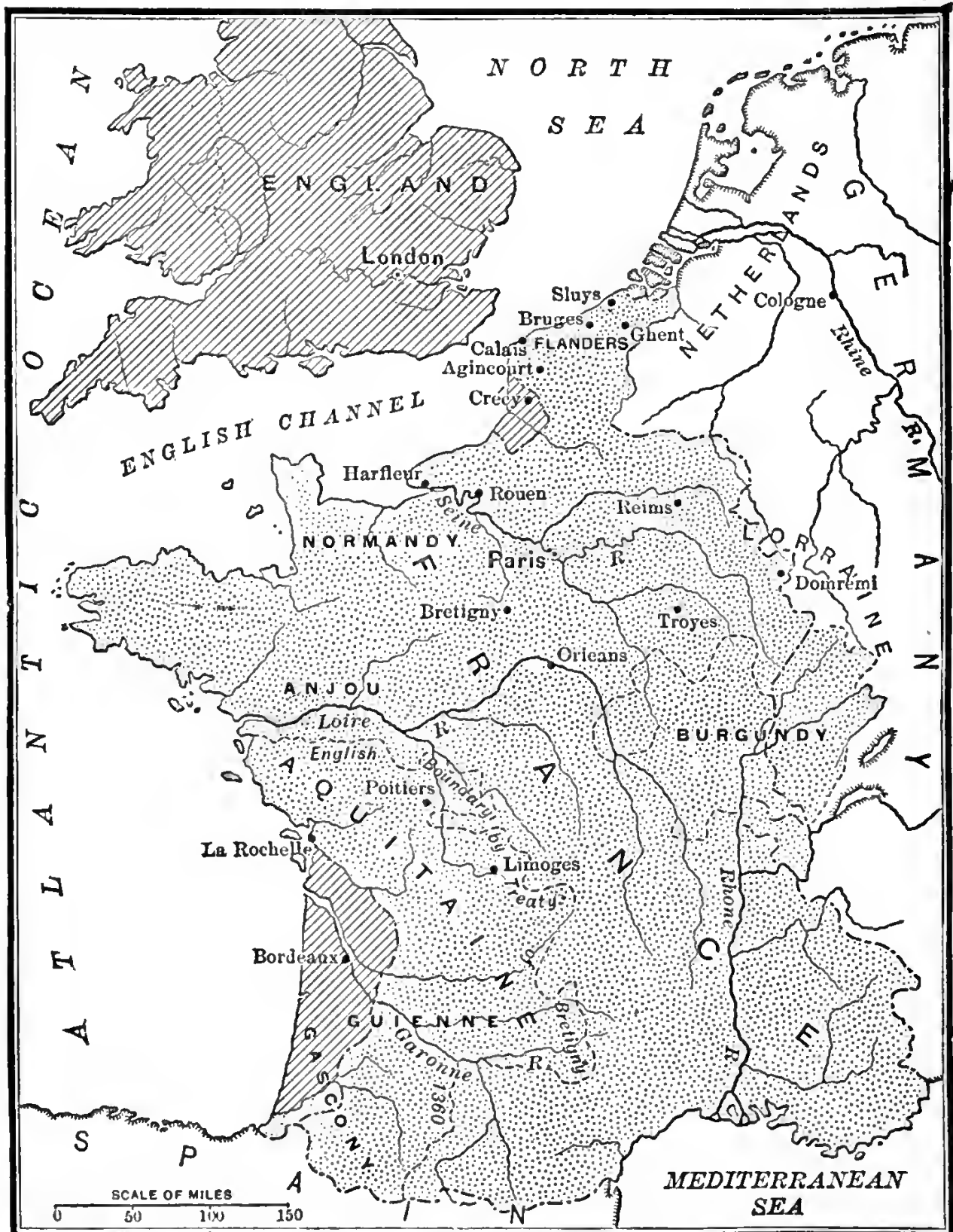
## B. BEGINNING OF THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR.

## Edward III., 1327-1377.

✓ A Regency was Appointed to govern the kingdom, as Edward III. was only fourteen years old at the death of his father; but Mortimer and Queen Isabella had the real power.

England had never fully acknowledged the independence of Scotland, and Bruce now invaded and plundered the northern counties in order to compel her to do so. Mortimer and Edward led an army against the Scotch, but the latter had learned the folly of risking everything in a great battle, and were so rapid in their movements that the English could not come up with them. At the same time they were doing a vast amount of damage. Mortimer and the queen made peace by giving up all claim to the crown of Scotland. This defeat made Mortimer and the regency very unpopular. Edward resolved to take control of the government. Though only eighteen years old, he was already married to Philippa of Hainault, a Flemish lady, and had a son. He gathered a company of Mortimer's enemies and captured him and Isabella at Nottingham, by entering the castle through a secret passage cut through the rock on which it was built. Mortimer was hanged, and the queen was placed in a private castle and allowed no further part in the government.

**War with Scotland.** Edward refused to keep Mortimer's treaty with Robert Bruce. He invaded Scotland, defeated the king, David Bruce, at Halidon Hill, and placed his vassal,



FRANCE IN THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR.

Edward Baliol, upon the throne. Bruce fled to France, but was soon restored by the Scots.

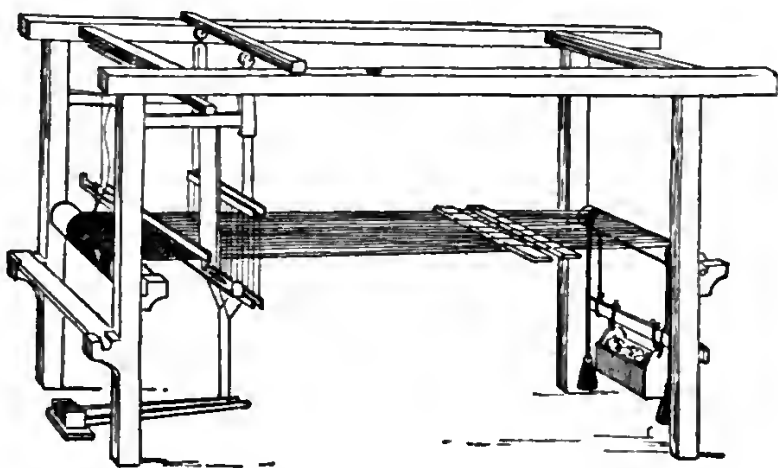
The Hundred Years' War now began (1337). There were several causes for this long and bitter struggle.



In the first place, it had become the settled policy of the French kings to get full control of all the provinces of France, and the English king's territories in the south were continually being stirred up to rebellion.

Second, the French king, Philip VI., made an alliance with the Scots against England.

A third cause was the relation of Flanders to England. The Flemish cities of Ghent and Bruges were the great centers of cloth manufacturing in those days. There was little manufacturing in England. A large part of the country consisted of great open tracts, where herds of sheep and cattle were pastured. The wool



FLEMISH LOOM.

was sent to Flanders and made into cloth, much of which was bought back by England. Edward's marriage with Philippa was intended to strengthen the friendly relations between England and Flanders. The French king was anxious to control the Flemish provinces. If he succeeded, their trade relations with England would be broken off, and English farmers and merchants would suffer.

**Edward's Claim to the French Crown** was another cause of this long war. His mother, Isabella, was the sister of the last king, while Philip VI. was only a cousin. The French claimed that, according to the Salic law, no woman could either rule in France or transmit the crown to her son.

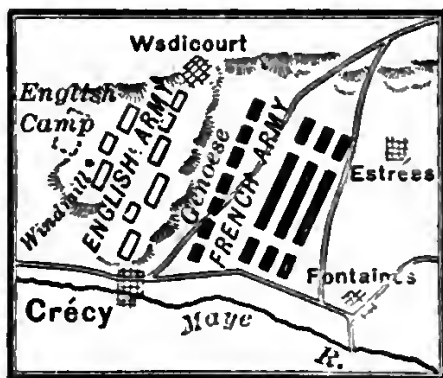
The Flemish people joined King Edward, for they hated the idea of French rule. But he soon found that they were ready to take an active part in the war only when well paid for it. Some of them had scruples in fighting against their



feudal lord, the King of France, and it was to satisfy them that Edward took that title himself, and placed the lilies of France in his coat of arms.

Edward having returned to England to gather supplies for his army, Philip collected a large fleet to prevent the return of the English ships. Edward found the French fleet at Sluys, and defeated it so terribly that 30,000 Frenchmen were slain or drowned (1340). The disaster was made known to Philip by the court jester, who said, "What cowards those English are; they had not the courage to jump overboard as our French did!"

**Crécy.** The next important campaign was in 1346. Edward ravaged Normandy, and then began a march across France to join his allies in Flanders. Philip pursued, and the English army awaited attack at Crécy, where was fought one of the famous battles of English history. The French army consisted mainly of mounted knights, clad in armor,



BATTLE OF CRÉCY.

who fought with sword and lance. They had also 15,000 Genoese, who fought with the crossbow, an awkward weapon, which had to be wound up with wheel and ratchet to set the string every time it was discharged. The English archers, who formed the main body of Edward's army, had long ago discarded the Genoese weapon for the long bow and heavy arrows tipped with barbs of steel. Long practice enabled them to use this weapon with fatal effect at 300 yards, while at close range the knights' armor was no protection against its deadly force.

The English army was drawn up in three divisions. Two divisions formed the line of battle, and the third was kept in the rear as a reserve. Edward dismounted his knights and placed them among the archers with leveled spears.

Philip sent the Genoese crossbowmen forward to open the battle, but a heavy rain had just wet their bowstrings and made their weapons useless. The English, who had leather cases for their bows, drove them back with a flight of arrows. "Kill me those scoundrels!" cried Philip, who took their forced retreat for cowardice. The French knights charged upon the poor Genoese and cut them down in order to clear the way for their attack upon the English. On they came in a furious assault, each trying to outride the others, in order to be in the van, the place of honor. But they went down by thousands before the archers and spearmen, while the Welsh with their long knives went over the field and dispatched those who were wounded or entangled by their armor or horses. King Edward's eldest son, the Black Prince, commanded the right wing. In the thick of the fight a messenger came to Edward for assistance.

"Is the prince dead or wounded?" asked the king.

"No, sire; but he is hard pressed and needs your help."

"Then," said the king, "return and tell those who sent you not to send again while my son lives. Command them to let the boy win his spurs!"

When the day of Crécy was over, the English army of about 30,000 had completely defeated the French army of 100,000, of whom nearly a third were left dead on the field.

**Calais.** The Scotch, according to their agreement with Philip, now invaded England. They were defeated at Neville's Cross, and their king, David, was carried off to London a prisoner. Meanwhile, Edward had laid siege to Calais. This place had been a harbor for pirates and could expect no mercy. The town was stubbornly defended, and yielded only when compelled by famine. Edward ordered six of the leading citizens to come to him with ropes about their necks, intending to hang them. But Queen Philippa begged so earnestly for their lives that the king released them. He now

drove the Frenchmen out of Calais and made it an English colony. It became an important port for trade between England and the continent and remained in the hands of the English for more than two hundred years.

The Black Death, in 1348, brought about a long truce. This terrible pestilence swept over Europe, killing more than half of the population. England, on the victorious return

of the king, had given itself up to festivities and rejoicing. Edward had established the "Order of the Garter," imitating King Arthur's Knights of the Round Table. Gorgeous tournaments were held, attended by the victorious chivalry of England and gay ladies in luxurious attire. In the midst of this gayety, the plague appeared. Both man and beast were attacked. In some districts the earth was strewn with the dead bodies of cattle, horses, sheep,



ADMISSION INTO THE ORDER OF THE GARTER.

and human beings. Toward the end of 1349, the plague subsided, but it appeared twice again within twenty years;

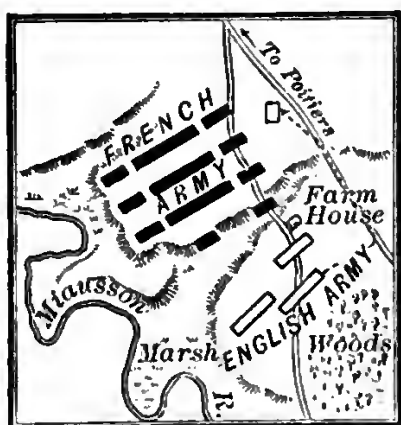
and it was two centuries before the population increased again to what it had been.

**Effects of the Plague on Labor.** Under the Saxon kings there had been few slaves and many freemen; but the Norman conquerors had forced both classes alike into a state of bondage, which, while higher than that of the Saxon thrall, was far below that of the Saxon churl. This form of servitude was later called "villenage," and the bondmen, "villeins." Thus actual slavery died out soon after the conquest, and the word slave, in the sense of a person who could be bought and sold at the pleasure of the master, ceased to be used. The Saxon "vill" became the Norman "manor." The lord of the manor, after reserving one third of the land for his own use, divided the rest among his villeins, who lived, each in his own cottage, on his own plot of ground. The villein was obliged to work for his lord several days each week, and to furnish supplies of grain, meat, and poultry for his lord's use. He could not acquire any property of his own, and, if the land changed hands in any way, the villeins went with it. They were not allowed to leave the manor, and their children remained in the same condition as themselves. But after the time of Henry III., the manorial system and villenage underwent a change. The lord found it more profitable to pay his villeins wages and charge them a rent for the land. Many villeins escaped to the towns, where, if they remained unclaimed for a year and a day, they became free.

When the black death had swept away about half the laboring population, the remaining half naturally demanded more money for their work. The landlords would not pay any more. As the villeins, or laboring class, as we must now call them, had no power in Parliament, the landholders passed a law called the "Statute of Laborers." This law forbade any laborer to ask for more wages than he had received before

the plague. When the peasants refused to work, the lords attempted to restore the old condition of villenage, which had not entirely died out. Where this was attempted the villeins ran away, and looked for work in other places where they could receive wages like free men. Many of them became mechanics and tradesmen in the neighboring towns. J x

**The War with France was Renewed (1355).** Edward offered to make peace if King John, who had succeeded Philip, would give him the full sovereignty of Aquitaine; but John refused to do this. In 1355, the Black Prince led a plundering expedition through southern France. The next year he started out again from Bordeaux, swept through central France, and started to return with 8,000 men guarding his load of plunder. When near Poitiers, south of the Loire,



he was overtaken by King John with 50,000 Frenchmen. With the exception that John dismounted the greater part of his knights, the tactics of Crécy were repeated, with results more disastrous to the French. The English were drawn up on both sides of a long lane, behind hedges which protected them. As the

**BATTLE OF POITIERS.** French came charging down the lane, both men and horses were shot down until the remainder stopped and fled in terror. The English charged upon the fugitives, and attacked the French reserve force both in front and in flank. King John was taken prisoner, and the battle was won.

France was mercilessly plundered by the French nobles in order to ransom their king and relatives, whom the Black Prince had carried off to England. When Edward invaded the land again he found no men to defend it, nor food to feed his troops. Once his army was overtaken on the march by a terrific thunderstorm. The king, who was conscience-

stricken at the ruin he had wrought, thought he heard the voice of God telling him to desist.

**In 1360 the Peace of Bretigny** was made, by which Edward gave up his claim to the French crown, and received full sovereignty over Gascony, Guienne, Aquitaine, and Calais. King John was to pay a huge sum for his ransom. Three years before this Edward had acknowledged the independence of Scotland, and released King David (p. 117) on the promise to pay a ransom of £60,000.

**Edward's Last War with France** was caused by the refusal of Charles V., who had succeeded his chivalrous father, John, to stand by the treaty of Bretigny. He summoned the Black Prince, who was now Duke of Aquitaine, to Paris to answer for his misconduct in overtaxing his subjects. "Certainly I will go," said the prince, "with helmet on head and 60,000 men behind me." But in the war which followed, Charles was wiser than his father. He would fight no battles, but hung upon the rear of the enemy, cut off stragglers, and made waste the country through which the army of the prince had to pass. The baffled prince, who had treated the captive King John with gentle courtesy, ordered the massacre of 3,000 men, women, and children who had surrendered at Limoges. Yet three knights, who had fought to the last, he spared. The prince's brother, John of Gaunt, led another army into France from Calais; but winter came on, food failed, and cold and famine did the work that the French king declined to attempt. A rabble of hungry fugitives was all that remained of the fine army when Bordeaux was reached. In the truce made in 1375, the English were forced to give up all their French provinces except a few cities along the coast.

**A Dispute about the Clergy** grew up in the latter part of Edward's reign. A party arose which favored taking away from the clergy all share in political affairs, and depriving



them of a part of their property. This movement, which began among the people, was aided by many of the barons, especially by John of Gaunt, who had become Duke of Lancaster.

John Wyclif was sent to Bruges to negotiate with delegates of the Pope concerning the papal and royal claims in promotions to offices in the church. Here he met John of Gaunt. No conclusion was reached between the representatives of the Pope and the king. On returning to England Wyclif was appointed to the living at Lutterworth. Wyclif was a scholar, and while at Oxford, where he lectured for several years, he had fiercely opposed the Friars. He imitated the austerity of the Friars, however, and went about barefoot and clad in a gown of the coarsest stuff. His opposition to the Friars he soon extended to priests, bishops, and even the Pope. Against the authority of the bishops he organized bands of "poor priests," as he called them, to spread his doctrines. Some of these were that sin takes away from man all his property rights, that all property should be held in common, and that the church should possess nothing. He differed with the teaching of the church in respect to the Eucharist and marriage. To those able to read he appealed by teaching the right of private judgment in getting the meaning of the Scriptures, and for this purpose he made a new translation of the Bible. The Duke of Lancaster took Wyclif under his protection, but the Black Prince restored some of the clergy expelled by the Duke and drove the Duke for a time out of the King's Council.

**Division of Parliament into Lords and Commons.** It had come about that the knights and burgesses had separated themselves from the lords and bishops and were called the Commons. They tried to keep for themselves the right to vote taxes, while the lords had more to do with managing the affairs of government. In the dispute over the clergy, the



Commons sided with the Black Prince, because they were disgusted with the corrupt rule of the barons.

**Deaths of King Edward and the Black Prince.** The prince had long been in ill health, brought on by his wars in France. His defense of the clergy (1376) was his last public act, and he died the same year. His son Richard was now considered heir to the throne.

For several years the king had been suffering from a disease which weakened his mind, and he was unable to take part in war or government. A woman named Alice Perrers had obtained great influence over him, and had persuaded him to give his consent to all the evil plans of Lancaster and his followers. She was banished from court by the same Parliament that restored the clergy to power; but after the death of the prince, both she and Lancaster returned. The next year the poor old king died also, deserted by every one.



CHAUCER'S CANTERBURY PILGRIMS.

**The "Father of English Poetry."** During the reign of Edward III. there grew up at his court a young squire, named Geoffrey Chaucer, who became the first great poet to write in the English tongue. Chaucer was a soldier, courtier, diplomat, and man of business. He was as well acquainted with the life of the people as he was with that of the court. His great poem is a collection of stories called "The Canterbury Tales." He tells us that he once made a pilgrimage to the shrine of St. Thomas at Canterbury. On the way he fell in

with a large company of pilgrims, and they all set out together from the Tabard Inn in Southwark (southern London). To while away the time, it was agreed that each one should tell two tales on the way out and two on the return. In all twenty-four tales were told. Among the story-tellers were a knight, a squire, a yeoman, a monk, a nun, a merchant, a doctor, and others, representing every class of society and employment in the land.

The writings of Chaucer and Wyclif show us that the people of England had come to use one language, the English. A great many French words were mixed with it, but the main part is made up of the same language that Alfred used. The schools, which had formerly given instruction only in Latin and French, had now begun to teach in English. In 1362 Parliament made a law that all cases in the law courts must "hereafter be pleaded, defended, and debated in the English tongue."

**Cloth Manufacture in Edward III.'s Time.** In this reign the manufacture of good cloth was begun in England. The people had long made coarse cloth, but the finer woolens could be obtained only in the Flemish provinces. Edward, through the influence of his wife Philippa, brought over a company of Flemish spinners and weavers, who taught the English how to spin fine thread and make it into cloth. All work was done by hand. Every workman had his own wheel and loom, and belonged to the guild of his craft, or trade. Young apprentices had to serve under master workmen until they became skilled in the trade.

**The Merchant Guild; Staples; the Steelyard.** In the Middle Ages, when robber knights abounded on land and pirates at sea, many dangers beset traveling merchants. They naturally joined in leagues and guilds for protection. The peace-guilds of the towns and villages, formed for the common protection of their members, the social and religious

guilds, and the trade guilds served as the models for the merchant guilds. The most noted merchant guild was formed in Germany in 1241 and was known as the Hansa, or the Hanseatic League. This league came to control all the trade of northern Europe, and included eighty-five leading cities, among them Lübeck, Cologne, Bruges, and London (map, p. 164). The roads leading from city to city were carefully guarded, so that the merchant caravans could travel safely. The league kept in its employ a large army and a strong navy. In each city it kept a fortress and storehouse, where the merchant guild of the city could meet and where goods could be safely stored or exchanged. In London this building stood on the bank of the Thames and was known as the Steelyard, from a Dutch word, *staelfhof*, which meant the place where cloth was marked as being properly dyed and of



THE STEELYARD.

standard quality. Goods were disposed of at great fairs, which were held in important towns. After a time these fairs were kept up in a few towns during the whole year, and such places became known as “staples.” The chief productions of England, as wool, sheepskins, and leather, were allowed to be sold only in the staple towns, and hence the goods themselves were called “staples.” Calais, from its convenient situation, became the chief English staple. Only merchants having a royal license were allowed to trade at the fairs and staples. We shall find the peasants, in the reign of Richard II., demanding the privilege to buy and sell freely at the fairs, instead of being compelled to pay a good round sum for the privilege.

**Eastern Trade Routes.** In the south of Europe trade was chiefly controlled by the great Italian cities Venice and Genoa. Their ships sailed to every part of the Mediterranean. They commanded the trade routes to the East (p. 164). The crusades had made the people of Europe acquainted with the luxuries of the East. From the countries of Asia, costly fabrics, metal and glass ware, and gems and pearls found their way to European courts through the gates of Venice and Genoa. The merchants of these towns traded with the merchants of the Hansa, and so goods that had been made in far away China and India were offered for sale in York and London.

**Self-Government in the Towns.** The guilds, which were the wealthy corporations of the Middle Ages, taking advantage of the king's need of money, bought from him charters, privileges, and power to raise their own taxes and to make their own laws. London in this way purchased its liberty of the Conqueror. Other towns followed until all the larger cities in England became self-governing communities. This practice in the art of governing was of great advantage to the burgesses who became members of Parliament. The growth and organization of the Commons was largely due to the experience of the burgesses in the management of the affairs of their guilds and boroughs.

### **Richard II., 1377-1399.**

**The Uprising of the Peasants.** When Richard II., at the age of ten, came to the throne, a variety of troubles were threatening the kingdom. The French attacked the coast. The Scots, as usual, acting with France, plundered the borders. The clergy and the barons stopped quarreling long enough to provide against the common danger, and under the lead of the Duke of Lancaster made an unsuccessful attempt to carry the war into France.

But more serious trouble was brewing within the country. The Statute of Laborers, passed in the last reign, and the attempts of the landlords to keep the peasants in a state of villenage, had provoked a spirit of discontent everywhere. This feeling was especially strong among the Lollards, the followers of Wyclif. Their leaders went abroad preaching against the vices and negligence of the clergy, and encouraging the peasants in their revolt against the landlords. A priest named John Ball also preached in the same way, taking for his text the following lines:

“When Adam delved and Eve span,  
Who was then the gentleman?”

He would say to the peasants: “My friends, things will never go well in England till there shall no longer be lord and vassal, when we shall be our own masters as much as they. What right have they to keep us in bondage? And how ill they use us! Are we not all descended from Adam and Eve? And they are clothed in velvets and ermine, while we must wear the poorest cloth. They have wines and spices and fine bread and handsome houses, while we have only rye and water for food and drink, and must brave the wind and rain in the field. Let us go to the king, who is young, and tell him of our servitude, and that we must have it otherwise or we will find a remedy for ourselves.”

To meet the war expenses, the Parliament had levied a poll tax, according to each man's rank. Every peasant was to pay three groats for each grown-up member of his family. One of the tax collectors behaved in an offensive manner in the home of a certain Wat Tyler in Kent, who struck him dead with a hammer. Tyler's neighbors rose to protect him. Jack Straw roused the peasants in the neighboring county of Essex. In a short time the movement spread from one end of England to the other.

The lords were the first to feel the vengeance of the rebels. Their manor houses were torn down, their parks stripped of game, and their property carried away.

An immense mob, said to number 100,000, streamed into London. The king and a few attendants rode out to meet them, and offered to grant all that they asked. They demanded four things: that villenage, or work without pay, be abolished, so that they should be forever free men; that the rent of land be fourpence an acre; that they be free to buy and sell in all the fairs and markets; and that there should be a general pardon for past offenses. Charters agreeing to all their demands were made out and given to the peasants of each parish, most of whom then returned to their homes.

About 30,000, however, remained under the lead of Tyler. As the king and his attendants were riding through the streets, Tyler came up and spoke to him, laying his hand on the king's bridle. Upon this he was immediately cut down by the Mayor of London and one of Richard's attendants. The followers of Tyler bent their bows and would have slain the king and his followers, but Richard with rare bravery and presence of mind rode among them and cried, "I will be your leader. I am your king." And the mob followed after him, through the streets, till a force of soldiers fell upon them and drove them from the city.

The poor peasants were now mercilessly punished. They were slaughtered by thousands throughout the country and thrust back into bondage worse than before. But in spite of their defeat they had accomplished their main object. They had shown their power. The landlord found that slave labor was neither profitable nor safe, and villenage from this time gradually died out.

**Richard's Uncles**, the Duke of Lancaster and the Duke of Gloucester, made him a vast amount of trouble. The rest

of his reign was largely taken up with his contests with them for control of affairs. The Duke of Lancaster at first had his own way, but was unsuccessful and extravagant. He was suspected of having designs upon the throne, and was hated by the common people. He soon sailed away to Spain to claim the throne of Castile in right of his wife, and left Richard to himself.

Richard invaded Scotland with some success, and costly preparation was made to resist a French invasion that did not come. A strong party gathered under the Duke of Gloucester; but he was as unsuccessful, and as much disliked, as Lancaster had been. It was during his rule that the battle of Otterburn was fought between the Percys of Northumberland and Earl Douglas, described in the famous "Ballad of Chevy Chase." In the ballad Earl Douglas thus challenges Percy to a personal combat:

"But trust me, Percy, pity 't were  
And great offense to kill  
Any of these our guiltlesse men,  
For they have done no ill.

"Let thou and I the battell trye  
And set our men aside."

"Accurst bee he," Erle Percy sayd,  
"By whome this is denyed."

They fought untill they both did sweat,  
With swords of tempered steele,  
Untill the blood, like drops of rain,  
They trickling down did feel.

**Richard Assumes Control.** One day in the council Richard turned to his uncle and quietly asked his own age.

"Your Majesty," said Gloucester, "is in your twenty-second year."

"Then," said Richard, "I am surely old enough to manage my own affairs, as other men attain their majority at twenty-



one. I thank you, my lords, for your past services, but I want them no longer."

For seven years after this, Richard ruled moderately and well. He tried to be friendly with those who had been his enemies. He made a long truce with France and married the daughter of the French king.

**His Despotism.** There was dissatisfaction with the king's alliance with France. Fearing that his uncle Gloucester and his friends would take advantage of it to deprive him of power again, Richard suddenly caused three of them to be seized. Gloucester was imprisoned at Calais and secretly murdered. The king now began to gather soldiers about him, to rob the people of their money, and to illtreat them in other ways, just as some of the barons were in the habit of doing. The people, seeing that he was no longer their protector and champion, were ready to give their allegiance to a new leader.

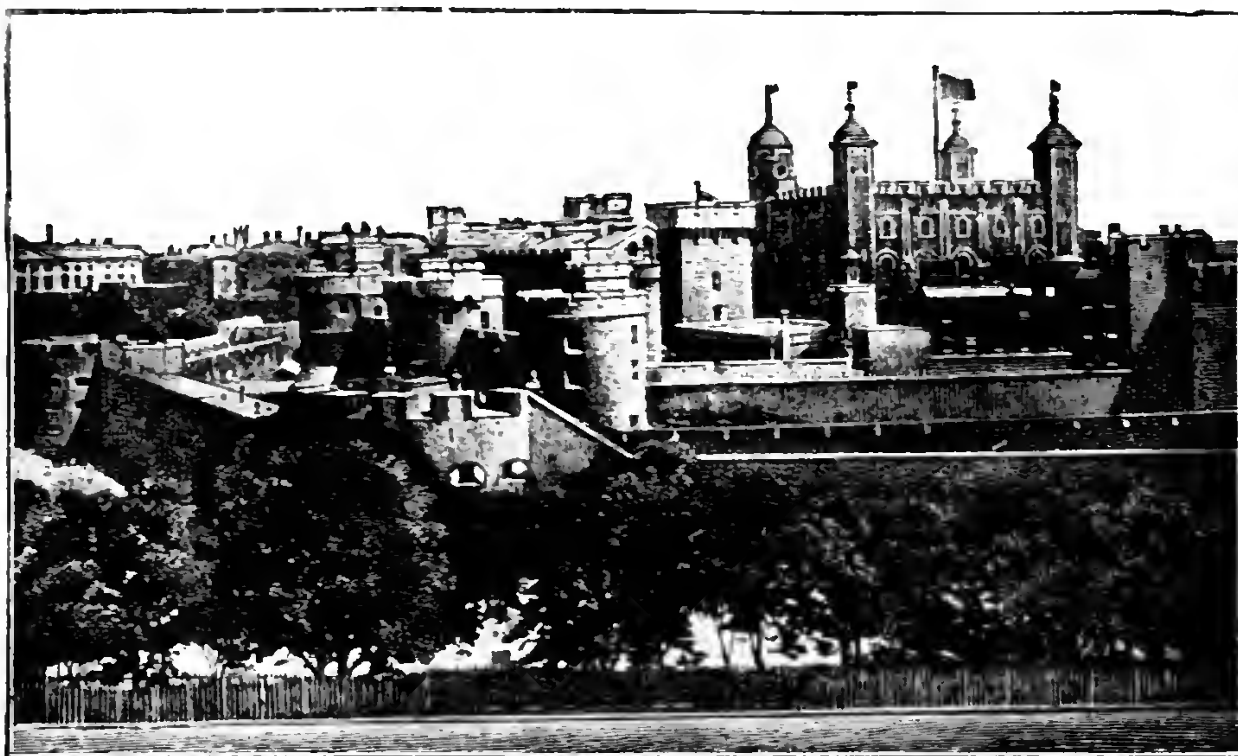
**Henry Bolingbroke** was the son of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster. He had been unjustly banished for ten years, and when his father died, the estates which should have gone to him were seized by Richard. People began to think that under such a king no man's property was safe. Henry suddenly landed in Yorkshire with a small force. He said he had come to claim his inheritance, and to set right the wrongs which prevailed in England. Armed men flocked to his banner. Richard, who was in Ireland fighting against some chiefs who had invaded the English Pale, was on his return betrayed into Henry's hands by the Earl of Northumberland. The new Duke of Lancaster came into his presence.

"Fair cousin of Lancaster," said Richard, "you are right welcome."

"My Lord," replied Henry, "I am come before my time. But I will show you the reason. Your people complain that

for twenty-two years you have ruled them rigorously, and now, if it please God, I shall help you to govern better."

Richard was taken to the famous Tower of London and was compelled to resign the throne. Henry claimed the



THE PRESENT TOWER OF LONDON.

throne, although the rightful heir was Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, who was descended from Lionel, the third son of Edward III., while John of Gaunt was the fourth. But the Parliament elected Henry, exercising its ancient right in choosing a king.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What reasons, if any, justified Edward III. in beginning the Hundred Years' War?
2. Give reasons for the Scotch alliance with France.
3. How could the French have avoided the disaster at Crécy?
4. What led to villenage in England, and what caused it to die out?
5. Who was Wyclif? Chaucer?
6. Describe the routes by which the products of the East were brought to England.

7. How was domestic commerce carried on in Edward III.'s time?  
How did this method affect the people? The merchants? The king?
8. What advantages came from the merchant and trade guilds?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE BLACK DEATH. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 102-106; Green, *Short History*, p. 248.
2. THE BLACK PRINCE. Scott, *Tales of a Grandfather*; Stoddard, *With the Black Prince*.
3. THE MERCHANT GUILDS. Green, *Short History*, pp. 193-199; Gardiner, *Student's History*, p. 169.
4. THE PEASANTS' REVOLT. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, Vol. IV.; Lanier, *The Boy's Froissart*, pp. 278-294.
5. BATTLES OF CRÉCY AND POITIERS. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 93-97; Lanier, *The Boy's Froissart*, pp. 226-253.

## VI. THE HOUSES OF LANCASTER AND YORK.<sup>1</sup>

### A. SUCCESS AT HOME AND ABROAD.

#### Henry IV. 1399-1413.

"Uneasy Lies the Head that Wears a Crown" are words put into the mouth of Henry IV. by Shakespeare, and they could not be more appropriately said of any other king. During the first nine years of his reign, his energies were directed toward keeping the crown which he had so easily obtained. Although he was not the heir to the throne, the people accepted him, because they loved peace and thought that he would be a strong ruler, and prevent such insurrection and bloodshed as had disgraced the reign of Richard.

**The Burning of Heretics.** On ascending the throne Henry had announced that he would protect the church against the assaults of the Lollards, and his commissioners asked the bishops to take measures to suppress the teaching of the itinerant preachers. Accordingly a statute was enacted by which persons convicted of teaching heresy and persisting in it after conviction were to be turned over to the sheriff or other civil officer to be burnt before the people.

#### <sup>1</sup>HOUSE OF LANCASTER.

Edmund, younger son of Henry III. (p. 75)

|  
Henry, Earl of Lancaster

|  
Henry, Duke of Lancaster

John of Gaunt (p. 102) m. Blanche.  
Duke of Lancaster

|  
HENRY IV. (1399-1413)

|  
HENRY V. (1413-1422)

|  
HENRY VI. (1422-1461)

This was the first law passed in England to suppress religious freedom, though there were many such laws in other countries. William Sawtre was the first victim. He was burned to death because of his teaching with regard to the Eucharist, or Lord's Supper.

**The First Attempt to Dethrone Henry** was made within two months of his accession, by some nobles who favored Richard and wished to restore him. Their plot was discovered and they fled, but were seized and put to death. Richard died soon after this, and his body was shown to the people that all might know he was really dead. But the report went out that the dead body shown was not that of Richard, and rumors of his appearance in different places were a source of trouble to King Henry for several years.

**Owen Glendower** was a Welshman whose estate had been seized by an English noble. As the king failed to restore the land, Owen declared himself Prince of Wales and began war. He defeated several forces sent against him and captured Lord Grey, who had taken his estate, and many other prisoners. The king found it impossible to subdue Owen, and the terrible storms that arose when the English invaded his mountain fastnesses gave rise to the belief that the Welsh leader was a wizard and could bring storms at will to confuse his enemies.

**The Battle of Shrewsbury (1403).** The Earl of Northumberland bore the family name of Percy. His house had strongly supported Henry's claim to the throne. As it was the duty of the Percys to guard England against Scotch invasion, they kept a vast number of "retainers," or hired soldiers, such as were maintained by some barons after the decline of the feudal system. They met a Scotch force returning from a raid on the English border and totally defeated it at Homildon Hill. A number of Scotch nobles fell into their hands, for whom they expected large ransoms. But

Henry demanded the ransoms for himself. Northumberland's son, Harry Percy, called "Hotspur" from his vigor and daring in battle, had also another grievance because Henry did not ransom Hotspur's brother-in-law, the uncle of the Earl of March who was the true heir to the throne, when he ransomed other captives from the hands of Owen Glendower. Disgusted and raging at the king's ingratitude, the Percys joined the Scotch, and their army, under Hotspur, marched south to join Glendower. But it was met by Henry's army at Shrewsbury, where Hotspur was defeated and killed. There were a few more risings against Henry in England, but all were put down.

**Peace with France and Scotland.** Henry had vanquished his enemies at home. Two accidents gave him the upper hand abroad. The King of France was Charles VI., a weak ruler. His relatives the Duke of Orleans and the Duke of Burgundy exercised the real power. The Duke of Burgundy held Flanders and was friendly to England for reasons of trade, but Orleans was Henry's bitter enemy. In the year 1407 Orleans was murdered in the streets of Paris, and the French opposition to England was soon afterwards withdrawn.

Shortly before this, the King of Scotland sent his son, Prince James, away to France to learn French and to finish his education. But an English ship captured the vessel in which he sailed, and brought him a prisoner to King Henry. The king rejoiced at his good fortune, for it secured him against any further inroads on the part of the Scotch, and he said he could "teach the prince French as well as the French king." For seventeen years the prince was detained. After this he was released and became King James I. of Scotland. Henry provided for his education, and the prince in his captivity became the most famous poet of the time. His chief work, a poetical account of the incidents of his life,

is called "The King's Quhair." One morning, looking from his prison window, he saw, "walkyng under the Toure,"

"The fairest or the freschest younge floure  
That ever I sawe, methought, before that houre."

This fair "young flower" was Lady Jane Beaufort, whom the prince afterwards married.

**The House of Commons.** Henry's need of strong support from the people led to a great increase in the power of their representatives in the House of Commons. The Commons secured the sole right to levy taxes, and before granting money to the king insisted on having evil practices remedied. They reserved for themselves the right of deciding disputed elections. They also secured for their members freedom of speech and freedom from arrest while in discharge of their duties. They had an accurate journal of their proceedings kept, so that there could no longer be any dispute concerning what they had done. Henry IV. was so careful to rule according to law that he has been called the first constitutional monarch in the history of Europe.

**Prince "Hal."** The victory over the Percys at Shrewsbury was due largely to the bravery of the Prince of Wales. Shakespeare, in his play "King Henry IV.," has described the prince as a wild and dissolute young man. But if so, Prince Henry laid aside his folly promptly when serious work was to be done. At the age of eighteen he became a member of his father's council, and during the later years of the reign the prince became the real head of the government. The king, who had suffered long from a troublesome disease, died in 1413 in the room of Westminster Abbey called the Jerusalem Chamber.

"It hath been prophesied to me many years,  
I should not die but in Jerusalem;  
Which vainly I supposed the Holy Land.—  
But bear me to that chamber; there I'll lie;  
In that Jerusalem shall Harry die."

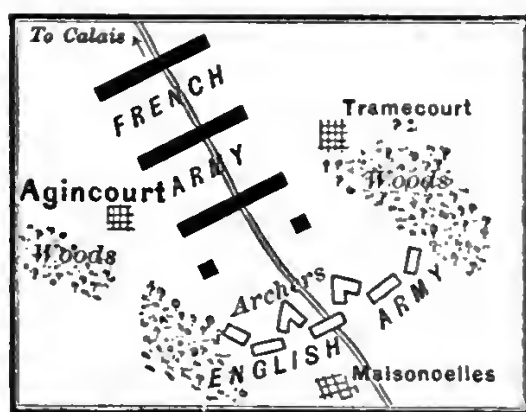
X



### Henry V., 1413-1422.

**Suppression of the Lollards.** Henry V. was sternly religious and followed his father's policy in suppressing heresy. The Lollard leader was a former friend of the king, Sir John Oldcastle. He was tried and condemned to the stake. But before the sentence could be carried out, he escaped. His followers formed a plot to kill the king and his brothers. Their plot was discovered, and thirty-nine of them were captured and put to death. A few years later Oldcastle also was taken and burned. After this the Lollards were driven out of the towns; their books and writings were burned, and we hear no more of them in England.

**The War with France was now Resumed.** Henry, reviving the claim of Edward III., resolved to seize the throne of France. He thought that if he occupied the attention of the nobles with a foreign war, they would be less disposed to rebel against him. France was at this time weakened by the deadly strife of the Burgundy and Armagnac factions.



BATTLE OF AGINCOURT.

In 1415 he landed with a large army at Harfleur, near the mouth of the Seine, and took that town after a terrible siege. Though he had lost half his army by famine and sickness, he now started to march overland to the English town of Calais. An army of 40,000 French blocked his way at

Agincourt. The battle was fought on a freshly plowed field, where the French knights, clad in heavy armor, sank knee-deep in the mud and stuck fast when they attempted to charge the English. The battles of Crécy and Poitiers had taught the French nothing, and they were merely targets for the English archers. Ten thousand French were killed and several thousand more made prisoners by the little English



THE MORNING OF THE BATTLE OF AGINCOURT.

army of 6,000 men. Before the battle, Shakespeare puts into the mouth of the Earl of Westmoreland words addressed to the king:

“O, that we now had here  
But one ten thousand of those men in England  
That do no work to-day!”

The king replies:

“No, my fair consin:  
If we are marked to die, we are enough  
To do our country loss; and if to live,  
The fewer men, the greater share of honor.  
God’s will! I pray thee, wish not one man more.”

Henry now retired to England to recruit his army. Two years later he came back to France and took town after town. The leading men in every place were hanged as traitors. But Rouen held out bravely against Henry’s siege.

Thousands of the peasants had gathered in the town for protection. The magistrates drove them out of the gates in order that food might be saved for the soldiers. Henry refused to allow them to pass his lines and held them penned up outside the walls of Rouen, where old men, helpless women and children starved and died. After six months the city itself was starved into surrender.

**Treaty of Troyes and Death of Henry.** The English successes and a threatened attack on Paris drove the French to attempt to reconcile the warring parties of Burgundy and Armagnac. But when the Duke of Burgundy was murdered the Burgundian party joined Henry, and they took possession of Paris. A treaty of peace was made at Troyes in 1420. Henry married Catherine, the daughter of the French king, Charles VI.; became Regent of France; and, on the death of the king, was to succeed to the throne. While making preparations for subduing the south of France, which held out for the son of Charles VI., Henry suddenly died near Paris in 1422.

Henry V. had become the hero of the English nation. The glory he had won in the wars at home was increased a hundred fold by his success in France. His early death brought deeper sorrow to the nation than it had ever before felt for the loss of a king. The right of the House of Lancaster to the throne was firmly established.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did Richard II. lose his throne? Why was Henry IV. put in his place?
2. Why was it good policy for Henry IV. to favor the church? Why was the law concerning heresy passed?
3. Why did the House of Commons get more power during this reign? Did the king favor this? Why?
4. Did the French war accomplish the purpose for which it was begun?

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE LOLLARDS. Davis, *The Lollard*; Green, *Short History*, pp. 242-273.
2. PRINCE HAL. Kingsford, *Henry V.*, pp. 1-93; Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, Vol. II., pp. 247-56.
3. BATTLE OF AGINCOURT. Shakespeare, *King Henry V.*; Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, II., pp. 274-284.
4. PRINCE JAMES OF SCOTLAND. Yonge, *The Caged Lion*; Mackintosh, *History of Scotland*.

## B. THE WARS OF THE ROSES.

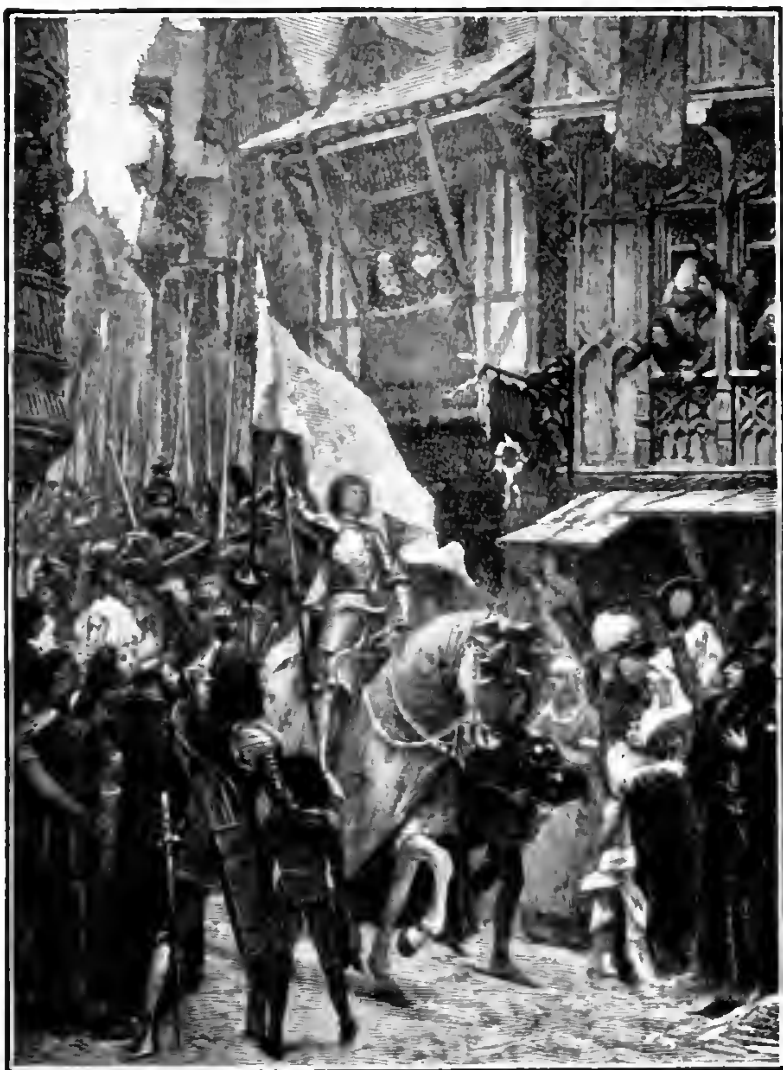
## Henry VI., 1422-1461.

**The English in France.** The infant son of Henry V. was crowned in England and, after the death of Charles VI., in France also. The war against Charles VII., the son of Charles VI., went on under the command of a brave and able man, the Duke of Bedford, brother of Henry V. The French were discouraged and made little resistance as the English army marched south from Paris, capturing town after town. Finally the English came to the great city of Orleans on the Loire. If this city should fall, the cause of France would be lost, and Charles VII. was already preparing to flee to Scotland with his court.

**Joan of Arc.** But help came from an unexpected source. The French had given up all hope of being able to drive out the English; while the English, confident that they would soon have everything their own way, were not so careful as they had been in times of danger. If the French soldiers could only be inspired with confidence in themselves they might yet win. The inspiration came to them through a little peasant girl of Lorraine. When she heard the horrible tales of the murder and devastation wrought by the English, and that no one was able to lead the French against them, it seemed to Joan of Arc (or Jeanne d'Arc) that she was chosen by God to be their leader. As she thought about it

more and more, she fancied angels came to her, saying, "Go, Joan, and save the king! Lead him to Reims to be crowned and anointed!" There was an old prophecy of which Joan had heard — that a woman should destroy the kingdom, and that a maiden of Lorraine should save it. And she believed that she was the maiden.

At last her own village of Domrémi was destroyed by a troop of Burgundians. Joan made her way to the French king's court. Soon the news spread among the French soldiers that a virgin had come from heaven to save France. Clad in armor and mounted on a white horse, she was placed at the head of an army to relieve Orleans. With shouts of triumph, the French assaulted the towers built by the English besiegers before the city, and carried them. The bravest English commanders, Suffolk and Talbot, gave up in despair, and the next day retreated. The maid urged a hot pursuit and inflicted another severe defeat on the enemy. She led the king to Reims, the old coronation city of France, and there in the great cathedral, July 17, 1429, she saw with joy the crown placed upon his



JOAN'S ENTRY INTO ORLEANS.

commanders, Suffolk and Talbot, gave up in despair, and the next day retreated. The maid urged a hot pursuit and inflicted another severe defeat on the enemy. She led the king to Reims, the old coronation city of France, and there in the great cathedral, July 17, 1429, she saw with joy the crown placed upon his

head. She had now done all that the angels had told her to do, and wished to return to her home. But Charles insisted on her remaining with the army, thinking they could not conquer without her.

**Capture and Death of Joan.** In the following spring, the Burgundians took Joan prisoner and sold her to the English. If the French thought her to be an angel from heaven, to the English she was a witch and in league with the devil. To the everlasting shame of the English commander, she was tried and condemned to be burned. She died declaring to the last that the voices which urged her to go against the English came from God, and the last word she uttered before the smoke and flame stopped her voice forever was "Jesus." An English soldier standing by cried out in terror, "We are lost! We have burned a saint!"

**The Final Defeat of the English** was at hand, for the French spirit of patriotism had been aroused. Public business compelled Bedford to return to England, and during his absence the French gained rapidly. After his death the Burgundians and French united against the English, and Paris was soon won back. A truce was made, and the young English king, Henry VI., married Margaret, a princess of Anjou. But before long the French reconquered Normandy and some coast towns, and England, out of all the possessions that Edward III. had won in France, was allowed to retain only the little town of Calais. The Hundred Years' War was at an end (1453). The ambition of two warlike kings, Edward III. and Henry V., had cost the country untold blood and treasure, and brought in the end only loss and shame.

**Weak Rule of Henry VI.** During the war Henry VI. had grown to manhood. Gentle and pious enough, he lacked the energy and strength of character to rule in such rough times. Grasping nobles and dissolute soldiers returning from France kept England in a state of confusion. Jus-



tice was not enforced, and the strong robbed the weak at pleasure. The soil, owing to bad methods of farming, had become poor, and large tracts which had been the homes of the poor were fenced in and turned into sheep pastures. Wool brought a good price and less labor was required to look after the flocks than to cultivate the soil.

**Murder of Suffolk.** A king too weak either to win battles or to establish order was certain to be unpopular. The first to feel the public displeasure was the king's chancellor, the Duke of Suffolk, who had brought about the French marriage. The Parliament impeached him; that is, brought charges of misconduct against him. He fled from the country. But on the voyage he was captured by a company of rough sailors and killed.

**Houses of Lancaster and York.** The Duke of Somerset, who succeeded Suffolk as the king's chief adviser, was, like the king, descended from John of Gaunt (fourth son of Edward III.) and belonged to the House of Lancaster. Richard, the Duke of York, now became the popular leader against the weak rule of the king. He was descended through his mother (sister of Edmund Mortimer, p. 131) from the third son of Edward III., and hence claimed to have a better right to the throne than Henry VI.

The birth of a son to Henry VI. took away Richard's chance of a peaceable succession to the throne, and he resolved to maintain his rights by war. Thus arose a few years later a series of wars between the two rival houses of Lancaster and York for the kingship; they lasted, with brief intermissions, for thirty years and are called the Wars of the Roses, because the badge of Lancaster was the red rose, and that of York the white rose. The nobles, particularly those of the north, were on the side of Lancaster, while those of the south and especially the people of London and the larger towns favored the House of York. The House of Lancaster also supported



the power of the church, while the Yorkists wanted the church to have less power and favored certain reforms.

**A Rebellion in Kent (1450)** was the first rising in favor of Richard. Thirty thousand men gathered under the leadership of Jack Cade, an Irishman who took the name of



ENGLAND IN THE WARS OF THE ROSES.

Mortimer. The London people opened their gates to him, but soon had occasion to regret it, for his lawless followers began a career of murder and robbery, which ended in the death of Cade and the expulsion of his rabble from the city.

**The Wars of the Roses** began with the battle of St. Albans (1455). The royal army attacked Richard's forces and was defeated. Somerset was killed, and the king wounded

and taken. Richard professed loyalty to him, accompanied him to London, and became protector during the king's illness. But Henry, soon recovering, dismissed him.

**Blore Heath and Northampton.** Both sides again took up arms. The York party was defeated at Blore Heath, but inflicted a terrible defeat on the king at Northampton. Many of the nobles were killed, and the king was found alone in his tent. It was now arranged that Richard should succeed to the throne on the death of Henry, thus passing over the rights of Henry's son, Edward.

**Wakefield and Second St. Albans.** Queen Margaret had no intention of submitting to this slight to her son. In the north she easily enlisted a large army of rough border warriors, and, promising them the plunder of the south, she attacked the Yorkists at Wakefield and completely routed them (1460). Richard was slain, and his head, crowned in mockery with a paper crown, was placed over the gates of York. His eldest son, Edward, who was gathering troops in the west, won a victory at Mortimer's Cross on the Welsh border. But Margaret won another decisive victory at St. Albans and pushed on toward London. Her lawless followers, scattering in search of plunder, could not be held together for the final struggle. The people of the capital rallied about Edward, and pursued Margaret northwards.

**At Towton**, near York, the armies met (1461). It was to be a fierce and final struggle, and no quarter was expected, or given. The battle began at night with a heavy snowstorm blowing in the faces of the Lancastrians, and a swollen river blocking their retreat. By noon on the following day the side of York had won. Thirty thousand Englishmen lay dead upon the field. Among them were the chief nobles of the realm. Henry and Margaret escaped with their son and a few followers to Scotland, and Edward IV. became the first Yorkist king.

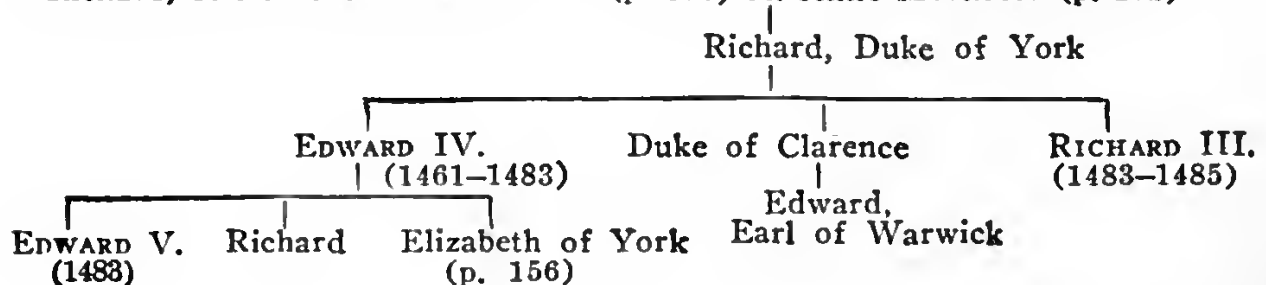
**Edward IV.,<sup>1</sup> 1461-1483.**

**Continuation of the War.** Edward had been crowned at Westminster after the second battle of St. Albans. After the victory of Towton, he rode in triumph through the gates of his ancestral city of York, where the head of his murdered father was still shown. But Edward did not indulge his feelings of revenge, and no punishment was visited upon the city that had received his enemies, though his forgiveness did not extend to the leaders. The charge of treason was brought against all of them, and their property came into the possession of the crown. Edward returned to London, leaving the Earl of Warwick to conduct the war in the north. Margaret succeeded in obtaining help from the King of France, and advanced from Scotland with an army. But she was again defeated, and the deposed King Henry was captured and confined in the famous Tower of London.

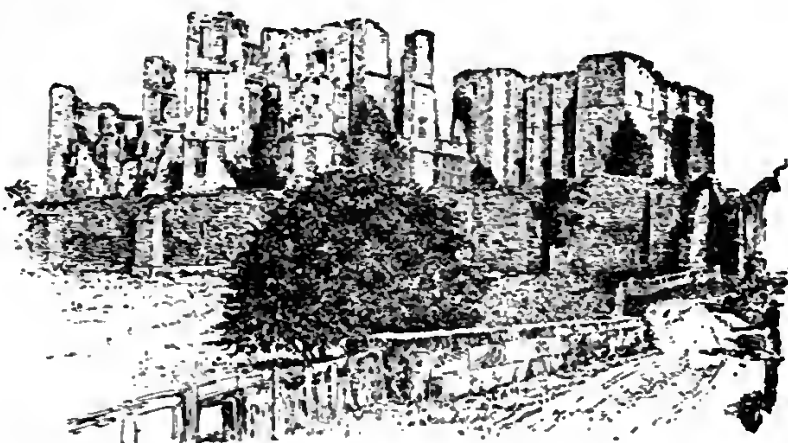
**The King Maker** is a title given by historians to Richard Neville, Earl of Warwick. He appears first as the powerful noble to whose aid Edward was chiefly indebted for his crown. Several hundred manors, scattered throughout England, owned him as master. His seat was at Kenilworth Castle, where he entertained his followers with royal munificence. In his kitchen a huge caldron was always kept filled with boiling meat, and any one was at liberty to take away as many pieces as he could carry on a long dagger. In his

**<sup>1</sup> HOUSE OF YORK.**

Richard, son of the Duke of York (p. 102) m. Anne Mortimer (p. 102)



home in London six oxen were required to furnish a breakfast to his followers. He rode about the country attended by five hundred retainers dressed in livery, on which was embroidered the bear and ragged staff, the emblems of his house. His generous hospitality, his bravery, and his con-



RUINS OF KENILWORTH CASTLE.

sideration for those below him in rank made him a great favorite, and in whatever part of England he appeared, he never lacked followers.

**Edward's Mistakes.** Warwick, having raised Edward to the throne, naturally expected to have control of the government, and when the king took the matter of marriages and offices into his own hands, the earl was gravely offended. Edward married Elizabeth Woodville, a widow of no rank, and bestowed vast estates and titles upon her numerous relatives. Not only Warwick, but other great Yorkist nobles were deeply offended at seeing members of this family receiving greater honors than the first lords of the country. Finally, Edward married his sister to Charles, the Duke of Burgundy, while Warwick was away arranging a marriage between her and the son of the French king. This so incensed the earl that before long he met Margaret in France, and with her and the Duke of Clarence, Edward's brother, planned to invade England.

Edward had been a disappointment to his subjects. They had looked for a king who would maintain order and secure justice to the humblest citizen. But as soon as he felt secure on his throne, he gave himself up to selfish and wicked pleasures, while his people were robbed of their property by the

lords, who compelled judges and juries to decide every dispute in their favor.

**(Henry VI. Restored.** Edward was rudely aroused from his indolence when Warwick landed in England in 1470. As he was about to sit down to dinner, an attendant whispered to him that armed men were surrounding the house. They were tossing up their hats and crying, "God save King Henry!" He had just time to slip away with a few followers to the coast and get aboard a ship bound for Flanders. Warwick now brought poor old King Henry out of the Tower and recrowned him with a great deal of ceremony. This time the change of kings was made without bloodshed.

**Barnet and Tewkesbury.** With the help of his brother-in-law, the Duke of Burgundy, Edward raised an army of 2,000 men. Landing at Ravenspur in Yorkshire, he marched to London. Clarence, "false, fleeting, perjured Clarence," forsook Warwick and joined his brother. Warwick found out too late that he had been betrayed; in the battle of Barnet he was defeated and killed. The same day Queen Margaret landed with a fresh army at Weymouth. Hearing news of Barnet, she started on a rapid march to the north. But Edward cut off her army at Tewkesbury, defeated it, and put the Lancastrian leaders to death, including Margaret's son, the young Prince Edward. Margaret was made prisoner, and Henry VI. was again confined in the Tower, where he was shortly afterwards murdered.

**Edward IV. again King.** Edward's throne was now safe, for not one descendant of Henry IV. was left alive. Moreover, Edward had greater power in the government than the Lancastrian kings had possessed. So many of the nobility had been killed in the Wars of the Roses that the barons were not much to be feared. And the people cared more for order and a chance to go on quietly about their business, than they did for sharing in the work of government. Edward revived

the old practice of taking money from his people as forced gifts, or "benevolences." His good looks and sociable ways made him highly popular, and the people submitted to this form of arbitrary taxation without resistance. One old lady of whom he asked ten pounds said he was such a good-looking



CAXTON AND THE FIRST PRINTING PRESS IN ENGLAND.

young man that she would give him twenty. When Edward kissed her in accepting the gift she gave him forty.

Edward planned a war with France to regain the provinces lost by Henry VI., and invaded that country in 1475. But the shrewd French king bribed him to go back to England without fighting.

Shortly after this, he brought a charge of treason against



his brother the Duke of Clarence, who wished to marry the daughter of the Duke of Burgundy, a match not approved by Edward. Clarence was also accused of conspiring with a sorceress to put Edward off the throne. He was confined in the Tower, where he was put to death, it is said, by drowning in a butt of Malmsey wine.

Edward's dissolute life made him old before his time. He became sad and morose. He knew the nobles hated him; there were few whose relatives he had not in some way destroyed. He became weary of life, and died, worn out in body and mind, leaving two young sons and several daughters.

**The Introduction of Printing** was, perhaps, the most important event of Edward IV.'s reign. William Caxton set up a press at Westminster a few years before Edward's death. He was a native of Kent and had traveled in Germany and Flanders, where he became a printer. Printing from movable type was invented in Germany about thirty years before it was introduced into England. The people of that time looked upon the printing press as a curious toy, little dreaming of the wonderful changes that it was destined to make in the history of England before the next century should close.

### Edward V., 1483.

**Richard of Gloucester.** During the Wars of the Roses, the idea had grown up that the only way for a king to rule in safety was to put to death all those who could possibly have any interest in opposing him. This method had been pursued in some other countries, but was rather new in England. Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the late king's brother, was a prudent and far-seeing man, but like most men of his time in high position, he thought as little of killing another man who stood in his way, as a cat would think of killing a mouse. He was slightly deformed in one shoulder, and his left arm had been palsied from birth. But otherwise he was



a fine-looking man and had the same good-natured qualities that had made his brother so well liked by the people. He had been a stanch supporter of Edward, and had fought bravely for him during the late wars. But there is no doubt that he kept steadily before himself the design of securing the crown.

**Murder of the Queen's Relatives.** He now had good reason to believe that Earl Rivers, the Marquis of Dorset, and Sir Richard Grey, near relatives of the queen, who had once been plain Elizabeth Woodville, had formed a plot to kill him and assume the government. Lord Hastings, a member of the council, had turned against him and joined the queen's party. Richard at once made his plans, but concealed them until the time for action came. He took the oath of allegiance to Edward V., his young nephew, and put on an appearance of loyalty. Grey and Rivers, who had charge of Edward's education, decided to bring him to London to be crowned. On the road Richard and the Duke of Buckingham overtook them with a strong force, seized Edward, and sent Rivers and Grey to prison, where they were soon afterwards beheaded without a trial.

One morning the council met to make plans for crowning the young king. Richard, now protector of the kingdom, came in late, but appeared to be in the greatest good humor. After a time, he left the room with Buckingham. When he returned his face was changed. With a threatening look he asked Hastings, "What have they deserved who have plotted my death?"

Hastings replied that such persons deserved to die.

"That sorceress, my brother's wife, and others with her!" Richard exclaimed. "See how they have bewitched me! Behold my arm, how it is withered up!" And he showed them his palsied arm, which they knew had always been so, but they did not dare to speak, not knowing what he was coming at.

Finally Hastings said, "Certainly, my Lord Protector, if they have done this thing and —"

Here Richard, in a fine pretense of rage, cried out, "You talk to me of *ifs* and *ands*. I tell you they *have* done it. Thou art a traitor." He struck his fist upon the table, and instantly the room was filled with armed men. By his orders Hastings was hurried out and his head was chopped off at once upon a log which happened to lie outside the house.



THE PRINCES IN THE 'TOWER.

**Richard's Success.** Richard then persuaded the queen to give up her youngest son, and confined both his nephews in the Tower. In order to make people believe that he had a right to the throne, he circulated a report that Edward IV. was not the son of Richard of York, and that anyway he had never been legally married to Elizabeth Woodville, and that therefore his sons could not inherit the crown. He caused his story to be made the subject of a sermon in a prominent

church, and his friend the Duke of Buckingham made a speech to the citizens in Guildhall, telling them the same thing.

The next day Buckingham, with the Lord Mayor and others, waited upon Richard at his palace and offered him the crown. Richard pretended to be greatly surprised and offended. He said he was not ambitious and did not wish to be king, but would guard the crown for his nephew. Then Buckingham told him that the people of England would never consent to be ruled by a man whose parents were not properly married, for that would be contrary to law. Richard pretended to be greatly affected by this, but he recovered soon, and said that as it was his duty to obey the voice of the people, he would consent to take the "kingdoms of England and France, the one to rule, and the other, by God's grace, to take again and subdue."

### Richard III., 1483-1485.

**Death of the Princes.** So far Richard had gone without opposition, but his treachery and cold-blooded murders alarmed his followers among the nobles for their own safety. Any man who crossed his path might be killed. Buckingham, who was descended from Edward III. and was a near heir to the throne, was the first to withdraw. He had gone far with Richard in his career of ambition and murder, but now foresaw trouble. There had been made some attempts to rouse the people to release the princes. Such attempts were certain to be made when they grew older, so Richard had them murdered. Sir Thomas More tells us that two men were sent to their chamber at night and smothered them in their bed. Richard then gave out a report that they had mysteriously disappeared. But no one was deceived, and people were horrified that innocent children should be murdered. Long years afterwards some workmen dug up the skeletons of two children at the foot of a staircase in the Tower.

**Henry Tudor.** There was one Lancastrian claimant to the throne whom neither Edward IV. nor Richard III. was able

to reach. This was Henry Tudor, Earl of Richmond, whose mother was descended from John of Gaunt. He had long been living in exile, but Buckingham now planned to have him return and head an army to depose Richard.

**Richard's Defeat and Death at Bosworth.** Henry Tudor's first attempt to enter England ended in failure. His fleet was scattered by a storm, and Buckingham was captured and beheaded. But in the summer of 1485 he came again, landing at Milford Haven on the coast of Wales. As Henry's father was a Welshman, the people readily joined him. Richard mustered an army twice the size of Henry's. But when the two armies met on Bosworth field, Richard saw that he was betrayed; for part of his forces went over to the enemy and another part refused to fight. Richard and a few faithful men charged the enemy. His quick eye caught sight of his rival's standard, and with a shout of "treason!" he put spurs to his horse and dashed on, hoping to kill Henry in a hand-to-hand fight. The standard-bearer fell beneath his sword, but Richard was unhorsed.

In Shakespeare's play, at this point a friend urges Richard to retreat, but he replies,

"Slave! I have set my life upon a cast,  
And I will stand the hazard of the die.  
I think there be six Richmonds in the field;  
Five have I slain to-day instead of him.  
A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!"

After fighting bravely on foot, Richard fell, bleeding from a dozen wounds. His battered crown was found near by, and was placed upon his rival's head while the army (there was now but one) echoed the shout of "Long live King Henry!"

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How can you explain the defeat of the English in France?
2. What led to the Wars of the Roses? What important results did they have?

3. Compare Jack Cade and Wat Tyler.
4. What led to the uprising against Edward IV.? Compare his government with that of Henry VI.
5. Compare Queen Margaret and Warwick as leaders. Which had the better cause? Why?
6. How did the Wars of the Roses show the need of a strong king?
7. Why did Warwick restore Henry VI.? Was this wise?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. JOAN OF ARC. Catherwood, *Days of Jeanne d'Arc*; Green, *Short History*, pp. 274-279.
2. WARWICK, THE KING MAKER. Creighton, *Stories of English History*, Ch. XXVII.; Lytton, *Last of the Barons*.
3. THE PRINTING PRESS. Green, *Short History*, pp. 295-298.
4. THE TWO ROSES. Church, *Stories of English History*, Ch. VI.; E. S. Holt, *Red and White*.

## VII. THE HOUSE OF TUDOR.<sup>1</sup>

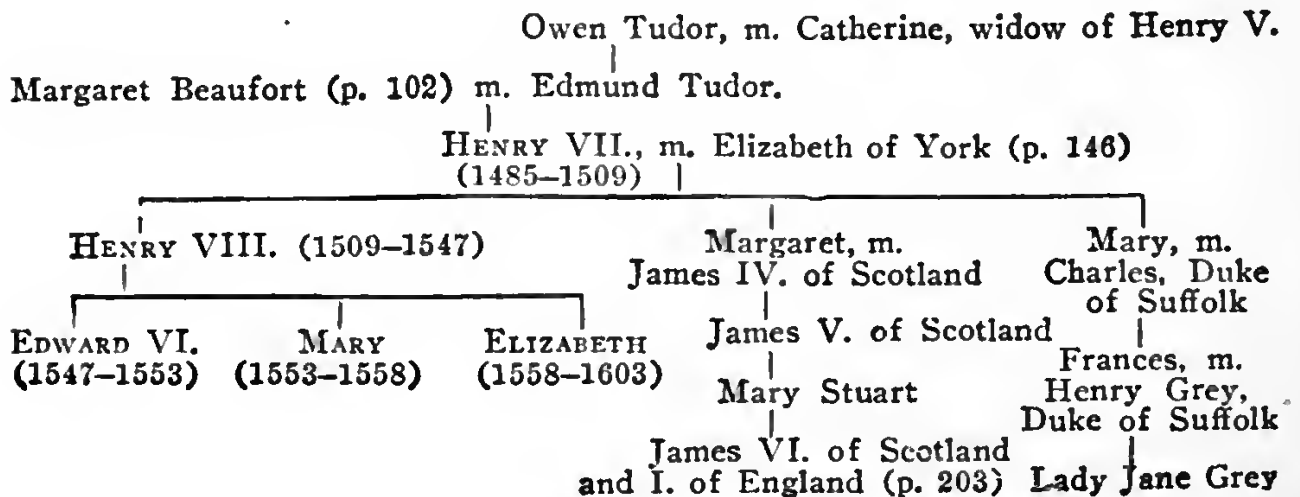
### A. THE BEGINNING OF NEW THINGS.

#### Henry VII., 1485-1509.

The Union of York and Lancaster was accomplished by the accession of Henry VII. to the throne and his marriage with Elizabeth, the eldest daughter of Edward IV. There was, however, still living a son of the Duke of Clarence, who had been made Earl of Warwick. Moreover, there were rumors afloat that Richard of York, the younger of the two murdered princes, was still alive. To prevent any plot of the Yorkists to place the Earl of Warwick on the throne, Henry confined him in the Tower.

**Increase of the King's Power.** In the time of Henry VII., the king obtained far greater power than ever before, chiefly through the weakening of the nobility. It was the nobles who forced John to sign the Great Charter and who, with the people, compelled later kings to recognize the power of Parliament. But in the reigns of weak kings the nobles and their retainers had oppressed the people, and now the

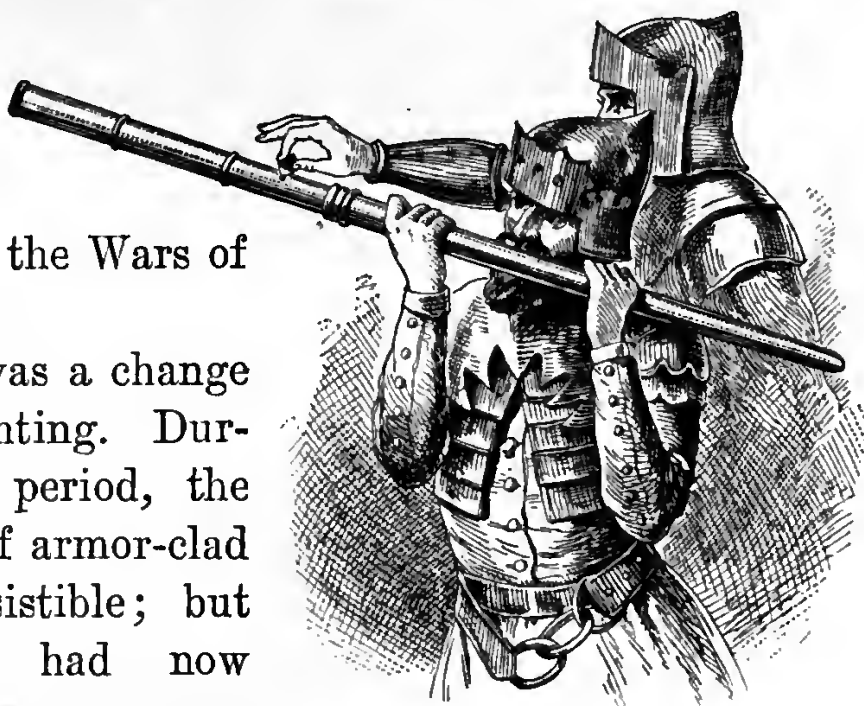
#### <sup>1</sup> THE HOUSE OF TUDOR



people were again ready to help the king against the nobles, as in the days of Henry II. There were also several other reasons for the weakening of the nobles.

One has been already mentioned, namely, the destruction of many nobles by the Wars of the Roses.

Another cause was a change in the mode of fighting. During the Norman period, the charge of a body of armor-clad knights was irresistible; but English archers had now learned to shoot an arrow so far and so swift that they could pierce the knight's armor and kill him before he could do them any damage.



HAND CANNON—FOURTEENTH CENTURY.

Then the power of the nobles was chiefly due to their strong castles, which it was very difficult to take by any machinery then known. But the invention of gunpowder and the use of cannon had changed this. We can not say where gunpowder was first used in battle. It is said that the English used it at the battle of Crécy to frighten the horses of the French. We know that the Turks used cannon to batter down the walls of Constantinople in 1453. From the time of Edward III. we hear considerable about the use of gunpowder in England. The smaller fire-arms were crude and did not at once take the place of the bow and lance. But cannon were made of sufficient power to batter down stone walls, thus enabling the king to destroy the castles of the nobles. As cannon were very expensive, none but the king could afford to keep them.



**The Law against Maintenance and Livery** forbade the lords to maintain bands of men wearing their uniform. This had been a great evil in the land since the time of Richard II., when the lords began to hire retainers. Henry VII. took care that the law was strictly enforced. Any one who broke it was fined or imprisoned. Henry once paid a visit to his friend the Earl of Oxford, a man who had helped him to defeat Richard at Bosworth. In honor of the king, the earl had drawn up a large body of his retainers wearing his arms upon their breasts.

"And who are these, my lord?" asked Henry, as he surveyed the men.

"They are my retainers, and are here to see and honor your Majesty," answered the earl.

"I thank you for your good cheer," said the king, "but I can not endure to have my laws broken in my sight. My attorney will see you." The earl was afterwards brought before the king's court and fined 10,000 pounds.

**The Star Chamber Court** was established to bring powerful offenders to justice. In this court they could not bully the judges and juries as in their own neighborhoods. It took its name from the decorations on the ceiling of the room where it met. The king's own judges and officers conducted its business. Any nobleman who broke the laws or took part in rebellions or plots against the king was tried and punished with as little fear as though he had been a peasant. In later times this court had to be abolished because the kings of that period made it a means of injustice and oppression.

**How the King Raised Money.** The Parliament had kept down the power of the king by refusing to grant him any money until he had redressed the grievances from which they suffered. But Henry adopted methods of raising money which made him independent of Parliament, and which also kept those men in subjection who were likely to become

dangerous. The Earl of Oxford was not the only one who paid an enormous fine for keeping retainers. The king had his agents keeping sharp watch all through the country for other offenders, and many a noble had to give up a large part of his fortune for breaking this law.

**Benevolences; Morton's Fork.** Henry thought it better to offend a few people by a heavy tax than to offend the whole people by laying a general tax, so he developed a system of benevolences. The king's chief minister, Cardinal Morton, had a way of forcing these gifts that gave rise to the expression "Morton's fork." If he saw that a man lived in good style and spent money freely, he would say, "Surely this man is rich and can afford to make a large gift to the king." On the other hand, if he saw that a citizen was economical, he would say, "This man is very saving, and surely has laid up a great deal of money and can well afford to pay." And so a man was pretty certain to be caught on one prong of the Cardinal's fork.

Henry was a lover of peace as well as of money, and took part in no wars of any consequence. The money granted by Parliament for wars was carefully stored away in the royal treasury.

**Several Attempts were made to Dethrone Henry.** The first serious attempt came from the direction of Ireland (1487). The Yorkists had trained a certain Lambert Simnel, the son of a baker at Oxford, to act the part of the Earl of Warwick, pretending that he had escaped from the Tower, where Henry had placed him. Simnel was crowned at Dublin, in the English part of Ireland, where the people strongly favored the House of York. One of the ministers of Richard III., named Lovel, had secured for him also the help of 2,000 German troops. The Irish and German forces entered Lancashire, where they expected to recruit an army. But not an Englishman rose, and the invaders were defeated. Henry, to

show his contempt for his rival, made him a turnspit in his kitchen. Lovel escaped and could not be found. Nearly two hundred years afterwards some workmen accidentally found in an underground chamber at Minster Lovel in Oxfordshire, the skeleton of a man seated in a chair with his head resting on a table. It is supposed Lovel had been hidden there and deserted by some servant who was to provide for him.

In 1492 another pretender appeared, named Perkin Warbeck, who was claimed by his followers to be Richard, the younger son of Edward IV. So carefully had he been prepared for the part he played, that he deceived many. The King of Scotland once took up arms in his behalf. Then the Cornishmen, who had been offended by a tax-levy, joined him, but were defeated. Warbeck was captured and confined in prison. Transferred to the Tower, he planned to escape with the Earl of Warwick. Henry, anxious to have them out of the way, consented to the execution of both, although he declared Warbeck was "not worth a rope."

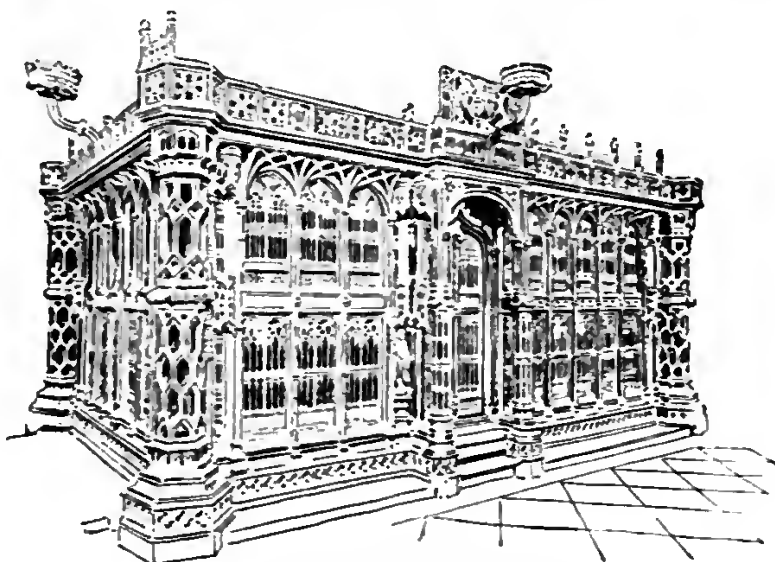
Henry's throne being secure, his children were sought in marriage by other royal families. His eldest son, Arthur, married Catherine of Aragon, daughter of the King of Spain. Arthur dying the next year, negotiations were begun for marrying the young widow to Henry, the second son of Henry VII. The king's eldest daughter, Margaret, was married to James IV., the King of Scotland.

**Commerce and Explorations.** There was no English navy in the fifteenth century for the protection of trade, and piracy was common. Merchant vessels went armed. Fur trading was now begun with the coasts of the Baltic, and in the west of England companies were formed to engage in the fisheries around Iceland. Domestic trade was protected and it flourished.

It was during this reign that Columbus made for Spain his wonderful westward voyage to what he supposed was

eastern Asia. A few years later, John Cabot, a Venetian merchant, was authorized by Henry VII. to make two voyages (1497 and 1498), and on his and his son Sebastian's discoveries along the eastern coast of North America England later based her claim to the continent.

*Renaissance*  
*the*  
*Big*  
**A New Era** begins with the rule of the Tudors. The period called the "Middle Ages" was now to end, and the great events which mark the beginning of modern history had already occurred at the end of Henry VII.'s reign. The New World had been found. *telescope* *spell books* Gunpowder, the mariner's compass, and printing were in use. The age of feudalism had passed away, and the period of absolute monarchy had begun in Spain and France as well as in England. Besides these events, the learning of ancient Greece and Rome was finding its way into England. The Turks, by the capture of Constantinople in 1453, had driven the Greek scholars into Italy, where they taught in the universities and



TOMB OF HENRY VII.

schools. From Italy the influence of the new learning spread to England and the other countries of Europe. Learned men began to translate books into English, and the printing press made it possible for the people to read them. An age of thought, of enlightenment, and of progress, undreamed of by the people of those days, was soon to come.

**Henry's Tomb.** Henry built a splendid chapel on the east of Westminster Abbey for his burial place. His magnificent tomb, cut out of black marble by a noted Italian sculptor, may still be seen. He died in 1509, and his son,

Henry VIII., succeeded to the throne of a peaceful and prosperous kingdom.

### Henry VIII., 1509-1547.

Henry VIII. was a talented and athletic young man, "as handsome as nature could make him." He had frank, winning manners, enjoyed hunting and bowling, and in the use of the lance and bow he could outshoot and outthrow any man in England. He knew Latin, Spanish, and French, and had considerable musical ability. He retained the same council, or body of advisers, that his father had. But there were two men, Empson and Dudley, that were hated by the



HENRY VIII.

people because they had been employed by the late king to collect illegal taxes. Although they had merely carried out the king's orders, they were accused and convicted of treason and put to death. The trial of a prominent man by judge and jury had become a mere farce, and continued so throughout Henry's reign, inasmuch as they always decided disputes according to the king's will

without considering whether the defendant was guilty or innocent. Henry now married the Princess Catherine of Aragon, his brother's widow, a marriage to which the Pope had given his consent by a formal dispensation.

By these measures the king's popularity was made complete. Leaving the cares of the government to his ministers, he now set to work to enjoy the well-filled treasury that his father had left him. For two years, music, festivals, shoot-

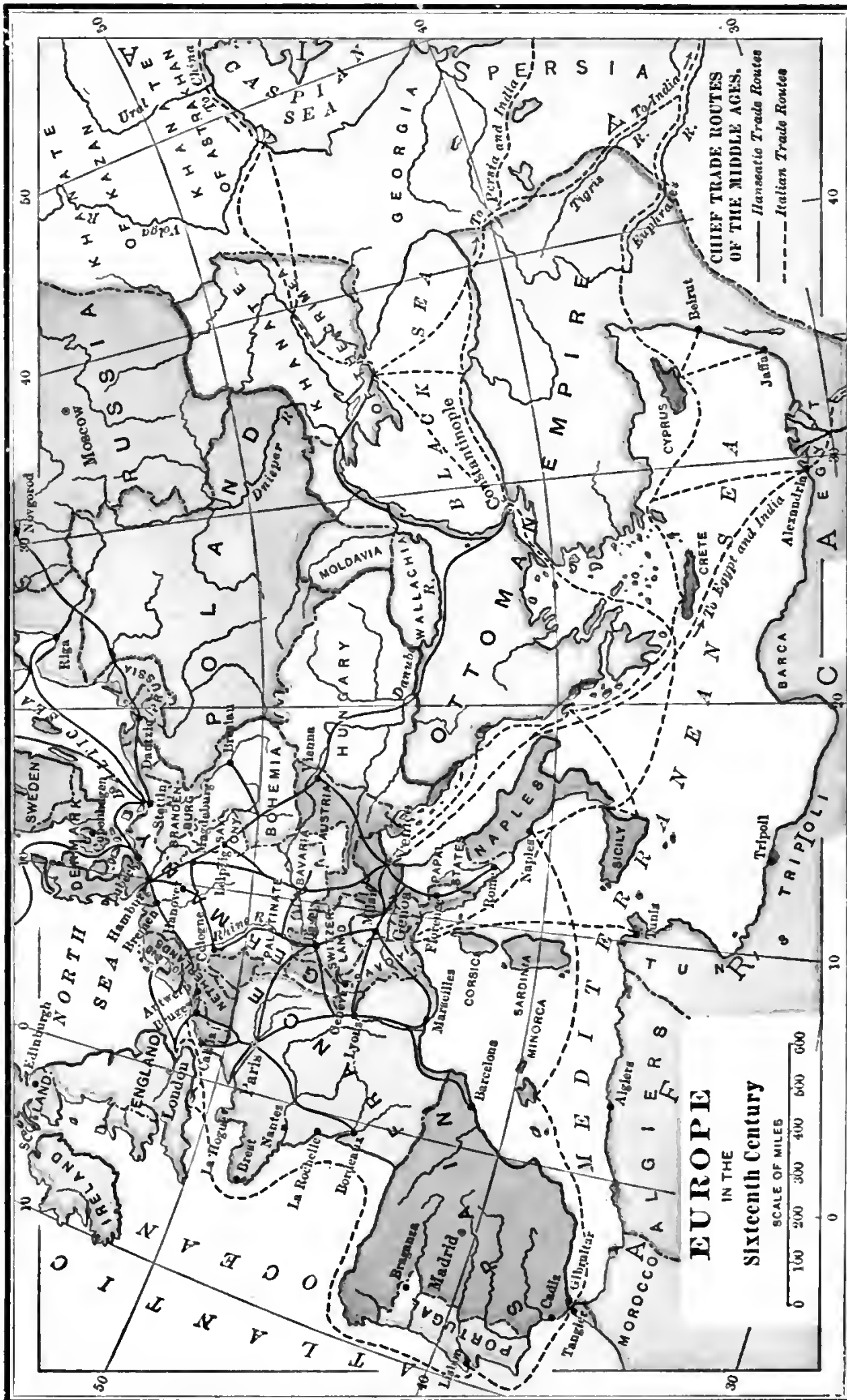
ing matches, tournaments, and the society of gay ladies and gentlemen occupied his time.

**The Holy League.** But Henry soon became ambitious to have a hand in affairs outside of England, although the wisest of his councilors had learned that it was best to avoid being mixed up with foreign wars. At this time Italy was not one nation, like England, or France, or Spain, but was divided into a number of petty states. Venice and Florence were independent republics. Spain, France, and the Pope ruled over parts of Italy. In 1511 the Pope formed the Holy League to drive the French out of Italy, and Henry joined with Spain and Germany to help him. Henry's allies obtained what they were seeking, but he himself spent a great deal of money and gained nothing of importance. He did help Maximilian, the German Emperor, to win one battle against the French in Flanders, "a greater victory than which," he wrote to Catherine, "was never won anywhere." The French humorously called it the "Battle of the Spurs," because their own men ran away so fast.

**Battle of Flodden Field.** The attack on France stirred up her old ally, Scotland, and James IV., who was the brother-in-law of Henry, led an army into England. It was terribly defeated through the skill of the English general, the Earl of Surrey. The Scotch king, the chief of his nobility, and ten thousand men were left dead upon the field.

Henry was shrewd enough to see that his European allies were making a cat's-paw of him, and he made peace with France for a large sum of money. Soon afterwards the old French king died, and Francis I. became King of France. In Spain, Charles V., the nephew of Queen Catherine, succeeded to the throne; he was the ruler of the Netherlands also, and was elected Emperor of the German states. These three young and ambitious sovereigns were now leaders in the affairs of Europe.







**Wolsey and his Plans.** At this time Thomas Wolsey was the chief minister of King Henry. He had risen to high position through the church, which was at that time the only way a man of humble birth could rise in public life. He had been a chaplain of Henry VII., and was well thought of by that king. Henry VIII. soon found that Wolsey had great ability, so he made him Archbishop of York and then chancellor.

Francis I. and Charles V. were about to wage war for the control of Italy, and each wished to enlist the services of Henry. Francis invited Henry to a conference which was held near the boundary between Calais and France; there they entertained each other with such lavish magnificence that the place was named the "Field of the Cloth of Gold." But Wolsey, who was ambitious to be chosen Pope, persuaded Henry to ally himself with Charles, for he knew that the Emperor could give him more help than the French king, in reaching the papacy.

Again Henry's allies were successful, while Henry gained nothing. And Wolsey was not elected Pope. So great did the power of Charles V. now become that Henry and Wolsey made a new alliance with France. Their policy was to maintain the "balance of power," a plan which has often been followed since, and which consists in the union of weak nations against one that is too powerful.

**The New Learning; More; Colet.** During Henry's time the study of Greek was introduced into the colleges at Oxford and Cambridge. John Colet, a clergyman, had studied this language in Paris and Italy. Returning to London, he founded the school at St. Paul's. He introduced at Oxford a new method of treating the study of the New Testament. Sir Thomas More, a famous lawyer of London, was also a patron of study; he was a great favorite of the king. More and Colet invited a noted Dutch scholar, Erasmus, to England.

and he spent some time at Cambridge, where he prepared a scholarly edition of the New Testament, the first ever printed in both Greek and Latin.

What was often called at the time "the new learning" was at first a great revival of ancient learning, — especially the study of the Greek and Latin authors. These languages were very important because they contained the writings of nearly all the learned men of the past. But men now began to be more active in searching out the reasons for things. On the one hand, the new learning led to the philosophy of Bacon, who presented a method of studying the natural sciences by observation and experiment. On the other hand, it led some men to question the authority of the church, so that later their new religious teachings were sometimes called "the new learning" and denounced as heresy. More and Colet, however, were good Catholics, and Erasmus, the greatest leader in the revival of learning, also remained in the Catholic Church.

**The Protestant Reformation.** Wyclif and the Lollards had refused to believe certain doctrines of the church. Although compelled to be silent, the movement begun by him did not die out. It spread to Bohemia, Germany, and Italy. In Germany, at the beginning of the sixteenth century, a movement was begun by a monk, Martin Luther, that led to more serious consequences. Luther had a quarrel with the Pope, and finally declared that the Catholic Church did not teach the religion taught by Christ in the New Testament. A general religious revolt was stirred up in Germany, which led to bloody wars between the Catholic princes and those who favored the ideas of Luther. The last of these wars, called the "Thirty Years' War" (1618–1648), ended in giving to each of the German states the power of choosing the religion its people should follow.

During the century from the time of Luther's first protest

in 1517 to the time of the Thirty Years' War, the "Reformation," as this revolt against the Catholic Church was called, had spread to France, Sweden, the Netherlands, England, and Scotland. It was attended by wars, massacres, and persecution. People were hanged, tortured, and burned by thousands for their religious opinions, until the world grew tired of it. But in all these disturbances politics and religion were closely associated. Kings and governments in those days insisted on telling people what they must accept in church matters.

**How Henry Regarded Church Matters.** Henry was at first sternly opposed to this movement against the authority of the church. He wrote a reply to one of Luther's books, and sent a copy of it to the Pope. Pope Clement was so pleased with it that he gave Henry the title "Defender of the Faith." Later on, as we shall see, Henry maintained his right to this title, only it was not the faith of the church, but the faith of Henry that he defended. J X

**The Question of the King's Divorce.** After the king had been married to Catherine some fifteen years, he grew tired of her and wished that he might marry a beautiful young lady of his court, Anne Boleyn. The church regarded marriage as a sacrament as well as a contract, and no divorce was granted to persons who had been lawfully married. Henry now began to assert that it had been unlawful for him to marry his brother's widow. The Pope had given a dispensation, but Henry held that the dispensation had been improperly granted, and that his marriage with Catherine was no marriage at all. He therefore employed Wolsey to obtain from the Pope the desired declaration that the marriage was invalid. Wolsey's mission was a failure; after long delay a papal court tried the case in England, but it did not have power to make the declaration, and the Pope himself decided not to make it.



TRIAL OF QUEEN CATHERINE.

The king was so angry at this failure that he dismissed Wolsey, took from him all his property, and finally ordered him to prison on a charge of treason. But on the way to London Wolsey fell ill and died at a convent at Leicester. Only his death saved him from execution. His fall from power and the king's ingratitude had broken his heart, and, as Shakespeare puts it in the play "King Henry VIII.," he cried out to his secretary:

"Cromwell, I charge thee, fling away ambition:  
By that sin fell the angels; how can man, then,  
The image of his Maker, hope to win by it?  
\* \* \* O, Cromwell, Cromwell!  
Had I but served my God with half the zeal  
I served my king, He would not in mine age  
Have left me naked to mine enemies."

Henry next, at the suggestion of Dr. Thomas Cranmer of Cambridge, decided to inquire of the universities of Europe

what they thought about his marriage with Catherine. Some of them gave an answer favorable to Henry. The king now resolved to set the Pope at defiance. He assembled the clergy and compelled them to address him as "Supreme Head of the English Church and clergy." Next, he got from Parliament a law forbidding appeals from an English court to any authority outside of England. Cranmer was made Archbishop of Canterbury, and in his court declared the marriage of Catherine void. Henry had already married Anne Boleyn, and a few days after Cranmer's decision she was publicly crowned. The Pope now sent his decision to England, declaring that Catherine was the king's lawful wife.

**Separation of the Church from Rome.** At the next session of Parliament, in 1534, laws were passed forbidding all appeals and the payment of money in any way to the Pope. Another law, called the Act of Succession, declared Henry's marriage with Catherine unlawful, that with Anne lawful, and provided that the children of Henry and Anne should succeed to the throne. Another law, the Act of Supremacy, declared Henry the Supreme Head of the Church in England, and that any one who questioned it, or refused to acknowledge it when questioned, was guilty of high treason. The great Sir Thomas More, who had been made Henry's chancellor, and John Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, refused to support these laws and were beheaded. More told the king he was willing to acknowledge Anne's children to be the lawful successors to the throne, because Parliament had made them so, but he could not admit that she was the king's lawful wife. All Europe was shocked at his execution. Charles V. said he would rather have lost the choicest city in his empire than such a friend as More.

**The King's Later Marriages.** Anne was soon accused of unfaithfulness to her lord. Henry lost no time in seeking a new divorce, but ordered her and five gentlemen of the

court, her accomplices, to execution. No sooner had their heads rolled into the dust than the king married Jane Seymour, Anne's maid of honor, who died in the following year. The king now commissioned his new minister, Thomas Cromwell, to find him another wife. Cromwell thought it would be a good thing for Henry to marry Anne of Cleves, a German princess, to strengthen the friendship of England with the German Protestants. He showed the king her picture, which represented her as a very beautiful woman. But when Anne reached England, Henry discovered that she was plain. Six months afterwards he divorced her, and before long he had Cromwell's head cut off. In the same year, the king married a beautiful young girl of his own court, Catherine Howard, but before another year had ended, the jealous tyrant sent her to the block. His sixth and last wife was Catherine Parr, who lived in peace with her despotic husband.

**The King Suppresses the Monasteries.** When Henry began his reign, perhaps one third of the kingdom was in the possession of the church. The cathedrals, monasteries, chapels, and abbeys held estates, by the income of which they were maintained. Henry was not pleased with the clergy and monks, for they had strongly opposed him in his religious revolution; so he set about closing the monasteries and taking their estates for himself and the men who supported him.

Henry said that these places were in the possession of vicious and ignorant monks who had entered monastic life on account of laziness or poverty. He said that their charities supported a multitude of vagabonds who ought to be made to do honest labor. And more than this, he called them mere nests of treason, since they opposed the laws passed by Parliament making the king the head of the church. The fact that they held to the Pope rather than to Henry was enough to destroy them.

Henry's agent Cromwell undertook the work of "reform,"



as the suppression of the monasteries was called. The first act of Parliament closed the smaller ones, but a few years later the others also were swept away. The king's agents visited and inspected these institutions and were supposed to find some irregularity in their management as a just ground for closing them. The monks and nuns were then turned adrift; but some were pensioned. The estates



A RUINED ABBEY.

not retained for the king's own use were given to his friends. Many a noble family in England dates the beginning of its fortune from a gift of monastery lands. The splendid buildings were stripped of everything of value, the images were thrown down, windows of beautiful stained glass were shattered, and only the ruined, moss-grown walls now remain to tell the story of the past.

**Insurrection in the North.** The lower classes in England had fallen into worse condition during Henry's reign than before. The practice of changing farms into sheep pastures still went on, leaving many of the farming and laboring classes homeless. Many had lived on the industries and charities of the monasteries; and the closing of these not only deprived them of that support, but added to their numbers many vagrant monks. A host of 30,000 discontented men assembled in Yorkshire and petitioned the king to restore the religious houses and remit the last tax levied.

The king replied: "How presumptuous are ye, the rude commons of one shire, and one of the most brute and beastly of the whole realm, to take upon you, contrary to God's law and man's law, to rule your prince, whom ye are bound to obey and serve!" This insurrection, sometimes called the



"Pilgrimage of Grace," was put down with a strong hand and about a hundred of the leaders were executed.

**The Ten Articles and the Six Articles.** In 1536 the king informed his subjects what they might believe in matters of religion. He issued a creed of ten articles, and every man at the peril of his head must accept and obey them. Certain articles in this creed favored the reformers. Three years later, the king and Parliament issued a new creed of six articles, supporting six of the doctrines of the Catholic Church. With this "whip of six strings" he persecuted his people until the end of his reign. Any one who disagreed with him, was to lose his property for the first offense; for the second he lost his life. In two weeks, five hundred people were arrested, and during the rest of Henry's life, which stretched out eight years longer, twenty-eight were put to death.

**Last Years of the King.** Henry now had three children: Mary, the daughter of Catherine of Spain; Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn; and his only son, the child of Jane Seymour, who succeeded him as Edward VI. The king had grown, in his later years, to an unwieldy size, and suffered constantly from some painful disease. He died in 1547. His reign is chiefly to be remembered for the change he made in the government of the church.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How do you explain the increase of royal power in the time of Henry VII.?
2. Compare Henry VII.'s methods of raising money with those of Edward I.
3. With what king may Henry VIII. be compared? Why did he persecute both Catholics and Protestants?
4. How do you account for the great poverty of Henry VIII.'s time?
5. Why did Henry VIII. set up an independent church?
6. Why do we date modern history from Henry VII.?
7. What was the New Learning? The Reformation?

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. SIR THOMAS MORE. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 132-144; Gomme, *The Kings' Story Book*, Ch. XXI.
2. WOLSEY. Green, *Short History*, pp. 325-331.
3. THE FIELD OF THE CLOTH OF GOLD. Morris, *Historical Tales, English*, pp. 201-215.
4. PERKIN WARBECK. Mary W. Shelley, *Perkin Warbeck*.

## B. RELIGIOUS STRIFE.

## Edward VI., 1547-1553.

Edward VI., a delicate, studious lad, became king at the age of nine years. He had been carefully trained in the new learning and in the ideas of Protestantism. As soon as he could write, he was taught to keep a journal of everything that interested him. This journal is still preserved and shows that he was very studious. Here is one of the questions given him to study: "Whether it be better for the commonwealth that the power be in the nobility or in the people?"

**Edward Seymour, Earl of Somerset.** Henry VIII. had, in his will, appointed a council of sixteen men, who were to rule until the young king reached the age of eighteen. As it would not be possible for so many to agree upon a plan of government, they placed the power in the hands of one of their number, the Earl of Somerset, brother of Jane Seymour, the king's mother. There were some very difficult questions to settle, and Somerset soon had his hands full.

**Battle of Pinkie.** Henry VIII. had made an agreement with some of the Scotch that Mary Stuart, their infant queen, should marry his son, Edward, and thus peacefully unite the two kingdoms. But when Somerset tried to have them carry out the agreement, the Catholic party in Scotland prevented it. Somerset led an army into Scotland to enforce the marriage, and by the aid of his cannon and muskets defeated the Scotch with terrible loss at Pinkie. This

only made the Scotch more stubborn in their refusal to surrender the little five-year-old queen. As one old Scotchman said: "They misliked not the match, but the manner of the wooing." Mary was taken to France and was soon married to the French prince.

**Internal Troubles.** Henry had established an independent church by putting himself in the place of the Pope, and had destroyed the monasteries. But most of the doctrines and teachings of the Catholic Church he had left unchanged. The six articles provided for the mass and the confessional, and forbade the marriage of priests. The people of England were now divided on this question of doctrine. In the northern and western counties they wanted to keep the Catholic faith entire, while in the east and south the reformers would do away with it all and have a simple service of song, prayers, and preaching, in English.

Besides the quarrel over church reform, there were increasing difficulties between the farmers and the wealthy landholders about the inclosing of lands and the rise in rents. And most serious of all, the decline of farming had made food scarce, and many of the poorer classes were in distress. Prices were high on this account, and also because the late king, to enrich himself, had made the coin of inferior quality. Four shillings would not buy so much as one would in the time of Henry VII. So many laborers were out of work that wages were low even when paid in this debased coin.

**The Vagrant Act** was passed in the first year of Edward's reign. It provided that any able-bodied man who was persistently idle should be branded with the letter V, and made a slave for two years; if he then refused to work, he should be made a slave for life. But in spite of the law the vagrants and paupers increased. Besides the farmers and laborers thrown out of work by the inclosing of lands, thousands of retainers whom the lords had been obliged to dismiss

were thrown upon the country; and, finally, the monks and laborers who had formerly been supported on the estates of the church were, by the closing of the monasteries, left homeless and idle. The vagrant law could not make men work when there was no work to be done.

**An Increase in Criminals** came with this lack of work. Many of the vagrants became thieves and robbers. The roads were beset with highwaymen. "In London," a traveler writes, "people are taken up every day by dozens, yet for all this they never cease to rob and murder in the streets." The severest laws did not check them. It was said that "a man who would in France be whipped, would in England be hanged. In truth there were two sorts of punishment, to be hanged and to be beheaded, and evil-doers gained as much by doing little evil as great." These evils continued to trouble England for many years.

**Progress of the English Reformation.** Somerset, who was thoroughly in sympathy with the Protestant party, ordered the churches stripped of images and pictures. The stained glass windows were replaced with plain ones, the altars were pulled down, the walls were whitewashed, and the Ten Commandments written on them. The vestments of the priests and the furniture of the altars were destroyed. Cranmer and a committee of clergymen compiled the prayer book, which took the place of the Latin service. A law, called the Act of Uniformity, compelled the use of the prayer book in all the churches in England. The clergy were allowed to marry. In the last year of Edward's reign, the doctrines and teachings of the church were expressed in forty-two articles, which were some years later reduced to thirty-nine; these thirty-nine articles of belief are still the creed and practice of the English, or Anglican, Church, known also as the Episcopal Church.

**King Edward's Schools.** The monasteries did much

good in providing instruction for the poor, and their loss left the children without means of education. To take their place, a part of the money that came to the crown through their suppression was used in establishing forty grammar schools and a number of hospitals in different parts of England. As the young king favored this project, these schools have since been known as King Edward's Schools.

**Insurrections.** A revolt in Cornwall and Devonshire was caused by forcing the English prayer book upon the Catholic people. One Sunday in the church of a little village, when the English service was read for the first time, the people compelled the priest to put on his robes and conduct the mass in Latin. The revolt spread fast, but the insurgents were quickly put down.

In Norfolk 16,000 men gathered under the lead of Robert Ket, a tanner. They proceeded to break down the hated fences and to kill the fat sheep and deer within. This revolt seems to have been provoked by the general poverty and distress of the poorer classes.

In the suppression of these two insurrections, more than 6,000 people were slain or hanged.

**Somerset and Northumberland.** Somerset sympathized with the people and was slow in taking severe measures to put down the Norfolk revolt. His rival in the council was John Dudley, afterwards created Duke of Northumberland, who now succeeded in driving him out of office. Later Somerset was executed on a charge of trying to regain his power.

**Attempt to Change the Succession.** Northumberland was even more determined than Somerset to wipe out the Catholic power in England. The king's health was feeble, and under an act of Parliament both his sisters had been placed in the line of succession, so that on his death the crown would go to the Princess Mary, the daughter of Catherine, a determined Catholic. The council had tried in vain to

make her give up her religion and become Protestant, but she steadfastly refused. When Cranmer urged her to accept the "Word of God," she replied, "I know not what you mean by the Word of God, since what is the Word of God now was not so in my father's time."

After Northumberland came into power he formed a plan to pass over the king's half-sisters, Mary and Elizabeth, and give the crown to Lady Jane Grey, who had married his own son, Guildford Dudley. Lady Jane was the granddaughter of the Princess Mary, sister of Henry VIII. Northumberland persuaded Edward to make a will bequeathing the crown to Jane, although he must have known that only the Parliament could declare the succession.

One day in 1553 Lady Jane was informed that Edward was dead and that she was to be queen. She was only sixteen years of age, beautiful, and remarkable for her learning and accomplishments. She cared only for her books and her husband, and begged to be left with them. But her father-in-law was determined to sacrifice her to his ambitious plans, which never had any chance of success. Protestants and Catholics united to defeat him, and he had scarcely a dozen supporters. The Parliament declared in favor of Mary, and the people of London at once gave her their allegiance. Northumberland and two others were executed, and Lady Jane Grey and her husband were sent to the Tower, there to wait until the same fate should overtake them. X

### Mary I., 1553-1558.

**The First Woman to Rule England** was Mary Tudor. She was a plain, sickly woman, somewhat dull, and came to the throne at the mature age of thirty-seven. Her youth had been blighted and unhappy on account of her mother's unjust divorce and consequent disgrace. She was a devout and faithful Catholic, and believed that her one duty as sovereign



was to restore the Catholic form of worship and the rule of the Pope. Beyond this she saw little and understood little of the needs of her people. She had the Tudor determination, but none of the Tudor statesmanship that Henry had exhibited. It was a time when it was very difficult to act wisely. The people were divided on the question of religion, and the idea that differences in religious belief should be tolerated was then almost undreamed of. The great kings of England, those who had governed most successfully, had consulted the wishes of the people; but under the Tudors it had become the custom to refer everything to the will of the sovereign. Mary's first care, therefore, was to have Parliament repeal the laws that gave countenance to Protestantism, and to restore the Catholic form of worship. Most of the people received it back gladly, and, except in some of the larger towns, no complaints were heard. Next the married clergymen were made to resign their places, and the foreign reformers were banished from England. But the monastery lands were left in the hands of their new owners.

**Spanish Influence.** The Protestant princes of Germany had made an alliance with France against Charles V. and the Catholic princes. Both parties now sought the alliance of England. The French and Spanish ambassadors were at the English court, each striving to gain favor with the new queen. Charles's minister proposed that Mary marry Philip, the heir to the throne of Spain. The queen saw his portrait and fell in love with him, and from that moment she was under the influence of the Spanish power.

**Wyatt's Rebellion.** But the English had no liking for Spain, and still less did they like Philip personally. The Commons petitioned the queen to choose some other husband, but they received a sharp reproof. Immediately afterwards, in the central and southern counties where the Protestants



were strong, an insurrection gathered for the purpose of deposing Mary and putting her sister, Elizabeth, on the throne. Sir Thomas Wyatt was to rouse the men of Kent, while his confederates were to join him with troops from other counties. But they failed to appear and Wyatt was left alone.



QUEEN MARY SIGNING DEATH WARRANT OF LADY JANE GREY.

For a time it looked as though he would succeed. The London troops sent against him changed sides, and with promptness and prudence he might have gained the city. But Mary was roused. She appealed to the London people in a stirring speech and threw herself upon their protection. She prom-

ised not to marry without the consent of Parliament. The next day 25,000 men enlisted, and Wyatt, though he entered London and fought till almost deserted, was taken. Lady Jane Grey and her husband were now executed, along with Wyatt and about one hundred others. An effort was made to connect Elizabeth with the plot, but no proof could be found against her and she was acquitted.

The next Parliament consented to Mary's marriage with Philip, but did not give him any power in the government. The marriage took place in July, 1554. It assured Charles that England would not join France against him. But Philip did not love his wife, who was much older than himself. After a few months' stay in England, he went away, leaving her to rule alone.

**Restoration of the Catholic Church.** Mary had attained one of the great desires of her heart — Philip for a husband. She was now to attempt to gain the other — the restoration of all England to the rule and religion of the Catholic Church. Cardinal Pole, who had been outlawed by Henry VIII. for refusing to acknowledge him as the head of the church, now returned to England as the Pope's legate. The Pope was again recognized as the Supreme Head of the Church.

This was an age when one's religion was considered part of one's politics. Those who opposed the state religion were generally the enemies of the government and were treated as enemies. So Mary and the Parliament revived the old laws of Henry IV. and Henry V. against heretics.

The chief Protestant teachers were condemned to be burned in the places where they had taught. Nearly three hundred persons were put to death. Cranmer, the Archbishop of Canterbury and author of the prayer book; Ridley, Bishop of London; and Latimer, Bishop of Worcester, were the most distinguished victims.

The persecution of Mary's time was due largely to Philip,

who was narrow and cruel by nature. "Better not rule at all than rule over heretics," was his motto.

**Close of Mary's Reign.** In 1557, to please her husband, now King Philip II., Mary joined Spain in a war against France. The French replied by seizing Calais, the only possession left to England on the continent. Mary's English patriotism was deeply wounded. "When I die," said she, "you will find Calais written on my heart."

In Mary's eagerness to free England from heresy, she had neglected other things. Pirates swarmed along the coasts. Fortresses were unrepaired. There was no money in the treasury. Commerce had almost ceased on account of wars and pirates. The people were weary of Mary and her rule. Her husband had deserted her, and the poor queen, long troubled by disease, and now prostrated by the loss of Calais, died within the year.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Enumerate the effects of the suppression of the monasteries.
2. Why did the people oppose the marriage of Mary and Philip?
3. Why was England badly governed in Edward VI.'s time? In Mary's time?
4. Why were the radical reformers unwise? What proves their folly?
5. What causes led to the Vagrant Act? Why was it unjust?
6. In what way did the poor suffer during this period?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. LADY JANE GREY. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, IV. (see index); Froude, *History of England*, Vol. VI., pp. 16-43, 180-184.
2. EDWARD, THE BOY KING. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, IV. (see index); Clemens, *The Prince and the Pauper*.
3. PERSECUTION UNDER TUDOR SOVEREIGNS. E. S. Holt, *All for the Best*.
4. PHILIP AND MARY. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, IV.

## C. GROWTH OF ENGLISH POWER.

## Elizabeth, 1558-1603.

**How Elizabeth Ruled England.** The reign of Good Queen Bess, as she has been called by her admirers, is known as the Elizabethan Age. In literature Shakespeare, Spenser,



ELIZABETH.

and many other lights contributed to the glory of the time, while the group of brilliant statesmen, and the number of daring adventurers and seamen added great luster to the English name. Mary's ruling idea had been to restore the Catholic religion to England, while Elizabeth strove to make her country powerful and rich. The navy of England became the strongest in the world, and as a

result, commerce and manufacture made great progress. A marked improvement took place in the home life of the people as they applied themselves anew to manufacture and farming.

There is much truth in the flattering prophecy made of her by Archbishop Cranmer in Shakespeare's play "King Henry VIII.":

"She shall be loved and feared; her own shall bless her;  
Her foes shake like a field of beaten corn,  
And hang their heads with sorrow; good grows with her.  
In her days every man shall eat in safety  
Under his own vine what he plants; and sing  
The merry songs of peace to all his neighbors."

Like Henry VII., Elizabeth had gained wisdom from her misfortunes. She had quietly watched the troubles of Mary's

reign, and had been too prudent to connect herself with them. She thought it better to keep her head on her shoulders than to take sides in a quarrel that was sure to turn out badly, whichever side triumphed. No one knew what her policy would be in church matters, although it was known she leaned toward the side of the reformers.

**Coronation.** "It is the Lord's doing, it is marvelous in our eyes," she said, when the death of her sister made her Queen of England. London was gorgeous with decoration and pageant on the coronation day. As the procession moved from the Tower to Westminster, a little child, representing Truth, let down a Bible by a silken cord into her carriage. The queen kissed the book and thanked the city for the gift, saying, "I shall be a most diligent reader thereof." An English prayer book, afterwards presented to her, she laid aside with anger.

**Her Laws Concerning the Church.** About half the people of England at this time would have liked to continue to worship as their Catholic fathers did. A small number wanted to worship as they did in the English Church of Edward's time. A much larger number, who were afterwards called Puritans, opposed the ceremonies of both the Catholic and the English churches, and wanted the government to leave them free to worship in their own way. But the Parliament decided that the queen must be the "Supreme Governor of the Realm" in church matters as well as in other things. They changed Cranmer's prayer book by leaving out passages that were most offensive to the Catholics. This book was ordered to be used in the service of all the churches in England, under grave penalties for disobeying the order, and with some changes it is still used in the English Church. Those clergymen who would not obey the Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity were dismissed, and others appointed in their places. Though both Catholics and Protestants

declared that the queen was going straight to destruction, she continued in her course.

Before long, severe laws were made against Catholics and other dissenters from the established religion. Historians have called Elizabeth's predecessor "Bloody Mary," because she persecuted heretics. But Elizabeth's own hands were not spotless. As we shall see, nearly two hundred Catholics were put to death in England during her reign. Under her, also, the torture was frequently used to force confessions from the accused, whereas under Mary it had scarcely ever been resorted to.

**How the Queen Kept Peace with Foreign Nations.** Elizabeth, aided by her able ministers, Cecil, Bacon, and Walsingham, was skillful in diplomacy;—that is, she could get what the nation wanted without fighting for it. She was able and energetic like her father, and could decide promptly and act boldly in time of danger. But she put off making up her mind as long as possible, and was ready to change it as soon as made up. If a measure she adopted turned out badly, she would declare she had never authorized it. She would make promises that she never intended to observe, would forsake her friends, lie when it served her purpose, and could even strike her courtiers and swear if she felt so inclined.

Her plan was to keep her enemies divided. In Scotland and France there was the same division into religious factions as there had been in England. When the Protestant party in those countries was in danger of being subdued, Elizabeth would furnish it just enough help to enable it to keep the Catholic party busy. At first Spain was friendly, and Elizabeth did not interfere when King Philip II. tried to force the Catholic religion upon his Protestant subjects in the Netherlands; but later she sent help to them also. As her enemies were thus occupied with troubles at home, they were

unable to attack England until the country had grown united and strong.

**The Queen's Proposed Marriage.** At the beginning of her reign, the Parliament petitioned the queen to choose a husband, and she promised to do so when it should be for the advantage of the country. But she never could make up her mind which suitor to choose. Philip II. proposed first, hoping by marrying Elizabeth to keep England on the side of



PHILIP II.

Spain. His offer was declined, but she considered other candidates that he proposed. In 1581, she gave the people to understand that she would marry the Duke of Anjou in order to unite France, England, and the Netherlands against Spain. It is not likely she intended to marry the duke, but perhaps she wanted to find out what her people thought about a French marriage. A young lawyer, named Stubbs, wrote a pamphlet ridiculing the

marriage in a manner more insolent than polite. His book was destroyed and his right hand cut off. But he waved his hat with his left, and cried, "God save Queen Elizabeth!"

Her great desire was to keep England at peace. When her councilors talked in a warlike way, she would bring her fist down on the table, exclaiming, "No war! my Lords, no war!" If her marriage had been necessary to the peace and safety of England, Elizabeth might have married, but as long as it was not, she preferred many suitors to one husband, and delighted in hearing their flattery, and in keeping them in suspense.



In order to understand the events of Elizabeth's reign we must know something of the struggle over religion that was going on in the neighboring countries. X

**John Knox in Scotland.** A struggle between Scottish Catholics and reformers had been in progress during the reigns of Edward VI. and Mary. Mary of Guise, mother of Mary Stuart, ruled the country as regent, and tried to keep the people faithful to the Catholic Church. But in Scotland the kings never had so much power as in England, and she was unable to restrain the reformers. An insurrection was brought on by the attempt of the regent to punish the preachers who would not obey the order to return to the Catholic worship.

The most noted of the Scotch reformers was John Knox, a native of Glasgow. For his part in the insurrection he was sent to the French galleys, but he escaped and became a pupil of the French reformer, John Calvin, at Geneva. In 1559 Knox returned to Scotland. He was a man of ready speech, terribly in earnest, and he readily obtained the attention of the people. He preached a fierce sermon at Perth on idolatry, and the people broke into the churches and cathedrals and stripped them of the beautiful pictures, images, and altars with which they were furnished. The movement spread through the country, and the people rose in arms. They besieged the regent and deposed her. When French soldiers were brought in to subdue them, they called on Elizabeth for help. Thus they were found asking their old enemy, England, to help drive out their old friend, France. Elizabeth helped them drive out the French, on the condition that they should be obedient to their queen, Mary Stuart.

**Mary Queen of Scots.** Mary's husband, King Francis II. of France, had died soon after his coronation, and she was now to return to Scotland to rule as queen. She felt very sad to leave the gay and beautiful Paris, where she had grown up and married. "Farewell! dear France!" she cried,

as the ship sailed out into the mists of the North Sea, "I shall never see thee more." It was indeed her last farewell to France. To Elizabeth, Mary's coming brought no end of trouble, for Mary and the Catholic party claimed that the marriage of Henry VIII. and Anne Boleyn was not lawful, and that Elizabeth had no right to her throne. Mary, being the granddaughter of Henry VIII.'s sister Margaret, was, according to this claim, the lawful Queen of England. Elizabeth did not intend to allow Mary to reach Scotland till she should sign the treaty which had been made with the Scotch reformers, acknowledging Elizabeth's right to the English throne; but Mary refused to sign, and succeeded in reaching Scotland in safety.

Mary began her reign well, and made many of the rough Scots her friends. It was her plan, after getting firm control of affairs at home, to call upon Spain and France to join her in a war on England. But she soon got into difficulties. She married her cousin, Lord Darnley, who was such a foolish and contemptible man that she soon came to despise him. Her friendship for her foreign secretary, Rizzio, made Darnley angry, and one day he and some friends of his burst into Mary's presence, and stabbed Rizzio to death before her eyes. After this a rough Scotch lord, named Bothwell, became her chief adviser. One night the house in which Darnley was sleeping was blown into the air by a blast of gunpowder. He was not hurt by the explosion, but while running away was met by armed men and murdered. Bothwell and Mary were afterwards married.

The hostile Scotch nobles rose up against Mary. They captured her and shut her up in Loch Leven Castle. They made her young son, James VI., king, and chose her half-brother, Murray, to rule until he grew up. Mary soon escaped from her prison and fled to England, begging Elizabeth to help her get back her throne. But some people ac



CAPTURE OF MARY STUART BY THE SCOTS.

cused her, as well as Bothwell, of Darnley's murder. Elizabeth therefore refused to help her, and gave her to an English noble to keep as a prisoner. After being moved from one place to another, she was at last confined in Fotheringay Castle.

**The Enmity of Spain.** Philip II. ruled over the Netherlands, Spain, and Italy, besides many American colonies, from which he received great treasures of gold and silver. He was offended by Elizabeth's policy of encouraging his foes, and his enmity was increased by the seizure of five treasure ships belonging to Spain that had put into the harbor of Plymouth.

The provinces of the Netherlands had long been the richest in Europe. They were inhabited by manufacturers and merchants, and had long been in the habit of governing themselves. Philip's determination to enforce in them the decrees of the Catholic Church, together with their fears of Spanish domination, provoked a fierce and determined resistance which all Philip's power could not crush. Their heroic leader, William of Orange, was killed by a paid assassin of Philip, and the sovereignty was offered to Elizabeth and declined by her. The cause went on many years till the Dutch provinces became a free republic.

In France the two religions had been waging a bloody civil war. Philip had joined the Catholic party there to keep the French Protestants, or Huguenots, as they were called, from helping the Dutch. This forced Elizabeth to send aid to Holland; for if Philip should conquer the Dutch, he would join France in attacking England, and attempt to put Mary on the throne. An army was sent under the Earl of Leicester. He was a vain and haughty man, with no ability, and accomplished little. In the attack on Zutphen, his gallant nephew, Sir Philip Sidney, fell, the noblest gentleman of England. He was author, statesman, and scholar. His noble character is exhibited in the last action of his life. When he was lying wounded upon the battlefield, a cup of water was offered him; but seeing another suffering soldier near him, he said, "Take it; thy necessity is greater than mine."

**Rise of the English Navy.** But England had begun an attack on Philip which threatened to ruin his nearly exhausted treasury. English sailors were beginning to cruise in the Caribbean Sea and the Gulf of Mexico and seize the Spanish treasure ships from America.

**Captain John Hawkins** began the African slave trade in 1562. He carried the slaves to the West Indies, where he exchanged them for sugar, ginger, pearls, and hides, which found

a ready sale in Europe. The queen herself invested in his second voyage and shared the profits.

**Francis Drake** took a shorter road to wealth. With five ships he set sail for South America in 1577. He coasted southward, and passed through the Strait of Magellan. Off Chile, he took a Spanish treasure ship, and further north he overhauled the great treasure galleon which was sent annually to Spain. Three cannon shot brought down her mast, and



KNIGHTING DRAKE.

her cargo was taken aboard the "Golden Hind." Thirteen chests of plate, eighty pounds of gold, and twenty-six tons of silver were the booty of the victor.

Sailing northward, he landed on the California coast, naming it "New Albion." To avoid the Spanish fleet waiting for him at the strait, he struck westward across the Pacific, returning to England in 1580 by way of the Cape of Good Hope. He was thus the first Englishman to make the cir-



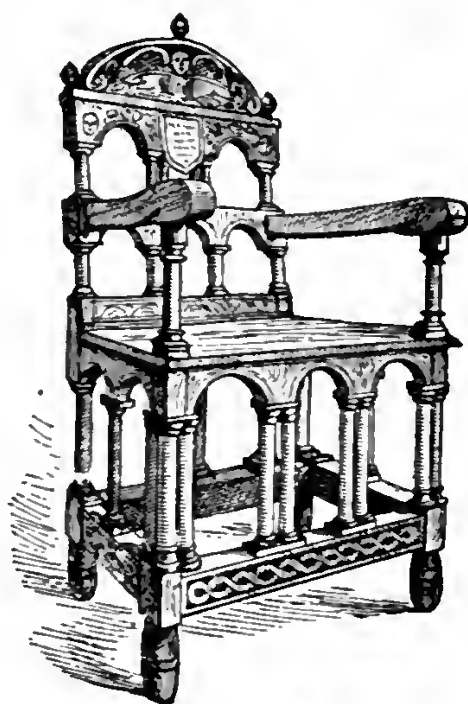
cuit of the globe. England went wild with delight. Drake was knighted. A banquet was served to the queen on board his ship, and it became a sort of club-home for naval men. Years afterwards, when it was broken up, a chair was made from some of the timber and given to Oxford University.

During the next few years Drake was busy plundering the Spanish colonies. In 1587 he entered the harbor of Cadiz and scuttled fifty of Philip's ships which were being fitted out to attack England. The town was plundered and burned.

He hurried back to England, saying he had "sing'd Philip's beard," as he had vowed to do when he set out.

**Execution of Mary.** Philip had been preparing to invade England, at first in behalf of Mary, but now in his own behalf. Mary had been a continual source of trouble. The Duke of Norfolk and other nobles had attempted to release her and put her on the English throne. The rising had been put down with great severity; Norfolk was put in the Tower, and later was sent to the block.

The Society of Jesus, founded in 1534 for the extension of the Catholic faith, now began to send its priests into England. But severe laws were made against the Jesuits. It was made high treason to receive any one into the Catholic Church or to absolve the queen's subjects from their oath of allegiance. A fine of twenty pounds a month was laid on any one who would not attend the established church. As many as two hundred of the Jesuits were imprisoned or put to death.



CHAIR MADE FROM DRAKE'S  
SHIP.

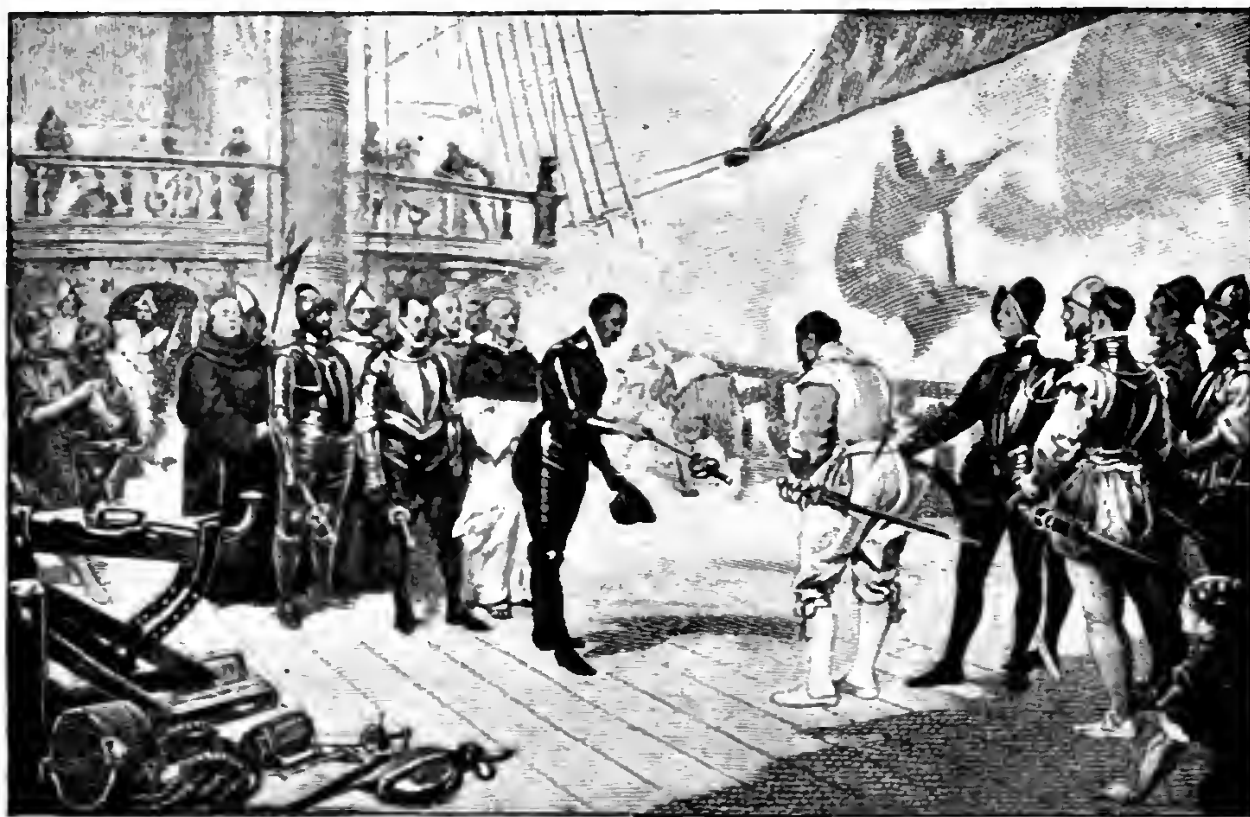
The severe laws against the Catholics had driven them to desperation. Anthony Babington and several young men of Elizabeth's own court were supposed to be in a plot to assassinate her. The Duke of Parma, Philip's chief general, was to invade England, marry the Queen of Scots, and rule the country as the vassal of Spain. Walsingham's spies managed to get the confidence of the conspirators and made copies of the letters passing between Mary and them. When Walsingham had obtained evidence that she was aware of the plot, the conspirators were all seized and put to death. Mary was saved for a time, but it was believed that Elizabeth's life would never be safe while Mary was alive. She was therefore tried and beheaded in Fotheringay Castle, February 8, 1587. ✱

**The Great Armada.** Drake's attack on the Spanish at Cadiz delayed Philip's preparation for a year; but in May, 1588, he was ready to put to sea. His fleet, "the most fortunate and invincible Armada," as he called it, consisted of 132 ships, manned by 10,000 sailors and slaves, and carrying 22,000 soldiers. The Duke of Parma was to join him with 17,000 soldiers from the Netherlands. Elizabeth could not believe that England was seriously threatened, and delayed preparations till the last moment, hoping yet to make peace. But the English people of both creeds united heartily in the defense of the country, for they disliked Philip, who now claimed to be the lawful heir to the throne of England, since he was descended from John of Gaunt.

The English navy contained only thirty-four ships and six thousand men; but by the efforts of the merchants and the seaport towns, it was immensely increased. London was asked to furnish fifteen ships, but sent word to the queen to please "accept thirty." The whole land responded with equal generosity, and a formidable fleet, under Admiral Lord Howard, was ready to attack the Armada when it came up the Channel in July, 1588. The Spanish vessels were larger



than the English, but the English had more cannon. The English could therefore inflict much damage while themselves keeping out of range of the Spanish musketry. When one of the galleons was crippled and left behind the fleet, the English ships would surround and capture it — “plucking off the feathers,” they called it. The Spanish vessels, on account of their clumsy build, could not readily assist one another, while the light and swift English ships could destroy an enemy and escape without damage.



DRAKE RECEIVING THE SURRENDER OF A SPANISH SHIP.

The Armada came to anchor off Calais to await the Duke of Parma and his veterans. Elizabeth had assembled her troops at Tilbury. Clad in armor and mounted on a white horse, she rode among them and made a speech which stirred their loyalty. “Let tyrants fear;” she said, “my strength and safety are in the loyal hearts of my people. I know I am a weak and feeble woman, but I have the heart of a King of England.”

But the soldiers were not needed. Parma was blockaded by a Dutch fleet and could not embark. The English sent fire ships among the Spanish vessels which lay at anchor off Calais. In an effort to escape, they cut their cables and put to sea in confusion. The English fleet then attacked, and sank or captured sixteen ships. A tempest began to blow from the south-east. The Spanish ships were driven away from the Netherlands and hopelessly scattered, while the English rode out the storm without the loss of a ship. Some of the Spanish vessels were wrecked on the coast of Norway, others on the islands around Scotland, till finally out of the "Invincible Armada" only fifty-three ships and 10,000 men returned to Spain. The Spanish king had done his worst and had failed. The sea power of Spain steadily declined, and she sank from the first rank of nations, while England rose to the first place as a naval, commercial, and colonizing nation.

**Church Troubles.** During the rest of the reign the Catholic dissenters were treated with the greatest severity. Priests and laymen who would not recant were banished, and about fifty, including two women, suffered death. The Court of High Commission was established to settle questions relating to the church. It tried and punished the Puritans harshly. By this time the most of the Catholics had been driven into the established church; and, to make it conform somewhat to the old form of Catholic worship, the High Church party grew up, which Elizabeth herself favored, and which afterwards, by its severity, drove the Puritans into rebellion. The severe measures of the High Commission court were caused by the rise of new sects. Besides the Puritans, who wished, as they said, to "purify" the church of Catholic ceremonies, another sect arose, called Brownists, from the name of their leader, and afterwards known as Separatists. This denomination held that each church congregation ought to have the right to govern itself without interference of any

kind. They were especially hateful to Elizabeth, and six were put to death.

The sect of Presbyterians, or Calvinists, established by John Knox in Scotland, soon spread to England. They wished to govern the church by sending representatives from each congregation to an assembly which should have nothing to do with the political government. These ideas of church government were too new and strange to receive much favor in the time of Elizabeth.

**War against Spain Continued.** England now turned invader, and for the rest of Elizabeth's reign Spain was mercilessly plundered. Her colonies were raided, towns sacked, and countless wealth carried away to England. Drake died in 1596 while on one of his cruises against the Spaniards, and Hawkins, who was over sixty, died about the same time.

**Sir Richard Grenville.** In these wars many a valiant deed was done. One of the most noted is that of Richard Grenville. He and Lord Howard were with a fleet looking for Spanish treasure ships near the Azores, when they were surprised by a fleet of fifty-three Spanish ships of war. All escaped but Grenville, who refused to fly, but with one ship proceeded to fight his way through the enemy's fleet. For fifteen hours he held out, until his ship was barely afloat, his powder gone, forty men killed, and himself desperately wounded. He then ordered his men to sink the ship so that it should not fall into the enemy's hands. Tennyson tells the story in his ballad "The Revenge":

"And the sun went down, and the stars came out far over the summer sea,

But never for a moment ceased the fight of the one and the fifty-three.

Ship after ship, the whole night long, their high-built galleons came,  
Ship after ship, the whole night long, with her battle-thunder and flame;

Ship after ship, the whole night long, drew back with her dead and her shame.

For some were sunk, and many were shattered, and so could fight us no more;

God of battles! was ever a battle like this in the world before?"

Grenville was carried on board one of the enemy's ships to die, and the Spaniards did honor to his valor. His last words were fitting to the manner of his death: "Here die I, Richard Grenville, with a joyful and quiet mind; for I have ended my life as a good soldier ought, who has fought for his country and his queen, for his honor and his religion."

These wars were brought to a close in 1596 by an attack on Cadiz. Lord Howard with one hundred and fifty ships and Essex with a land force joined in an assault on the town. The shipping in the harbor was completely destroyed and the city plundered, but no one was needlessly slaughtered. The dread of Spain was over.✕

**Conquest of Ireland.** The English had never been able to control permanently more than a small strip of the Irish coast around Dublin. In the latter part of Elizabeth's reign, the young Earl of Essex, a favorite of the queen, was sent to Ireland to put down a rising in Ulster begun by the Irish Earl of Tyrone, who had invited in the Spanish to aid him. Essex wasted his time, his army melted away, and nothing was done against Tyrone. He behaved as though he intended to join the rebels against England. On his return, being coldly received, he attempted to stir up a rebellion and get control of the queen's council. For this he was tried and beheaded. Elizabeth, who loved him as though he were a son, never recovered from the sorrow she felt at his fall. Lord Mountjoy succeeded him in the Irish command and compelled the Earl of Tyrone to submit. Mountjoy's methods were so severe that the queen said they "left nothing but ashes and corpses to rule over."

**The Repeal of Monopolies.** Elizabeth, as much as possible, avoided taxing the people. One way she had of raising money was by the sale of monopolies. For example, the Earl of Essex was the only man in England allowed to sell sweet wines. For this privilege he paid a certain sum to the queen. But people who wanted to buy sweet wine, or any other article protected by a monopoly, had to pay more for it. So many monopolies were granted that they became a great burden, and in 1601 the last parliament called by Elizabeth petitioned her to make an end of them. She abolished the worst ones at once, when she saw the people desired it. In doing so she made her last speech to the English people, closing with these words: "Though you have had, and may have, many princes more mighty and wise sitting in this seat, yet you never had nor will have any that will be more careful and loving."

**Manufactures.** We have seen how cloth manufacturing was begun in the time of Edward III., by inviting Flemish spinners and weavers to come to England to teach their trades to English apprentices. During the bloody wars of Philip II. in the Netherlands many more came. In one year alone the number was 30,000. Elizabeth welcomed them, because skillful workmen make a country rich. She gave them lands in Sandwich and Norwich (p. 7), on the condition that every one of them should employ at least one English apprentice. It soon came about that instead of England sending wool to Flanders and buying it back in the form of cloth, the cloth was made in England and sold to the merchants in Flanders, who again sold it to merchants in the rest of Europe. Twice a year the English merchants fitted out a fleet of fifty or sixty ships, and as much as 100,000 pieces of woolen and silk were sold every year.

**The Coinage.** In order to carry on trade it is necessary

to have good money, that is, coin that is worth the amount stamped upon it, so that people will take it freely in exchange for goods. Much of the coin had been debased by melting cheaper metals with the gold and silver, so that a coin that said one shilling on its face was worth only one third of a shilling. Elizabeth caused all this poor money to be recoined to make it worth its face value. X

**The Royal Exchange.** At first the merchants of London were obliged to do their buying and selling on the sidewalks, where they were exposed to all kinds of weather. The Hansa merchants had long before built a special place, the Steelyard, where they conducted their business. In 1560 Sir Thomas Gresham, a wealthy English merchant, who had lived in Flanders and had seen the fine stores of the traders there, built on Lombard Street, the main business thoroughfare, a fine brick structure surrounding a square. Around this square shops were arranged with vaults for safely storing merchandise. Elizabeth was so pleased with Gresham's building that she named it "The Royal Exchange."

**Trade with Russia.** In 1553 Richard Chancellor had tried to find a passage to India by sailing eastward through the Arctic Ocean. He went as far as Archangel, and from there journeyed overland in a sledge, 1,500 miles, to Moscow, the capital of Russia, or Muscovy, as that country was then called. Here he was gladly received by the emperor, who gave him letters to Queen Mary. These Chancellor delivered to her, along with an account of the country, which was very productive of grain, hemp, furs, and ivory. Four years later the emperor sent an ambassador to England to see about opening trade. The merchants dressed themselves in their finest silks and velvets, and hung chains of gold about their necks, when they went in procession to receive him. This they did to show their elegance and wealth and so make the Russians eager to trade with them. They also gave the

ambassador a fine horse richly caparisoned, with a splendid saddle, and cloths of velvet, trimmed with gold lace, and took him fox hunting with three hundred knights and gentlemen. When he returned the merchants sent with him four "good and well-trimmed ships." And thus trade with Russia began.

**Other Voyages** were made in the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth along the coast of Africa, and trade was begun with the Portuguese settlements there. India was first seen by Englishmen when Drake made his famous voyage around the world. Thomas Cavendish followed him in 1586, in the second English ship to sail around the globe. As early as 1576 Martin Frobisher had tried to reach India by "the northwest passage," north of North America. In two later voyages he repeated the attempt, but could make his way only little further than Hudson Strait (map, p. 400).

The first English colony planted in America was founded on Roanoke Island by Sir Walter Raleigh, one of the courtiers of Elizabeth; though it failed, the interest it aroused led to later successes, as we shall see in the next reign.

**English Travelers** had found the way eastward to India as well as westward to America. Ralph Fitch traveled overland as far as Bengal, and returning in 1591, after an absence of eight years, wrote a full account of his experiences.

Raymond and Lancaster in 1591 doubled the Cape of Good Hope, visited Ceylon, Malacca, China, and Japan, and returning by a southwestern course saw many of the East Indies. In 1600, the East India Company was chartered for trade with that part of the world.

Anthony Jenkinson was a London trader who journeyed through Russia, visited the regions about the Black and Caspian seas, and traveled into parts of Siberia, Persia, and Asia Minor.

In 1580 the English obtained from the Turks a "charter



of liberties," granting them the privilege to trade in the eastern Mediterranean, or the "Levant," as it is called.

Thus we see English commerce and exploration branching out in every direction: northeast to Russia; westward to America; southeast to the continent of Europe and the Levant; eastward to India, China, and Japan; and south along the coast of Africa. In the next century, the seventeenth, colonies are planted and the foundation of the British Empire begun.

**English Literature of the Time of Elizabeth.** The greatest name among the many authors of Elizabeth's time



SHAKESPEARE.

is William Shakespeare. He wrote dramas which have never been equaled, and are still played in our theaters. He was himself an actor and wrote his plays for his own theater in London, the "Globe."

The greatest poet after Shakespeare was Edmund Spenser. His great poem, the "Faery Queen," is composed of twelve tales of knightly adventure. The hero is Prince Arthur, and in the beautiful lady for whose hand the knights are striving we may see the poet's flattery of Elizabeth. Sir Philip Sidney, the "warbler of poetic prose," as Cowper calls him, wrote a romance called "Arcadia." Raleigh, in the next reign, wrote a history of the world. More than a hundred good writers who lived in Elizabeth's time might be mentioned. In no other period shall we find such a brilliant company of dramatists and poets.

**Francis Bacon** was the most distinguished prose writer.

He was the son of Sir Nicholas Bacon, one of the queen's officers. Once the queen asked him his age. "I am two years younger than your Majesty's happy reign," he replied. His "Essays" are famous. He wrote a book describing the method of learning about things by observation and experiment, and in consequence has been called the founder of "experimental science." He was the author of a series of important books, to which he gave the long name, "The Great Institution of True Philosophy." These writings were in Latin, which was still the language of learned men. The queen herself was a famous scholar and could make speeches in both Latin and Greek. Bacon died (1626) as the result of one of his experiments. Once when he was riding in his carriage during a snowstorm, it occurred to him that snow might be used instead of salt in preserving flesh. He stopped at a farmhouse and bought a fowl to try an experiment. He caught cold from the exposure and died from the fever which followed it.

**Life of the People.** The people of England lived in better houses, wore better clothing, and ate better food in Elizabeth's reign than at any previous time in English history. The houses were floored and wainscoted. Glass windows took the place of open latticework. Spoons and knives were used, and, finally, forks, as one writer says, "to the great saving of napkins."

The small farmer, or yeoman, was protected by law, and thus the evil of "inclosing" land was diminished. Books on farming and gardening were written, and the people learned how to raise vegetables and fruits.

Hunting, hawking, and bull and bear baiting were favorite amusements. There were many holidays, when the country people gathered in the nearest village for shooting, wrestling, football, and quoits. Then there was dancing, masquerading, pantomimes, games, cockfights, and feasts. On May Day, a pole was "set up and dancing followed." Whitsunday was

celebrated with much merriment and games. Christenings, betrothals, weddings, and even funerals were made the occasion of much feasting. It was certainly a "merrie England" in the times of Queen "Bess."

In 1603, in the seventieth year of her age, and the forty-fifth of her reign, the good queen passed away. On her deathbed she expressed her wish that her "cousin of Scotland," James VI., should be her successor.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What was Elizabeth's policy in religious matters? Describe her foreign policy.
2. What led to the voyages and commercial enterprise of Elizabeth's reign? What important results followed?
3. How did Mary Stuart hope to obtain the English crown? What was her claim to it?
4. Why did the great empire of Spain yield before the power of England? Compare the navies of the two countries at the time of the Armada.
5. Why did the English people consider the reign of Elizabeth the most glorious in their history? Is it still so considered?
6. Compare Elizabeth with Philip II. of Spain as a ruler.
7. To what important results has Bacon's philosophy led?
8. What can you say of the literature of Elizabeth's time?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE GREAT ARMADA. Gomme, *Kings' Story Book*, Ch. IV.; Creighton, *Age of Elizabeth*, Ch. II.; Macaulay's poem, *The Armada*.
2. DRAKE'S GREAT VOYAGE. Henty, *Under Drake's Flag*; Frothingham, *Sea Fighters*.
3. ELIZABETH AT KENILWORTH. Scott, *Kenilworth*, pp. 339-346.
4. CAPTIVITY AND DEATH OF MARY STUART. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 164-178; Rolfe, *Tales from Scottish History*, pp. 92-120.
5. THE REVENGE. Tennyson's poem, *The Revenge*; Colby, *Source Book*, pp. 174-177.

## VIII. THE STUART KINGS<sup>1</sup> AND CROMWELL.

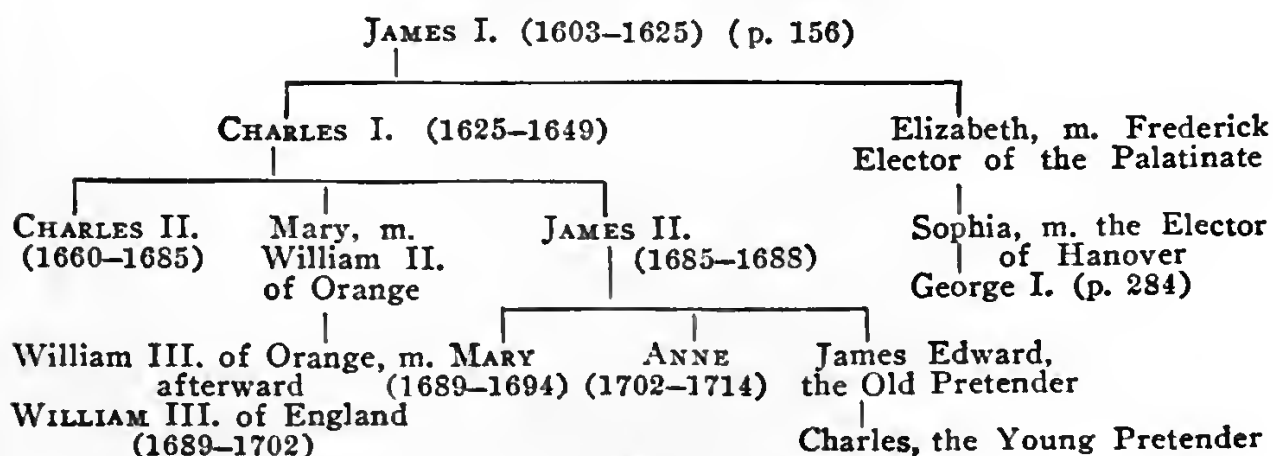
### A. THE FIRST KING BY "DIVINE RIGHT."

James I., 1603-1625.

The First Stuart King of England was summoned by a swift messenger, who took the news of Elizabeth's death to Edinburgh. A few days later, James VI. of Scotland received a formal letter from the council announcing that he had been proclaimed King James I. of England. There was no one who could safely dispute his claim. The people wished to end the wars between the two countries, and as James was a Presbyterian, he was welcome to the growing number of Puritans.

The king consumed thirty-two days in traveling to London. He stopped frequently to hunt and feast with his new subjects, and to make their acquaintance. His majesty was very awkward on his feet, and still more so in the saddle. In spite of the efforts of his attendants, he once rolled off his horse, but Robert Cecil, his chancellor, courteous-

#### <sup>1</sup> THE HOUSE OF STUART.



ly remarked that “any *great and extreme* rider” like his Majesty was liable to such an accident. To accustom the kingly arm to the use of his new power, he knighted something over two hundred gentlemen during his “progress,” and condemned a pickpocket to death. “I hear our new king,” a famous Englishman wrote to a friend, “hath hanged one man without a trial. If the wind bloweth thus, why may not a man be tried before he hath offended?”

**The Stuart Notion of the Rights of Kings.** James I. brought into England a new idea as to the power of a king. The English people held that a king could not act contrary to the laws of the country; but James believed that he was above the law and could do anything he pleased. “Do I not make the judges and the bishops?” he said. “Then I may make what I like law and gospel.” His favorite expression was, “God makes the king, the king makes the law.” This theory that a king derives his power directly from God is sometimes called “the divine right of kings.” It was a new idea in England, where the Parliament was thought to “make the king,” and, with the king, to make the law; and it was an unfortunate idea for the Stuart house, for in the end it cost one of them his head, and another one his throne.

In Scotland the Presbyterians and the powerful nobles had given James little power and little money. Indeed, Cecil had to send him enough to pay his expenses to London. In England, however, he expected to have the same nearly absolute power that Henry VIII. and Elizabeth had had. During the reign of these two able sovereigns, the power of the people had slumbered. They had their way, but with the approval of the people. When James attempted to have his way without the approval of the people, trouble began.

**The Appearance and Character of James** were in pitiful contrast with the stern command of Henry, or the stately dignity of Elizabeth. The people were disgusted with his

undignified appearance and behavior. He rolled and straddled in his gait, as though his legs were too weak to carry his body; and his expressionless eyes rolled about and stared vacantly at nothing. He was untidy in person, his clothing was neglected and dirty, and his whole appearance ungainly and slovenly. He was in constant fear of assassination, and wore a thickly wadded, dagger-proof coat. He lurked cautiously behind his courtiers when any strange visitors were about.

The king had been carefully educated and was fond of displaying his learning. In his councils, he loved to do the talking, especially concerning church matters, when he would speak in Latin or Greek to show off his learning. But though he knew many things, he was lacking in good sense. The French ambassador at the English court called him the "wisest fool in Europe."

**James and the English Church.** While James was on his way to London, a petition signed by a thousand Puritan clergymen was given to him, begging that the laws against dissenters might be repealed. They did not want to wear a robe when they conducted the church service, and they wished to be allowed to preach sermons of their own. They did not like to make the sign of the cross when children were baptized, or to use a ring in the marriage ceremony.

So James called a great conference of Puritans and bishops at Hampton Court, to consider what should be done. He may have had an honest desire to hear their complaints; but he became impatient and angry when the Puritans differed with him on any point. He made a long speech telling them his views in regard to the church. He used big words and talked Latin. The English bishops fell on their knees and thanked God for giving them such a wise king, and declared that he was inspired by the Holy Spirit. James was delighted with their praise, and did not see that they were flattering

him for their own purposes. Their conduct was quite different from that of the followers of Knox in Scotland, one of whom had called him a "witless fool" to his face.

Deserting the Presbyterians, he gave his support to the bishops, and he announced afterward that if the dissenters did not conform to the established church he would "harry them out of the kingdom." He broke up the conference and imprisoned ten of those who had signed the petition.

He first suspended and then revived a law of Elizabeth fining Catholics 20 pounds a month if they did not attend the English Church. The fine was so heavy that many were ruined.

**The Gunpowder Plot.** Robert Catesby, a Catholic, formed a plan to blow up the house of Parliament and get rid of King, Lords, and Commons at one blow. With Guy Fawkes and others he hired a coal cellar under the Parliament house and placed in it thirty-four barrels of gunpowder, which were covered with fuel to conceal them. Horses were ready, and a ship to take the conspirators out of the country in case of need. But just before Parliament was to meet, one of the conspirators wrote to warn his brother-in-law to stay away



GUY FAWKES'S LANTERN.

from the meeting, for, he said, "this Parliament shall receive a terrible blow, and shall not see who hurt them." The letter was put into the hands of Cecil and the king, and its meaning was unraveled.

Soldiers searched the cellar and seized Fawkes.

Other plotters took arms, but were pursued and killed or captured. The prisoners were executed. Fawkes was first examined by the king, who asked how he could have the heart



to kill the king and other innocent people. "Desperate diseases require desperate remedies," was the reply. To a little Scotch favorite who asked why he had got so much powder together, Fawkes answered that he wanted to blow all Scotchmen as far as Scotland. Though racked and tortured, he refused to tell the names of his fellow-plotters.

**Trouble with Parliament.** When the King of England wishes to consult the people, he orders an election. The people of each city and county then elect representatives. If there is a disputed election, the House of Commons has the right to decide which man is legally chosen. King James tried to take away this privilege and decide the election himself, but the House insisted on its rights. He also quarreled with Parliament about other things, and Parliament did not grant him the new taxes he asked for.

In a later Parliament (1621), when he asked for a grant of money, the Commons refused until the king should remove certain grievances. He had been collecting a large amount of duties on the imports and exports of the country without the consent of Parliament. He had been trying law cases in his Court of High Commission, which ought to have been tried in the ordinary courts. His judges, too, were receiving bribes for deciding cases. The Commons, however, complained especially that the king had granted many monopolies (p. 197). The king abolished the monopolies, and Parliament impeached Lord Francis Bacon, the chancellor, for bribery, fined him, and put him out of office.

James wanted Parliament to think that the power they had was a gift from the crown; but they informed him that "their privileges were theirs by right of birth as Englishmen, and that all matters of public interest were their business." He was so angry at their boldness that he dissolved Parliament at once, and had six of them put into prison. Since he could not get them to grant money without giving

up his "divine right," he continued to get it by unlawful means.

**The King's Favorites.** Robert Cecil, the chief adviser of the king, died in 1612. The king then chose for his adviser a handsome young man named Robert Carr. He made him an earl, and a Knight of the Garter. But Carr was soon accused of a murder and condemned to death; though James pardoned him, he was banished from court. George Villiers, another adventurer, who had begun as the king's cupbearer, now took Carr's place. James heaped wealth and honors upon him, and made him the chief man in the kingdom. If these favorites had been worthy and able men, no one would have complained, but the only claim they had to consideration was their good looks. Elizabeth had chosen the wisest in England for her council, but James chose worthless men.

**Relations with Spain.** At the beginning of his reign James made peace with Spain. He thought that by keeping on good terms with both Catholic and Protestant countries he could prevent the religious wars that were threatening to break out. But in spite of his notion of his own importance, the king really counted for little in the affairs of Europe. Contrary to the wish of his people, he wanted his son Charles to marry the Infanta, or Spanish princess, Maria, and thus strengthen his friendship with Spain. His daughter Elizabeth had already been married to Frederick, Elector of the Palatinate, one of the Protestant princes of Germany. When Frederick became engaged in war, the Spanish ambassador to England encouraged James in the idea of marrying Charles to the Infanta Maria. James feared to help his son-in-law Frederick, lest he should lose the large dowry which would come with the Spanish princess. But the marriage did not take place. The shrewd Spanish minister was leading James on just to keep him out of affairs in Germany.

Prince Charles and George Villiers, who was soon made Duke of Buckingham, disguised themselves and went to Spain to hurry along the wooing. But the coarse familiarity of the prince and his followers gave a great shock to the dignified Spanish courtiers. Buckingham, especially, gave great offense by his rude conduct and vulgar language. Charles was not allowed to see the princess alone, so one day he jumped over a high wall into a garden where she was. But the lady only screamed and ran away into the house. An old noble who attended her fell on his knees before Charles, and begged him to leave the place at once, as the king would surely cut off his head if he suffered any man to speak to the princess. After a long stay "Steenie" and "Baby Charles," as James called his favorite and his son, returned home, and the flurry over the "Spanish match" came to an end (1623).

**Sir Walter Raleigh** had been imprisoned by James on the charge of plotting against the king. As a matter of fact, nothing was proved against Sir Walter, and his imprisonment was due to the jealousy of Cecil. A very famous lawyer, Sir Edward Coke, whose books are still studied, managed to get Raleigh convicted of treason.

James was in great need of money; and as Raleigh assured him he could find plenty of gold along the Orinoco River, he was released and put in command of several ships to go in search of it. The king gave strict orders not to molest the Spaniards in any way. But as they claimed all of South America, a conflict with them would be unavoidable, and Raleigh supposed the orders were not meant to be obeyed. A company sent out in search of gold was attacked by Spaniards and in return Raleigh captured a Spanish town. But his search for gold was in vain. When he returned to England, the Spanish ambassador urged his execution, and James, to please him, put Raleigh to death on the old charge of treason, though Raleigh had helped to defend his country against the



SIR WALTER RALEIGH PARTING WITH HIS WIFE.

Armada, and was loved by all England. On the night before his execution (1618), Raleigh wrote the following lines:

“Even such is Time, that takes on trust  
Our youth, our joys, our all we have,  
And pays us but with age and dust;  
Who, in the dark and silent grave,  
When we have wandered all our ways,  
Shuts up the story of our days;  
But from this earth, this grave, this dust,  
My God shall raise me up, I trust.”

**The American Colonies.** In Elizabeth's reign Raleigh had spent a large fortune on American colonization and had

failed. King James authorized the London and Plymouth companies to open trade and plant colonies in America. The Plymouth Company was unsuccessful; but under the London Company the first permanent English colony in America was founded at Jamestown in Virginia in 1607.

The charter drawn up by the king for the government of the new colony gave the settlers no power in the management of affairs. It was speedily changed, and the Virginia colony became flourishing. Tobacco culture became profitable, for smoking, which was introduced by Sir Walter Raleigh, was the fashion in England. This habit was very distasteful to James, who wrote a book against it, called "A Counterblast to Tobacco." But the English people went on puffing at their pipes, thinking, perhaps, that James's habit of making himself tipsy every day was quite as bad as smoking.

The next important colony was founded in 1620, at Plymouth in New England, by the "Pilgrim Fathers" under the leadership of William Brewster and William Bradford. John Carver became their first governor. Most of these colonists had once been part of a congregation of Separatists in the village of Scrooby, near the southern border of Yorkshire. Refusing to conform to the English Church, they went to Holland and later to their new home in America. The king would not give them a charter, but he made no objection to their going and said no one should molest them if they behaved themselves.

**Progress of the East India Company.** During the reign of Elizabeth, English merchants established themselves at Agra (p. 298), the capital of the Mogul empire in India, and in 1612 an English "factory," or trading station, was built at Surat. The splendor and wealth of the Mogul emperor excited the astonishment of English travelers.

Thomas Coryat visited Agra in 1612, and rode upon one of the imperial elephants, animals which were then one of the

wonders of the world. In his address to the emperor, he said, "I am a poor traveler come hither from a far country, England, to look upon the face of your blessed Majesty, and to see your Majesty's elephants, which kind of beast I have not seen in any other country." Voyages to India were then tedious and dangerous, and many ships and sailors were lost. Yet cloth was exported to the annual value of 14,000 pounds, and 70,000 pounds a year was saved by buying spices direct from that country.

**Irish Colonization.** The plans which Elizabeth had made for colonizing Ireland were carried on by James and by his successor Charles I. They granted the greater part of the province of Ulster to Scotch and English colonists.

**Preparation for War and Death of James.** On the return of "Steenie" and "Baby Charles" from Madrid, the king grew cold toward Spain. A proposal was now made to marry Charles to Princess Henrietta Maria of France. The Parliament rejoiced at the change of the king's mind, for the people hated Spain as much as ever. Taxes were voted, and 12,000 troops were raised to assist the Protestants of Germany and Holland, and to restore the Elector Frederick to his possessions. These troops were sent off without money or supplies, and in a few weeks most of them were dead or dying from disease and exposure. Shortly after this, King James died (1625).

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Why was James supported by the English people?
2. In what way was his notion of his "divine right" opposed to the English idea of government?
3. Was the "Gunpowder Plot" justifiable? Give your reasons.
4. What mistakes did James make in the management of foreign affairs? Why did he make them?
5. What progress was made in colonization and trade under James?
6. What were the chief points in dispute between James and the Parliament?



## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. SIR WALTER RALEIGH. Towle, *Raleigh: his Exploits and Voyages*; Gomme, *Princesses' Story Book*, pp. 201-235; Edgar, *Sea Kings*, etc., pp. 154-185.
2. KING JAMES AND THE WITCHES. C. M. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, Vol. VI.; Colby, *Sources of English History*, pp. 177-181; Ainsworth, *The Lancashire Witches*.
3. PRINCE CHARLES AT THE SPANISH COURT. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, VI., pp. 151-165.
4. CHARACTER OF JAMES I. Scott, *Fortunes of Nigel*, Chs. XXVI.-XXXVII.; Dickens, *Child's History of England*.

## B. ARBITRARY TAXATION AND CIVIL WAR.

## Charles I., 1625-1649.

**How the Reign Began.** The new king was very different from his father in his personal appearance and moral character, but like him in his idea of his own importance and dignity. He married the French princess, and agreed to give English Catholics freedom of worship, a thing which nowadays would seem to us only just and right, but which then seemed to the Parliament treacherous and wrong, especially so because he had promised them not to do this very thing.

Charles now took up the fight his father began, to show that the king was superior to Parliament. The House was composed largely of wealthy gentlemen and able lawyers, for the most part Puritans. They knew well the history of their country and were resolved to maintain the power of the Parliament. This power rested upon the fact that Parliament had the sole right to tax the people and thus raise money for the government. If the king could manage to raise money by his own methods, he could get along without a Parliament and govern as he pleased. And Parliament could not meet unless the king sent for them. Charles quickly called his first Parliament and asked for money to carry on the war against



Spain. He had kept his worthless friend Buckingham as his chancellor, or chief minister. Buckingham was disliked by the Commons, and they refused to grant money unless it should be spent by men whom they could trust. It had been the custom of the Parliament to grant a new king, for life, a customs duty called "tonnage and poundage." But as James and Charles had increased this duty without asking its consent, the Parliament refused to grant it for more than one year at a time.

Under the advice of Buckingham, the king dismissed the Parliament, and, going ahead with the war, sent a fleet and army to attack Cadiz. The attack failed, however, and the English forces then tried to find the Spanish treasure fleet; but the fleet escaped them and got safely to port. The expedition, thinned by disease, returned without accomplishing anything.

**The Second Parliament.** In 1626, after the return of the Cadiz expedition, the king called another Parliament. This body prepared a list of grievances, among which we find illegal taxation, mismanagement of the war, and toleration to Catholics. Buckingham was impeached. Charles was angry and sent word that he would not allow any of his servants to be questioned by them, and dissolved the Parliament before the duke could be brought to trial. During this session, there were several members who were particularly outspoken. Sir John Eliot, John Hampden, and John Pym were of this number. Charles arrested Pym and put him in prison, but was obliged to release him to prevent trouble.

For the next two years the king did not call any Parliament, but resorted to illegal methods of raising taxes. About eighty persons, who refused to pay, were put in prison. He compelled the Catholics to pay the old fines for not attending church. Soon France joined Spain in an alliance

against him. The King of France was trying to put down a revolt among his Protestant subjects, a task in which Spain was willing to help him.

With money illegally collected Charles sent a fleet under the command of Buckingham to the aid of the French Protestants at La Rochelle, but it was entirely defeated and forced to return. ✕

**Third Parliament; Petition of Right.** Again a Parliament was called together. Forced loans and arbitrary imprisonments were chief among the grievances complained of, but there were many others. The Parliament wrote out a long list of them which they embodied in the "Petition of Right," the second great document in the history of England. The four leading provisions of the Petition are these: first, that no man be compelled to make any loan to the king against his will, or to pay any tax not laid by Parliament; second, that soldiers and sailors shall not be quartered upon the people without their consent; third, that no one shall be tried by martial law in time of peace; and, fourth, that no man shall be put in prison without cause being shown. The king for a long time refused to sign the petition, but finally did so.

**Another Expedition to La Rochelle.** Sufficient money had been given by Parliament to equip another fleet to relieve La Rochelle, which was now besieged by the whole power of France. Buckingham was to be put in command again. But while making preparations to embark he was stabbed to the heart by a dissatisfied lieutenant in the former expedition. The fleet sailed under a new commander, but made as bad a failure as before. La Rochelle was taken by France and "leveled to the ground, so that the soil could be plowed with a plow like tilled land."

**Quarrel between King and Commons.** Parliament met again in 1629, but the same old quarrel began over supplies

and grievances. Two things, however, were done that are to be remembered.

The Puritans had been getting more and more power in England, and the High Church party, to which the king and the bishops belonged, was not strongly supported either by Parliament or by the people at large. Instead of reading the prayer book and book of sermons to their congregations, the Puritan ministers would explain what they understood the prayer book to mean. To prevent this, Bishop William Laud induced Charles to issue an order forbidding ministers to print or preach anything "putting their own sense or comment" into the meaning of the articles (p. 175) or prayer book. This order of the king, when brought up for discussion in the House of Commons, enraged it to the last degree.

There was one member of the House whose goods had been seized because he refused to pay the illegal taxes that the king had levied. Sir John Eliot moved that the officers who had taken the goods should be punished. But the king informed the House that the officers had acted according to his orders and should not be punished, and soon after this ordered the Commons to adjourn.

But resolutions were at once proposed declaring that any man was an enemy of the country who should bring in any change in the creed and practices of the church, or who should advise the collection of duties not authorized by Parliament, or should pay such duties unless forced to do so. The speaker, when he attempted to adjourn the House according to the king's order, was held in his chair while these resolutions were passed; and the guards were already breaking down the doors to enforce the order when the Parliament adjourned.

**Members of Parliament Arrested.** Immediately after the adjournment, the king arrested the members who had taken part in the disorderly proceedings attending the passage

of the resolutions. Eliot was locked up in the Tower and kept there several years, till he died. The others apologized to the king and were pardoned. The king, however, had no right to arrest them for anything done in Parliament, as only that body could arrest and punish its members.

**Rule without a Parliament.** For eleven years Charles ruled without calling another Parliament in England. He was determined to settle the question whether the king or the Parliament was to have the higher authority. In this experiment he was assisted chiefly by two men. William Laud, who was soon made Archbishop of Canterbury, was to maintain the king's rule in the affairs of the church; and Thomas Wentworth, afterwards Earl of Strafford and the king's chief adviser, tried to make him the absolute ruler of the state. Wentworth had been a member of the Commons, but, foreseeing the coming struggle between the king and the Parliament, he decided to support the king. "You are going to be undone," said Pym, as Wentworth related his plans, "but remember, though you leave us, we shall never leave you while your head is on your shoulders."

**The State of the Country** was favorable for the king's plans. He had made peace with both France and Spain, in order to have his hands free at home. The nations of Europe—the German states, France and Spain—were engaged in the Thirty Years' War, in which each had some interest at stake too important to allow it to interfere in England. The people themselves, now numbering about five millions in England and Wales, were prosperous. Indian and American trade and colonization had begun to be of interest to merchants and adventurers. More important to Charles was the emigration, after 1629, of many thousands of his Puritan enemies to the settlements in Massachusetts, where they governed themselves under a charter obtained by the Massachusetts Bay Company.

The king could therefore devote his whole attention to two things which he thought concerned most his power and dignity as an absolute sovereign: the raising of money without a Parliament, and the establishment of the doctrines and customs of the English Church, including the use of the prayer book, throughout his dominions.

**How the King Raised Money.** As a first measure, many monopolies were granted. The whole business of soap making for the kingdom was given to one company, which paid the king £10,000 for the monopoly and £8 a ton on all soap made. When people complained about its poor quality, a proclamation was issued threatening fine and imprisonment to all who spoke against the company. Similar monopolies were granted for the handling of coal, salt, iron, leather, tobacco, beer, butter, linen — in fact every industry, from rag-picking up, was made subject to a monopoly. The king reserved for himself the sale of salt to the Irish people. From the sale of monopolies he obtained about £200,000.

The king next set to work to reclaim the royal forests. Large grants of land had been made from these, and were under cultivation. The original boundaries were now restored, and persons occupying land within such boundaries were compelled to give it up, or to pay the king rent for it. Thus the Earl of Southampton suddenly came to owe the king a yearly rent of £2,000.

**Ship Money.** It would take too long to describe all the illegal devices for raising money, such as pulling down houses built without royal license, doubling the duty on imports, and so on, but the tax known as ship money was of special importance.

In early times ships had been furnished by the seaport towns to be used by the king in protecting their trade against pirates. About 1634 the pirates of Algiers began to attack English shipping, and the Dutch naval power was becoming

dangerously strong. Piracy was common among civilized nations, even in time of peace, and a larger navy was necessary. Charles first called on the seaports to furnish and equip a certain number of ships, or, if they preferred, to make a money payment (ship money) instead. But soon Charles said that the whole country was interested in protecting commerce, and made all the counties pay ship money.

At length a Buckinghamshire squire, John Hampden, refused to pay his share of ship money, on the ground that it was a tax not voted by Parliament. The amount was only twenty shillings, but the principle at stake was of great importance. The case was tried before twelve judges (1638), and five decided in favor of Hampden. As the majority favored Charles, he continued the tax, but the arguments against it went through the country and set people thinking; besides, it was understood that the seven judges did not dare to say what they really thought, for fear of the king.

**The Work of Laud in the Church.** Meanwhile Laud was busy in making the Puritan churches use the prayer book and conduct service according to the Act of Uniformity. In 1604 the clergy of the established church had adopted a body of canons, or rules, saying how the ministers should conduct church service. Laud undertook now to enforce these. The canon law said that the communion table should be in the east end of the church, but the Puritans wanted it in the middle. The minister was required to wear a white robe when he conducted service, and the prayer book was to be accurately followed, not read here and there as the minister saw fit.



SCOTCH  
COVENANTER.

The attempt by Scottish bishops, on Laud's advice, to introduce a prayer book in Scotland led to trouble at once, for most of the Scots were Presbyterians. When the minister

tried to read the new service to the congregation in St. Giles Church at Edinburgh, they rose up and drove him from the pulpit. Riots began wherever the new service was introduced, and the people signed a "Covenant," pledging themselves to resist all attempts to change their religion.

**Star Chamber Court.** To enforce the collection of the new taxes and the use of the prescribed church service, and to punish all who spoke or wrote anything against the government, the old courts of Star Chamber and High Commission were again set up. The judges in these courts were the king's own officers, and as there was no jury every offender was convicted and punished as the king pleased.

When Wentworth was made Lord of the Northern Counties and Lord Deputy of Ireland, he set up courts of his own, like the ones at Westminster. Throughout the country, the usual courts were set aside, and the same man became both law-maker and judge. Though Wentworth robbed and bullied the Irish, he greatly improved industrial conditions during his six years of rule. The manufacture of linen was begun, and agriculture and trade increased. But he took from the people a large part of their land and compelled them to grant taxes to the king besides. He then wrote to Laud, "The king is now as absolute here as any prince in the world can be," and advised him to adopt in England the policy that he was using in Ireland, to which he gave the name of "thorough."

**The Bishops' Wars.** The English people had so far patiently endured the tyranny of the king. But the hot-tempered Scotch Covenanters had taken up arms at once, and when Charles led his army against them to enforce the use of the prayer book, they met him with a better army than his own, and he dared not fight.

In 1640 he again called a Parliament, but it advised him not to fight Scotland, and brought up the old tale about



grievances, which he did not want to hear. What he wanted was money, and as he saw he could not get it without giving up his idea of ruling by "divine right," he sent them home within three weeks.

Charles mustered another army against the Scots. He raised money to pay them by buying a cargo of pepper *on credit*, and selling it at once for *cash*. But his soldiers on the march showed their sympathy with the Scots by breaking into the churches and moving the communion tables into the middle of the building. They allowed themselves to be defeated at Newburn (p. 6), and the Scots passed on and captured Newcastle. The king made a truce with the Covenanters, and was forced to summon a Parliament for the fifth time, the most famous Parliament that ever made laws for England. /

**The Long Parliament** continued in session for thirteen years. The former Parliaments of Charles had been content to lay before him a list of grievances, but now, as Pym, its chief leader, expressed it, "they must pull up the causes of grievances by the roots."

They pulled up the chief "root" by accusing the Earl of Strafford (Wentworth) of high treason, because he had planned to bring an Irish army to overawe Parliament. As it was impossible to prove that he had conspired to the death or dethronement of the king or his heirs, the legal definition of high treason, he was executed under an act of attainder; that is, an act of Parliament which condemned him to death without a trial. Charles had promised Strafford that he would not allow him to suffer "in life, honor, or fortune," but he was so overawed by the hatred of the people that he assented to the act against his friend and faithful servant. "Put not your trust in princes," said the earl when told that he must die. But Strafford was a brave man, and as he went upon the scaffold he said, "I thank God that I am not afraid

of death, but do as cheerfully put off my doublet at this time as ever I did when I went to bed."

Archbishop Laud was also impeached and put in prison, but was not tried and executed until four years afterwards.

The general hatred of the king, and the danger that the Scottish army might march against him, forced the king to give assent to some laws which made Parliament stronger than ever. They required that a Parliament must meet at least once in three years, whether the king called it or not; provided that the present Parliament could not be dissolved by the king without its consent; abolished the Star Chamber and High Commission courts; declared ship money illegal; and limited the king's claims on forests.

**Bishops and Presbyters.** So far the Parliament had acted harmoniously. But when they took up matters of religion, they divided into parties. There were many who wished to keep the existing system of church government by bishops, and the use of the prayer book in all the churches. The Puritans who were opposed to these were themselves divided into Presbyterians and Independents, or Separatists (pp. 194-5). Many people feared a "new presbyter" quite as much as they were afraid of an "old priest." A bill to abolish the office of bishop caused fierce discussion but did not pass. Before long, however, the bishops were excluded from their seats in the House of Lords.

**The King's Plans.** Charles had, unwillingly, consented to all the measures of Parliament, but secretly he was trying to get help in Scotland and England to put them down. In order to make friends with the Scotch, he went to Edinburgh in 1641, agreed to all the demands of the Scotch Parliament, and secretly tried to get them to send him an army.

The Catholic lords in Ireland had as little liking for the Puritan Parliament as they had for the Puritan colonists that had settled among them. Impatient at the schemes for per-

secuting the Catholics, the native Irish fell upon the English settlers in Ulster, and massacred thousands. The king was responsible for this insurrection; for while he did not order it, he had been intriguing for the raising of an army of Irish soldiers. It was recognized that an army should be sent to Ireland to put down the rebellion; but as the Parliament did not dare entrust the command to the king, for fear he would use it against them, none was sent.

**The Grand Remonstrance.** The promises that the king made in both England and Scotland, to reign according to the laws, deceived many who did not understand his treacherous nature. When he returned to London, he was given a splendid reception, and the people gave signs of returning loyalty. But Pym and other Parliamentary leaders were not deceived. In order to keep the king's evil conduct fresh before the people, they had drawn up the "Grand Remonstrance." This was a review of his whole reign, describing all the tyrannical acts of which he had been guilty. Many members, who thought that the king had given up his high notions of "divine right," were very unwilling that the document should be printed. There was a fierce strife when the question was voted upon, and members nearly came to blows. But the Remonstrance passed, was presented to the king, and was published to the country.

**Attempt to Arrest the Five Members.** The king had been gathering followers about him at Whitehall—adventurers, discharged officers, and others—until he had a force of several hundred. These frequently came into conflict with the London crowd, which was Puritan in sym-



A CATHOLIC  
LORD.

pathy. Some of the Puritans cut their hair short, and this gave rise to the name "roundheads." The followers of Charles were called "cavaliers." The Parliament were afraid that these disturbances would become dangerous to them, and demanded a guard of the king. It was refused, but Charles gave his *word*, "on the honor of a king, for the security of every one of them from violence."

Just at this point, the king might have recovered his power. There was a party in Parliament that favored him.



CHARLES DEMANDS THE FIVE MEMBERS.

while his opponents were divided into religious factions; his agreement to the demands of the Scotch Parliament had made him friends; and his assent to the measures of the Commons had won him support in London. He now took a step which showed the treachery he had planned, and which destroyed his influence. The queen urged him to seize five members of Parliament who had been leaders in passing the

Remonstrance. Her only idea of a king was that he should be absolute, as the King of France was. She advised him to go and pull "those rogues out by the ears."

The king went to the House with several hundred armed men. He left them at the door, advanced to the speaker's desk, and inquired for Pym, Hampden, and three other members, whom he had accused of treasonable correspondence with the Scotch Covenanters. The speaker replied: "Sir, I have neither eyes to see, nor ears to hear, except as the House shall direct me." The five members, warned of their danger, had been safely concealed in the city, and the king was forced to retire without them. He had forcibly and unlawfully invaded the rights of the House and had failed. The citizens were roused; an armed force was raised, and the five members were escorted back to Westminster.

**King and Parliament Prepare for War.** Soon after this, the king left the city with a considerable force, and tried to seize the arms stored at Hull. But the commandant was faithful to the Parliament, and refused to admit him. The queen, taking the crown jewels, hurried to the continent to raise money and troops. On August 22, 1642, Charles unfurled his flag at Nottingham and prepared for war. The Parliament called out the militia, appointed the Earl of Essex general, and the army moved northward to meet the king.

**Civil War.** The whole country entered vigorously into the war; for political, religious, and business interests were bound up in it. The merchants, small farmers, and those of the nobility who were Puritans, were on the side of the Parliament; while the large landholders, the clergy, and the greater part of the nobility sided with the king. In general it was the northern and western counties that favored the royalist party. The commanders of the king's army were the Earl of Lindsay and Prince Rupert, the nephew of Charles,

a dashing cavalry leader, but lacking in judgment. The royal army marched southward from Nottingham and met the enemy at Edgehill. Here Rupert defeated the parliamentary cavalry, but their infantry held the ground. The parliamentary forces, however, retreated toward London, and victory lay with the king. It was his hope to cut off London from

the sea and by a bold move to capture that city and end the war at a blow. He waited till the opportunity passed, for the militia rallied to the defense of the city, reënforcements came in, and the king was forced to retire to Oxford, which became his headquarters for the rest of the war.

The fighting went on all over England. During the first year of the war the king



ENGLAND IN THE CIVIL WAR.

was victorious nearly everywhere. In one skirmish the great leader Hampden fell. But a few garrisons of the parliamentary army held strongholds which the royal forces could not take; and the king was therefore unable to gather all his troops for an attack on London.

In the second year of the war a "Solemn League and



Covenant" was entered into by the Scotch and the English Parliament, by which the latter bound themselves to reform the Church of England according to the Presbyterian system and the Word of God. In the beginning of 1644, a Scotch army crossed the border to fight on the side of the Parliament. About the same time, an army from Ireland entered Wales to fight for the king; but it was crushed at Nantwich by the parliamentary general Fairfax. Among the prisoners was George Monk, who, after two years' imprisonment in the Tower, entered the parliamentary army and in time rose to high command.

**Oliver Cromwell.** So far only one leader had never met defeat. Oliver Cromwell had united the eastern counties



CROMWELL.

into an association, with the object of keeping the war beyond their borders. He had defeated a royalist army, and had enabled Fairfax to hold his ground in Yorkshire. Cromwell had said to Hampden after the battle of Edgehill, "We can never win with such men as you have; old tapsters and servants, low-born and mean-spirited fellows, can never win against gentlemen, who have honor, courage, and resolution." He then went among the Puritans in the eastern counties and enlisted men after his own heart, stern, God-fearing, determined men, who prayed before they fought, and fought for the love of the cause, believing that God would give them victory. In a few months he had trained and equipped a cavalry regiment which had no equal on either side.

Prince Rupert with 20,000 men met the Scotch and Cromwell's new troops at Marston Moor. The stern, religious



Puritan met the gentleman of honor. Cromwell's charge on Rupert's cavalry crumbled them to pieces and scattered them, as he said, "like a little dust." But he did not pursue. Wheeling about, he promptly charged the royalist infantry with the same result. The north of England was conquered. Elsewhere Charles was winning victories.

**The New Model.** Cromwell, as a member of Parliament, now attacked the weak spot in the parliamentary army. The officers were nearly all of the Presbyterian party. They feared the growing strength of the Independents, to which party Cromwell belonged. This party wished to do away with the kingship and the House of Lords and make the churches *independent* of the government. While the Presbyterians wished to defeat the king, they did not wish to beat him too badly, for fear that the Independents would become masters. A "Self-denying Ordinance" was introduced, providing that members of Parliament should resign their offices in the army; and soon Parliament reorganized its troops as the New Model Army, largely with new officers. Fairfax was made general and Cromwell lieutenant general.

**Battle of Naseby, June 14, 1645.** The New Model Army, after a year of training, met the king at Naseby. Rupert commanded the right wing of the royalists, Cromwell the right wing of the parliamentarians. Both were victorious, but Cromwell, returning from the charge, attacked Rupert's horse in flank and routed them.

The king was hopelessly defeated. The small armies that remained to him in different parts of the country were soon scattered, and the war was over.

**Negotiations with the King.** And now came a time of tedious attempts to make peace. The king might still have made an honorable arrangement with the Parliament and saved his life and his throne, but he continued plotting, hoping that the rival parties in Parliament would destroy each

other, or that the Scots would come to his assistance. The king had surrendered to the Scottish army, who turned him over to the English Parliament. The army then took charge of him, and offered to make peace with him and to allow the Church of England to be set up again, if he would agree that no one should be compelled to attend, and that Protestants should have full religious liberty. He refused these terms and escaped to the Isle of Wight, where he met commissioners from Scotland and made an agreement with them by which they were to renew the war.

But the Scotch army was badly defeated by Cromwell at Preston. Charles was again captured and confined safely in Hurst Castle, where no help could reach him.

**Pride's Purge.** The Presbyterian party in the Parliament still wanted to make terms with the king. But the army, now entirely under the control of the Independents, had lost all patience with him, and determined to have a Parliament that would obey its will. One day Colonel Pride appeared with a body of troopers sent by the Independents, and expelled more than a hundred of the members who favored the king. The remaining sixty were called by their enemies the "Rump."

**Trial and Execution of the King.** The "Rump" appointed a special High Court to try Charles for his past misdeeds. He refused to plead, on the ground that they had no power to try him. But they accused and convicted him of high treason against the nation. The conclusion of the death-warrant read, "For all of which treasons and crimes this court doth adjudge that he, the said Charles Stuart, as a tyrant, traitor, murderer, and public enemy to the good people of this nation, shall be put to death by severing his head from his body." His execution took place in front of his own palace of Whitehall, on the 30th of January, 1649. He behaved with great dignity and calmness, and said that he



CHARLES'S FAREWELL TO HIS FAMILY.

died an enemy to arbitrary rule, and a martyr to the people. But the executioner, as he held up the head before the multitude, cried out, "This is the head of a traitor!"

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. In what ways did Charles infringe upon the rights of Parliament?
2. What was the significance of the Petition of Right? Name its chief provisions.
3. Explain the working and effect of the king's monopolies.
4. What actions of Charles brought on the war? How could he have saved his crown?
5. Which two battles of the war were most important? Why?
6. What questions were settled by the Civil War?
7. Why did the people object to paying ship money?
8. Name the chief laws of the Long Parliament and tell why each was made.
9. Was it just to execute Strafford and Laud? The king? Give reasons. How could the king's execution have been avoided?

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

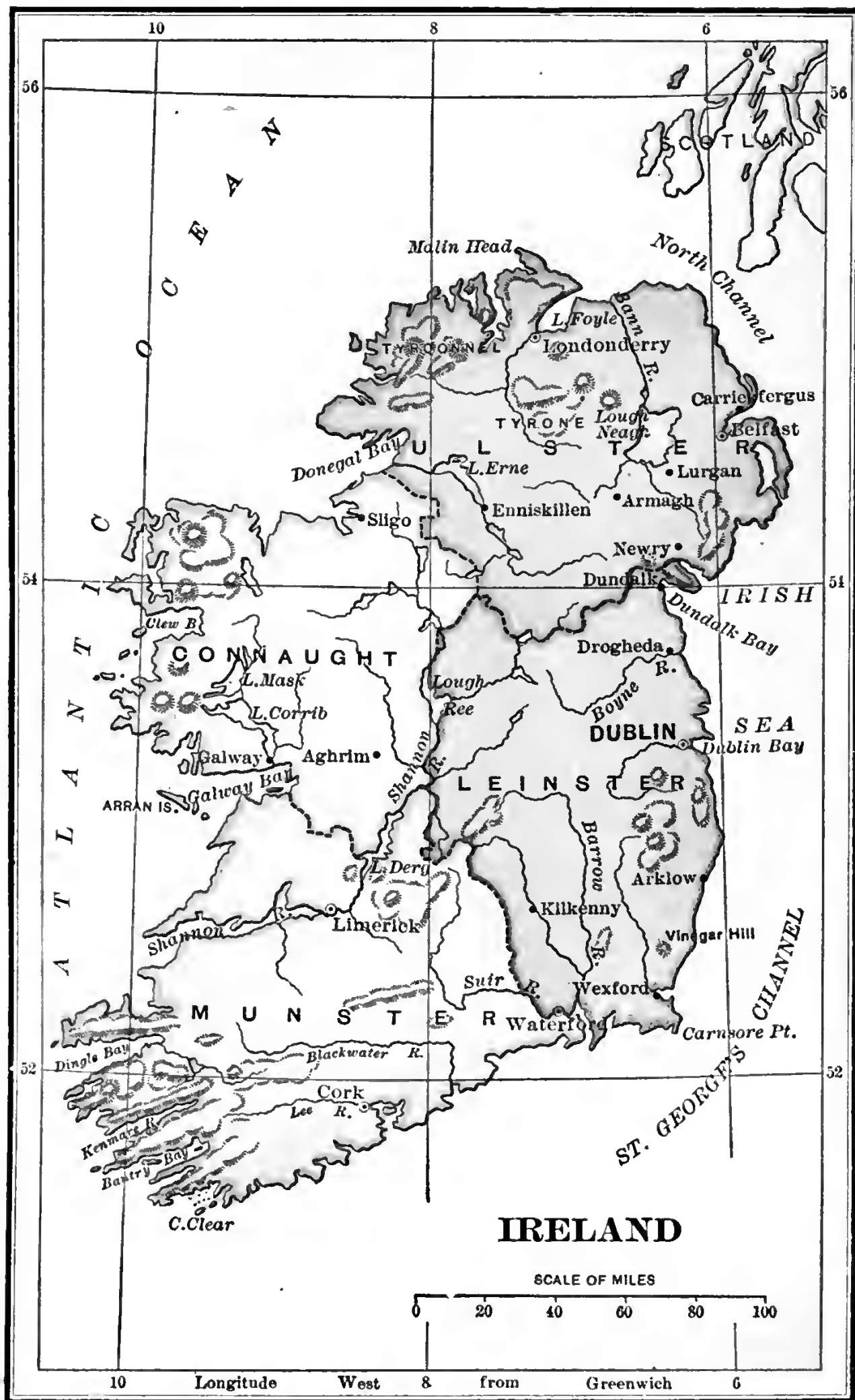
1. JOHN HAMPDEN. Mowry, *First Steps in the History of England*, Ch. XIV.; Green, *Short History*, pp. 500, 550.
2. THE EARL OF STRAFFORD. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 232-237; Traill, *Lord Strafford*.
3. TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF CHARLES I. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, VII., pp. 110-128; Lee, *Source Book*, pp. 364-372.
4. CROMWELL'S "IRONSIDES." Mowry, *First Steps in the History of England*, Ch. XX.; Firth, *Cromwell*, Ch. VI.

## C. CROMWELL AND THE COMMONWEALTH.

The Establishment of the Commonwealth followed the death of the king. There remained in the House of Commons about sixty members, who declared that England was a commonwealth, without any king or House of Lords. In this action the Rump, which now called itself the Parliament, was supported by the army, but not by the majority of the people. So instead of calling for the election of a new House it kept the power in its own hands. Forty-one men were selected by the House as a Council of State, who were to have charge of the executive part of the government. John Bradshaw was chosen president of the Council.

**War in Ireland.** On the death of the king, Ireland and Scotland had acknowledged his eldest son as King Charles II. Prince Rupert was on the Irish coast with a fleet. The new king had already been crowned in Scotland, and Scotch and Irish armies would soon be on the way to London to crush the new republic. Cromwell, as the ablest soldier, was put in command of the army. After subduing a mutiny among the soldiers, he led them into Ireland. This country had been in a fearful condition of disorder for eight years. After the king's execution the Irish united strongly for Charles II. Only Dublin and Londonderry held out (p. 232).

Landing at Dublin, Cromwell marched northward and besieged Drogheda with its garrison of 2,000 men. Their



commander was asked to surrender in a note ending in these words: "If, upon refusing this offer, that which you like not befalls you, you will know whom to blame." The officer would not surrender, and Cromwell stormed the fort and put the entire garrison to the sword. In defense of his severity he wrote, "I believe this bitterness will save much effusion of blood, through the goodness of God." Wexford, in the south, was treated in a similar manner. After that the other posts surrendered. Plague and famine followed in the wake of the sword, the supporters of the Stuarts fled to the continent, and the peace of despair settled on the country.

**War with the Scots.** Charles II., having signed the Covenant agreeing to establish the Presbyterian Church, was supported by the Scots with a strong army. Cromwell met them (1650) with 16,000 men. The Scots cut off his retreat and posted themselves on a hill near the sea, where it was difficult to attack them. Cromwell waited till they began a change of position, and then succeeded in utterly routing them in the battle of Dunbar. A year later the Scots invaded England but were again defeated at Worcester. Charles rode away alone, and after many narrow escapes from capture, reached France. Long after, a tree, called the "royal oak," was pointed out where the prince had concealed himself among the branches while his pursuers searched the woods for him in vain. Cromwell called this battle his "crowning mercy." He never had occasion to draw his sword again.

**The Dutch War.** Cromwell and the army were now supreme. But they had fought for the liberty and honor of England, and not for themselves alone. During the war, the Dutch had devoted themselves steadily to trade, and their merchant vessels were larger and swifter than those of England. Goods that were once brought to England by her own merchantmen were now carried by the Dutch. Cromwell determined to stop this, and to make England supreme again.



A Navigation Act was passed, which ordered that all goods landed in the ports of England must be brought in English ships, or in the ships of the country from which the goods came. He demanded that all ships sailing the Channel should salute the English flag. As the Dutch refused to acknowledge his extravagant claim, war began.

**Robert Blake**, who had fought successfully in the last war, was made "general of the sea." He destroyed the fleet of Prince Rupert, and fought four noted engagements with the Dutch. The first two were victories. In 1652, with forty ships, he met Van Tromp with eighty. The Dutchman was victorious and sailed through the Channel with a great Dutch broom at the masthead, signifying by this that he had swept the English from the seas. But Blake was ready again in a few months, and they met off Calais, this time with equal forces, and Van Tromp was defeated.

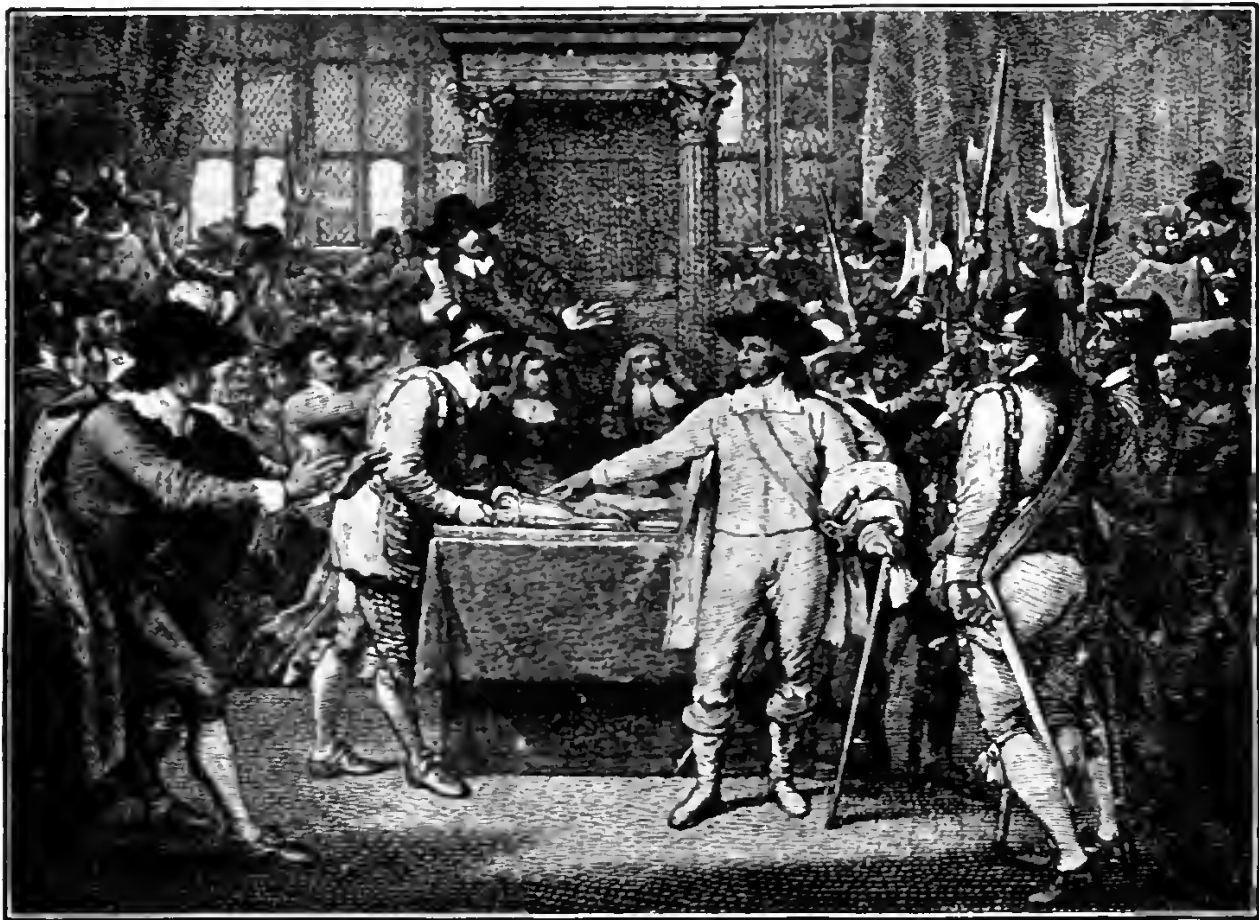
Blake next took an English fleet into the Mediterranean (1654), to chastise the pirates who had long preyed on merchant vessels. Tunis was attacked, a Turkish fleet of nine ships destroyed, and an army of 3,000 slain and captured. Algiers and Tripoli were taken, and many Englishmen who had been made slaves were set free. The following year, he defeated the Spanish, closing the war with the most daring exploit in his history. He sailed into the harbor of Santa Cruz, in the Canaries, which was strongly defended by forts and ships of war, and destroyed and rifled a Spanish treasure fleet returning from South America, escaping with a loss of only one ship. He died on his return to England, and Cromwell buried him with the highest honors in Westminster Abbey.

The deeds of Blake secured for the new republic the respect of foreign nations, that had before refused to recognize it. Cromwell was honored, and his friendship sought, by the greatest kings of Europe. As the price of his aid to France



against Spanish Flanders, Dunkirk (map, p. 274) was added to the English possessions.

**Cromwell and the Parliament.** In the mean time the Rump had come to be very much disliked. In the first place, it did not represent the people, as it was only a fraction of a Parliament elected thirteen years before. Then it had become corrupt and selfish. Cromwell was anxious to have a new Parliament chosen that should represent the nation more



CROMWELL DISSOLVES THE RUMP.

fully. And yet he did not dare give the people full freedom of election, for fear that the Puritans and all their work would be overturned, and Charles II. invited to take his throne.

At last the Rump agreed upon a law providing for a new Parliament, but also providing that they should retain their seats as members of it. Cromwell was angry at this, for he believed it to be selfish and dishonest. He could prevent the passing of the bill only by breaking up the Parliament. So

he took a company of soldiers to the House at the next meeting, and, after listening a while, he stepped out on the floor and began to scold various members for their bad personal habits and worse public actions. Being interrupted, he cried out angrily, "Come, we have had enough of this, you must get out and make way for honest men. You are not fit to sit here any longer." He called his soldiers and cleared the room. He then locked the door and put the key in his pocket. The country was glad to be rid of the Rump. As Cromwell expressed it, "Not even a dog barked at their going."

**Barebone's Parliament.** Cromwell and his officers now selected a Parliament themselves. Only men who were known to be religious and honorable were allowed to sit in it. Cromwell told them the country ought to be ruled by godly men, and that he had chosen them because they were known to be such. As it consisted of only one hundred and fifty men, it was called the Little Parliament; but the royalists nicknamed it Barebone's Parliament from the curious name of a London leather merchant, Praise-God Barebone, who was a member.

The members of this Parliament proved to be very poor statesmen. They wanted to abolish church rates, without providing any other means of supporting the clergy; and they announced that the reign of the Saints had come, they being the Saints. Some of the more sensible among them got up early one morning (Dec. 11, 1653) and stole a march on the other "Saints" by passing a measure putting all power into the hands of Cromwell and a council of twenty-one men. They then adjourned.

**Cromwell Lord Protector.** An "Instrument of Government" was now drawn up by Cromwell's friends, telling how he was to govern. Parliament was to make the laws allowed by the Instrument, and a Council of State was to assist the Lord Protector, who could not act without its approval. The

object of the Instrument was to prevent either the Parliament or the Protector from getting too much power. Of course Cromwell was the first Protector.

**Cromwell's Second Parliament** was elected in 1654. No royalists or Catholics were allowed to vote. This Parliament began by trying to break down the form of government which had been established, although they were pledged not to alter it. The explanation is that the whole country was tired of the strict Puritan rule, tired of the rule of the army headed by Cromwell, and was ready to sweep it all away at the first chance. Cromwell dismissed this Parliament after a few months, and got along without another for two years.

To prevent a revolt of the royalists and to enforce the payment of taxes which the Instrument had allowed him to raise, he divided the country into ten military districts, and placed over each a major general, who was to keep order and enforce the law; but as soon as the country became quiet, he withdrew them, and allowed things to go on in the usual way. He would not tolerate revolt or disorder, and those who stirred up rebellion against him soon found their way to the scaffold.

**Cromwell's Third Parliament** met in 1656, just after one of Blake's Spanish victories. When a train of thirty-eight wagons, loaded with silver, passed through the streets of London, the people applauded him as they never had before. The Parliament voted him money, and offered to make him king, a title which he would not accept. An Upper House of Parliament was again established, and an effort was made to get back as nearly as possible to the old form of government. The Parliament embodied these changes in a law called "The Humble Petition and Advice." Things went well for a time, and then the two Houses began to quarrel. Some conspired with the royalists, others took measures to have Cromwell's office abolished. An invasion was threatened from Ireland,

another one from Spain, and the two Houses could agree on nothing. Finally, in February, 1658, he appeared before the Parliament and said, "I do dissolve this Parliament, and may God judge between you and me!" "If it had continued a few days longer," he wrote afterwards, "all had been blood on Charles Stuart's account."

Cromwell had tried to make a settled government and had failed. He had been tolerant of all the Protestant sects, except when they wanted to disturb the government. He was a friend to the Quakers, sent missionaries to the Indians, and allowed the Jews to return to England, after an exclusion of three and a half centuries.



A PURITAN  
GENTLEMAN.

But the people could no longer endure the severity of the Puritan, who prohibited every form of amusement, even to dancing around the May pole and "eating pie at Christmas." The old sports of Elizabeth's time were all *unholy* to the Puritan. His spare time was given to preaching, singing psalms, and talking in sorrowful tones about religion.

**Death of Cromwell.** Cromwell died September 3, 1658. He was worn out and saddened by his toil for England, and by its result. The day of his death was the anniversary of his victories of Dunbar and Worcester. His last prayer was for the people of England. "Lord, pardon thy foolish people, forgive them their sins, and do not forsake them; love and bless them and give them rest!"

**Richard Cromwell** was made Lord Protector partly because it was thought that Oliver had desired his son to succeed him; but this is doubtful. Richard cared little for public affairs, and offended the Puritans by his disregard for religion. He once appointed a certain royalist to a command in the army, to whom the objection was made that he was not a godly

man. Richard asked whether he was expected to have none but godly people about him. "Why, here is Dick Ingoldsby," he said, "who can neither preach nor pray, and I would trust him before any of you." The army would not countenance a man like that, and soon recalled the old Rump Parliament to Westminster. The Rump and the army divided the power between them, and Richard retired to private life. The Rump passed a resolution to conduct the government without any "single person, king, protector, or House of Peers."

**General Monk**, who had command of the army in Scotland, had been a quiet observer of these unending strifes. He decided to act for the country, and marched with his part of the army to London. He began by calling the entire Long Parliament together, including the Presbyterians expelled by Pride (p. 229). By his advice the Parliament then formally dissolved itself after ordering a new election.

Charles was already in communication with Monk and now made a written promise, called the "Declaration at Breda," to pardon all offenders, save those who might be excepted by Parliament, and to sign the bills that Parliament should pass for giving liberty of religion and paying the army. The army threatened to make trouble. So great was the danger that General Monk raised a force of militia to oppose it. But the new Parliament promptly accepted Charles's offer and voted that the government should be as in former days, by King, Lords, and Commons.

**Charles Landed at Dover May 25, 1660.** Amidst the cheering crowds he entered London, and passed through the army to Whitehall. The people made his reception eloquent with peals of bells, waving of flags, and blazing of bonfires. "It must have been my own fault," said he, "that I did not come before, for I find no one but declares he is glad to see me."

**Emigration to America** was greatly increased by the troubles in England during the thirty years preceding 1660.

Archbishop Laud's policy in church affairs hurried thousands of Puritan emigrants to America, forming a Puritan "exodus" that continued till 1640. John Winthrop, a wealthy gentleman of Suffolk, was one of the Massachusetts Bay Company that secured a charter for governing a colony in New England. He sold his estates, and led the great Puritan migration of 1630. He became the first governor of Massachusetts and continued to be reëlected (except three years) until his death (1649). Not only did the Massachusetts colony become for the time the largest in America (26,000 in 1640), but it furnished many of the settlers who founded the other New England colonies,—Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hampshire.

Persecution under Cromwell's rule was quite as vigorous as under the rule of the Stuarts; but this persecution was chiefly against the royalists, or cavaliers. As a result of this persecution the ancestors of the "first families of Virginia" emigrated. Between 1650 and 1670 the population of Virginia increased from 15,000 to 40,000.

The Catholics were persecuted alike by all parties, and some of them also found a refuge in America. George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, obtained from Charles I. the grant of some land north of the Potomac River. His son Cecil planted the first Catholic colony in Maryland in 1634 (map, p. 303).

Thus we see how largely American colonization was due to religious persecution in England. It took most of the colonists a long time to learn from their own persecution to give freedom to others. But they finally learned that lesson, and we may say that our free churches to-day grew out of the religious persecution in England.

Besides the colonies on the North American mainland, Barbados and several other islands of the West Indies re-



ceived many English settlers during this period of civil strife. They became important through the production of sugar. Barbados was unclaimed before England took possession in the reign of James I. Jamaica was taken from Spain by one of Cromwell's fleets.

**English Progress in the Indies**, which had begun in the time of Elizabeth, was cut short by the rise of the Dutch East India Company during the civil war. The English East India Company was a monopoly in the hands of a few, while that of Holland represented the whole nation, since any merchant could join it. The result was that nearly all the East India trade was secured by the Dutch merchants, whose superior navy captured or drove out the English merchants. The monopoly, which fettered the progress of England in the Indies, was not done away with till 1833.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What changes did Cromwell make in the government of England?
2. Compare his foreign policy with that of James I.
3. How did his rule affect American colonization?
4. How did Cromwell's government fail? Why?
5. What led to the Restoration?
6. What led to Cromwell's Dutch wars?
7. When was the Long Parliament finally dissolved? What were its most important acts?
8. How long did the Protectorate last? In what did it succeed; in what fail? Why?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. MONTROSE. Rolfe, *Tales from Scottish History*, pp. 121-129.
2. ROBERT BLAKE. Edgar, *Sea Kings*, pp. 200-26; Firth, *Cromwell*, pp. 308-315.
3. CROMWELL IN IRELAND. Lawless, *Story of Ireland*, Chaps. XXIX., XL.
4. NAVAL WAR WITH THE DUTCH. F. M. Peard, *Scapegrace Dick*.
5. THE BATTLES OF DUNBAR AND WORCESTER. Firth, *Cromwell*, Ch. XIV.



## IX. THE STUART KINGS AND ORANGE.

### A. THE RESTORATION.

#### Charles II., 1660-1685.

**The Restoration** is the name usually given to that period when the third Stuart king began to reign; although Charles II. claimed that he had been reigning for eleven years, but had been kept out of his kingdom by that "base mechanic fellow," Cromwell. But the Restoration meant more than the coming back of the king. It meant the coming back of the Parliament, for we must remember that the people had not been fairly represented in Cromwell's time. It meant also the coming back of the old church, with its bishops and prayer book, and the coming back of the old amusements and social life. The theaters were again opened, the village holidays were again celebrated with the old bear baiting, horse racing, cockfighting, dancing, and buffoonery.

It was more than a restoration of the old customs. The English people, so long deprived of innocent amusements by the strict Puritan rule, now went to the other extreme. Lying, cheating, gambling, and fighting were the least of their vices. These things were part of the life of a gentleman of that day, and it was thought no disgrace to brawl and fight in the street or to become hopelessly drunk and spend the night in the gutter.

"**The King shall Enjoy his Own Again,**" was the refrain of an old royalist song; and if ever king tried to make such a prediction good, Charles was that king. He had no

sense of duty to his people, and spent enormous sums of the government money on his pleasures. He had not enjoyed life very much during his twelve years of exile, and now with his courtiers indulged in all kinds of excess, vice, and depravity.

"Shaftesbury," said he one day to a favorite courtier, "I believe you are the wickedest dog in my dominions."

"Yes, your Majesty," replied the courtier, "I think that among your *subjects*, I probably am."



GAY COURT LIFE OF CHARLES II.

The king was discreet, however, in spite of his wickedness. He was determined, as he said, not "to set out on his travels again." He did not repeat the errors of his father. When he saw that the people were bound to have a certain measure, he gave way and let them have it. The king soon married a Portuguese princess, Catherine of Braganza, a marriage which brought with it Bombay, the first English possession in India. Though he outwardly conformed to the English Church, he was at heart a Catholic, and would have been glad to secure from Parliament fair treatment for English Catholics if it had been possible.

The Parliament of 1660 was known as the Convention Parliament to distinguish it from those regularly summoned

by the king. It restored the lands that had been taken from the royalists and the church; and it granted pardon for past political acts to all except the judges and executioners who had put Charles I. to death. Thirteen of these "regicides" were executed, and nineteen imprisoned for life. Nineteen others fled to foreign countries. The dead bodies of Cromwell and other regicides were taken from their graves and hanged. Even the body of the heroic Blake was taken from its tomb in the Abbey. The king held that all who had fought with Cromwell were guilty of high treason and deserved death, and he urged the Parliament to mean and disgusting acts of vengeance.

**The New Parliament** which met in 1661 was almost entirely composed of friends of the king, and hence was called the Cavalier Parliament. They set to work at once to restore the Anglican Church, and to drive out the Puritans and other dissenters. All ministers who would not use the prayer book were turned out of their livings. By a later act religious meetings of dissenters were prohibited. Any gathering of dissenters for religious worship was called a "conventicle," and the royalists held that conventicles encouraged rebellion. By other laws dissenters were disqualified from holding office in a corporation, that is, a village or city; and non-conformist ministers were forbidden to come within five miles of any corporation where they had preached since 1660.

**John Bunyan** of Bedfordshire was one of the dissenting preachers imprisoned under these laws. He was a poor laborer, a tinker by trade. He had been very wicked in his youth, but was converted to the Puritan faith and became a traveling preacher. For "devilishly and perniciously" keeping away from the established church, he was put in Bedford jail, where he remained twelve years. While there he wrote several books, the most wonderful of which is "The

Pilgrim's Progress," a tale of a "pilgrimage from this world to the next."

**John Milton**, who had been Cromwell's Latin secretary, now grown old and blind, wrote "Paradise Lost," the most wonderful poem in all English literature. He is called the "Poet of Puritanism," because his poems express all that was best in the Puritan government and religion. His arrest was ordered by the Cavalier Parliament, but he was finally pardoned and allowed to complete his great work.

**Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon**, was the chief adviser of the king. He had been the minister of Charles I., had lived in exile with the prince, and returned to England with him at the Restoration. Both Charles and Hyde were friends of the great French king Louis XIV., who paid them well for their friendship. Louis was desirous of obtaining freedom for the English Catholics, and of keeping peace with England, so that it would not interfere with his plans on the continent. He was ambitious to conquer the Netherlands and add them to France, and hoped in time to get control of Spain also through the claims of his wife, who was a Spanish princess.

**Dunkirk** was sold to Louis by Charles II. and Clarendon. This town stood on the northern border of France, and was the last English possession on the continent. The nation looked upon it with pride as the fruit of the last war with Spain (p. 235), and its sale was regarded as an act of infamy and disgrace.

About this time Charles declared in favor of giving freedom of worship to those non-conformists who did not interfere with the peace of the state. But Parliament saw in this an attempt to give freedom to Catholics, and refused to support the king in it.

**Another War with the Dutch** broke out in 1664, caused by the reënactment of the Navigation Law, and by the

rivalry of the two nations in the Indian trade. The war went on in India, along the coast of Africa, and in America, where an English fleet seized the Dutch colony of New Netherland, thereupon renamed New York in honor of the Duke of York, the king's brother. A series of bloody battles took place off the eastern coast of England in which the Dutch were finally victorious.

The enormous amount of £2,500,000 had been voted Charles to carry on the war. But this money, which should have been spent in keeping the navy in repair and in supplying men and guns, was squandered by the king on his friends and favorites. The result was that in the third year of the war the Dutch sailed up the Thames and blockaded London for several days, and the English could not muster ships enough to drive them out. Peace was made in 1667, by which England had to give up her claims to the Spice Islands in the East Indies, but she was allowed to retain the colony of New York.

**The Great Plague** broke out in London during the Dutch war. The streets of those days were narrow and dirty, and without pavements or sewers. The houses were built with the upper stories projecting over the lower ones, thus shutting out the sunlight and air. The disease, once started, spread with frightful rapidity, and 100,000 people died within six months in the city of London alone.

Every house where the disease appeared was at once marked with a red cross and the words, "Lord, have mercy on us," written below. The dead were brought out and flung into carts that were sent through the streets every night, and they were buried without coffins, a hundred or more in one common grave. As many people left the city as were able, and grass grew in the deserted streets.

**The Great Fire** (1666). As cold weather came on, the plague slowly died out. But people had scarcely become set-

tled again in their homes and occupations, when a great fire occurred, which burned out the whole heart of the city, leaving only a mere fringe of houses on the outskirts. Nearly all the public buildings, including St. Paul's Cathedral and eighty-nine churches, were burned. The Tower and Westminster Abbey were saved through the efforts of the king by blowing up the neighboring streets with gunpowder.

For many years a monument built on the spot where the fire began, bore an inscription which accused the Catholics of setting fire to the city. This unjust charge was afterwards erased. The poet Alexander Pope wrote of it the following:

“Where London's column pointing to the skies,  
Like a tall bully, lifts its head and lies.”

In spite of the great loss of property, the fire was a good thing for London. A new city was laid out by the great architect Sir Christopher Wren, with straight, wide streets, thus preventing a return of the old disease and filth. He also built the new cathedral of St. Paul's with its wonderful dome, after which the dome of the Capitol at Washington was modeled. He was buried in the cathedral, and the inscription on the tomb reads, “If you seek his monument, reader, look around you.”

“**The Cabal**” was the name given to the king's chief ad-



THE NEW ST. PAUL'S CATHEDRAL.

visers after the Earl of Clarendon was driven into exile because of his French preferences and his failure in the Dutch war. The word meant a body of secret advisers, and besides it happened that the five letters of the word were the initial letters of the names of the men: Clifford, Ashley, Buckingham, Arlington, and Lauderdale.

A change of policy toward France now began. England made an alliance with Holland and Sweden, to resist the attack of Louis on the Netherlands. But while Charles openly professed himself on the side of the Dutch, he did so only to secure more money from the French king. At the same time, because he showed himself firm against Louis and compelled him to make peace with the Netherlands, his Parliament made him a large grant of money.

**Secret Treaty of Dover.** The king now made a secret treaty with Louis, at Dover, by which he agreed to join him in another war on the Dutch, with an army of 6,000 men, and to acknowledge himself a Catholic when he saw fit to do so. In case his English subjects should rise against him, Louis was to assist him in putting them down with an army of 6,000 men, thirty ships, and a large sum of money. Charles was to receive also during the proposed war an annual pension of £230,000, for which he agreed to give his Catholic subjects liberty of worship.

**The New Dutch War** was begun in 1672. But the Dutch successfully defended themselves against the English attacks at sea, and when Louis invaded the Netherlands the people cut the dikes and let the ocean flood the country till the French had to retreat.

**The Declaration of Indulgence** (1672) was made by Charles in order to keep his agreement with Louis. This was a proclamation by the king suspending all laws interfering with any peaceable form of worship. But the Parliament began now to understand the treacherous nature of the king,



and declared that the Declaration broke forty laws, and that the laws could not be suspended except by an act of Parliament. When Charles saw that further resistance would mean "to resume his travels" he yielded.

**The Test Act** was now passed by Parliament, requiring every man appointed to any office in the army, navy, or in the government, to be a communicant of the Church of England, and to say that he did not believe that the bread and wine of the sacrament of the Eucharist became the actual body and blood of Christ. This was considered proof that he was not a Catholic. This act drove all honest Catholics and some Protestant dissenters out of office; among them the Duke of York ceased to be admiral of the navy, and Clifford, one of the Cabal, ceased to be the king's treasurer.

**Alliance with Holland.** The secret treaty of Dover became generally known about this time, and made people more determined than ever to avoid any agreement with Catholic countries which should threaten the absolute supremacy of the English Church.

An important marriage was now arranged. As no children had been born to the king and queen, Charles's brother, the Catholic Duke of York, would succeed to the throne. But his only children were two daughters, Mary and Anne, both Protestants. Mary was now married to her cousin William III. of Orange, the Stadtholder, or chief magistrate, of Holland. He was the leader of the Protestants of Europe against France. This marriage secured the alliance of Holland and made it probable that a Protestant line would succeed the Duke of York on the English throne.

**The So-called Popish Plot.** A certain Titus Oates, who had been a rascal from his youth, asserted that he knew of a plot to murder the king. He said that after the murder of Charles, James was to be put on the throne, and an army brought over from France to suppress Protestantism by force.

Oates's story seemed to be supported by the fact that the magistrate who examined him was soon afterwards murdered. The tale soon spread, and was magnified a thousand times in the telling. From being merely a plot to kill the king, which would not have caused much regret, it came to include the burning of London, the complete destruction of the English Church, and the massacre of thousands of innocent people. There was really no truth in Oates's story; but every Protestant of note now considered himself marked for slaughter, and went armed.

Oates, seeing his story credited, now began to accuse large numbers of innocent people, especially Catholics. As many as two thousand were imprisoned, and seventeen put to death, before judges and juries came to their senses and began to look closely into the evidence given against the accused, to see whether it was not false.

**A New Parliament**, chosen in the midst of the excitement, was found to contain only thirty members who favored the king. This Parliament, led by Ashley, the Earl of Shaftesbury, passed the Habeas Corpus Act which put an end to keeping people in prison without trial. Any man who was arrested after this might be brought at once before a judge, who would examine into the case and set him free if he were not rightfully held for trial.

A law was now proposed to exclude James, the Duke of York, from the succession to the throne, because it was held that no Catholic king could peacefully rule a Protestant people. The effect of such a law would have been to make James's daughter Mary the next heir to the crown. To prevent the bill from passing, Charles dissolved the Parliament. The next two Parliaments were dissolved for the same reason.

**The Names Whig and Tory** now began to be applied to the two parties, the one favoring and the other opposing the Exclusion Bill. The word "Whig" was a Scotch name given

to the Covenanting rebels in the west of Scotland. The name "Tory" was originally applied to Irish brigands. Therefore when the Duke's friends called Shaftesbury and his followers Whigs, it was like saying that they were on a level with Scotch rebels. And when the Whigs called the Duke's friends Tories it was like saying that they were no better than Irish thieves. These names, first used in contempt, are still sometimes applied to the two great political parties in England.

The extreme Whigs, passing over the rights of James's daughters, Mary and Anne, favored the succession of the Duke of Monmouth, a popular Protestant noble who had no lawful claim to the crown. They had come armed to Parliament, and many people now feared that the Whigs were intending to set up Monmouth by force. But the people disliked civil war more than a Catholic king, and by the end of the year 1681 the country had become as strongly Tory as it had been strongly Whig two years before. Leading Whigs were now accused of treason, and Shaftesbury, to save his life, fled to Holland, where he died.

**The Rye House Plot.** Charles revoked the charters of London and of the other large towns, and issued different ones, giving power to the Tories. The Rye House plot grew out of this attack on the liberties of the people. It was a desperate plan of some of the Whigs to murder the king and the Duke of York at a place known as the Rye House. The plot was discovered, and several of those concerned in it were executed.

The king refused to call any more Parliaments, for fear the Whigs would bring up more measures to exclude his brother from the throne. An association was formed among the Whigs to compel the king in some way to call a Parliament. Just how they intended to do this is not known.

The king, when he heard of it, made it a pretense for arresting some of the leading Whigs and accusing them of

having had a share in the Rye House plot. Algernon Sidney and Lord William Russell were tried and executed, and the Earl of Essex committed suicide in prison. Against Sidney there was no proof of anything, except that he believed that an unworthy king could be deposed by his people. Russell was held to believe that with a Catholic on the throne the people would not be secure, as no doubt he did. He made an eloquent defense, but of no avail. The king insisted on his death, and even the offer of a hundred thousand pounds did not move him.

**Scotland and Ireland**, like England, had accepted Charles in 1660. In Scotland, during his reign, many of the people accepted the Church of England. The strict "Covenanters," as the steadfast Presbyterians were called, were cruelly persecuted. Lauderdale, one of the Cabal, was first sent to bring them into subjection. The Covenanters were routed at Bothwell Bridge by the Duke of Monmouth. The Duke of York was at last sent to govern Scotland. He hanged, shot, imprisoned, and tortured them into either silence or outlawry.

**The Quakers** are first heard of in England in the time of Cromwell. They did not believe in any forms and ceremonies whatever. They were like the Puritans in their desire to do away with the feasts, sports, and shows of the time, and in rejecting the government of the church by the king and bishops. They agreed with the Independents in wishing self-government for each congregation. But they were unlike all other sects in refusing to bear arms, to pay toward the support of any church, or to observe the Sabbath by formal sermons and prayers. They refused to take oaths or to observe any forms of respect to superiors. They would not take off their hats in the presence of the king and of the judges in the courts. They believed in the "inner light," meaning by this that God tells every man, through his conscience, what is right and what he ought to do.

The Puritans persecuted the Quakers severely. When Charles II. became king there were 4,000 of them in the jails. It was common to slit their noses, cut their ears, bore through their tongues with a hot iron, and whip them through the streets at the cart's tail. Their numbers increased rapidly in spite of this treatment, and in 1675 there were more than 60,000 of them in England. Charles was disposed to favor them. He saw that they were quiet, industrious, and loyal people.

**Several New Colonies** were founded in America during this reign.

In 1663 the king gave the vast region of the Carolinas to a company of his friends. The Carolina settlers included Presbyterians harried out of the western counties of Scotland; French Huguenots, or Protestants, driven out by the tyranny of Louis XIV.; Quakers from England; Irish from the West Indies, who had been exiled by Cromwell; and other settlers who had been compelled to leave the older colonies. They resisted the strict rule that the proprietors tried to impose upon them, and in the end the proprietors gave up the struggle.

We have seen (p. 246) that the Dutch possessions in America were seized by the English (1664). This territory was granted by Charles to the Duke of York, and the greater part of it became the colony of New York.

New Jersey was granted by the Duke of York, the same year, to two of his friends, who divided it between them. Before long, however, both parts were bought by William Penn and other Quakers, who "put the power in the hands of the people." Owing to the excellent government and the religious freedom given by the Quakers, the colony filled up rapidly.

Pennsylvania was given to William Penn in 1681, in payment of a debt owed by Charles II. The next year Penn

came over with three shiploads of colonists, and laid out the regular streets of Philadelphia. He also purchased from the Duke of York the "three lower counties on the Delaware," which became afterwards a separate colony.

**Death of Charles II.** The king died of apoplexy in 1685. In his last moments he confessed his sins and received extreme unction as a Catholic. The queen sent to ask his pardon, but Charles replied that it was he who ought to ask hers. He lingered some time and apologized to the watchers about him, saying that he hoped they would excuse him for taking such a long time to die. The people expressed great sorrow at his death, and well they might, for though Charles was by no means a good king, he left the kingdom stronger than it had been since the death of Elizabeth.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Why is this period called the Restoration? Compare it with Cromwell's time. Describe the reaction against Puritanism.
2. How do you account for the severe laws passed by the Cavalier Parliament? Which of them do you think unwise? Why?
3. How do you account for Charles's dealings with the King of France? Why were they bad policy?
4. Which country do you think was right in the Dutch war? Why?
5. What use did the king make of his power in the Declaration of Indulgence? Why was this power dangerous?
6. How did the Covenanters originate? Why were they persecuted by the Stuarts?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. **THE PLAGUE AND THE FIRE.** Church, *Stories from English History*, pp. 483-503; Manning, *Cherry and Violet*.
2. **JOHN BUNYAN.** Green, *Short History* (see index); Bunyan, *The Pilgrim's Progress*; Wright, *Stories of English Literature*, Vol. II., chap. IV.
3. **RETURN OF CHARLES II.** Scott, *Woodstock*.
4. **THE SEIZURE OF NEW AMSTERDAM.** Gardiner, *Student's History of England*, p. 589; Bennett, *Barnaby Lee*.
5. **THE SO-CALLED POPISH PLOT.** Yonge, *Camcos from English History*, VIII., pp. 10-24; Macaulay, *History of England*, I., pp. 217 *et seq.*

**B. THE REVOLUTION OF 1688.****James II., 1685-1688.**

**The Duke of York**, who became James II. on the death of his brother Charles II., had all the belief of his father and grandfather in the divine right of kings. The chief aim of his reign was to secure religious liberty for Catholics, and to rule independently of Parliament. His words and his actions had as little connection as those of Charles I. In his first speech to his council, he declared that he would rule according to the English law and support the English Church; but the first act of his reign was to collect a customs duty not voted by Parliament, thus breaking the fundamental law of the kingdom, and before the crown was placed upon his head he had the service of the Catholic Church celebrated at Whitehall, for the first time in one hundred and twenty-seven years.

**Titus Oates**, who had sworn away the lives of so many innocent men, now received his deserts. He was taken through the streets at the tail of a cart, and flogged with knotted cords till the "blood flowed in rivulets." He was then imprisoned for life, and was made to stand in the pillory five times a year.

**The Persecution of the Covenanters** was kept up with vigor in western Scotland, under the direction of Claverhouse. Those who refused to forsake the Covenant were shot, hanged, or drowned. One girl of eighteen, Margaret Wilson, was fastened to a stake at low water in the Solway Firth, to be drowned by the rising tide. As the water rose to her head, she was taken out and asked if she would give up the Covenant and attend the Episcopal Church. "Never," she replied. "I am Christ's, let me go!" She was put back, and the waves closed over her.

**The Parliament** called in 1685 was strongly Tory, and voted the king the usual revenues for life. But a resolution



passed by it to sustain the Church of England, and to enforce the laws against non-conformists, angered James and seemed to indicate a coming storm.

**The Argyle and Monmouth Rebellion** grew out of the fight between the Whigs and the Tories about the Exclusion Bill. The Earl of Argyle was the leader of the clan of the Campbells, who upheld the Covenant. He was living in exile in Holland when James became king. He now came to



MONMOUTH AND KING JAMES.

Scotland with a small army, hoping that the Scotch would join him in seizing the government. He then intended to join the Duke of Monmouth in England, and dethrone James. But the Scotch did not rise, and Argyle was captured and executed by the royal troops.

In the mean time Monmouth had landed at Lyme Regis on the Dorsetshire coast and was soon joined by five or six thousand of the country people. He boldly claimed the title

of king; but the nobility and gentlemen kept away from him. At Sedgemoor he attacked the royal army and was badly defeated. Many of his men were caught and hanged at once, and he himself was made prisoner. He was taken into the presence of James, and pleaded hard for mercy. But it appears that the king had admitted him only to induce him to disclose the names of others who had promised him assistance. When he found that Monmouth had nothing of importance to tell, he ordered him to execution.

The "Bloody Assizes" of Jeffreys followed immediately upon this rebellion. Jeffreys was one of the king's judges, noted for wickedness and brutality. He had helped Charles II. take away the charters of the cities, and having no principles or religion of his own to support, was a servile creature of the king. He was now sent into the western counties to visit the "assize," or court, towns, and try the persons accused of aiding Monmouth.

The case of Alice Lisle shows the fearful brutality and cruelty of these trials. This lady, seventy years of age, was accused of concealing in her house two fugitives from Monmouth's army. It was not proved that she knew them to be rebels, nor that they *were* rebels. Three times the jury refused to bring in a verdict of guilty, but they were finally bullied by Jeffreys into submission, and Alice Lisle was put to death.

Three hundred and twenty persons were executed, and their mutilated and dismembered bodies were fixed up along the highways and over the doors of town halls and churches, in the different villages where trials were held. Eight hundred and forty-one were sold into slavery under the broiling sun of the English West Indian possessions, there to labor until they died. When Jeffreys returned after his bloody work, James congratulated him on his great success and made him chancellor.

**The King and Parliament** had agreed in putting down rebellion and in punishing the rebels. But James now thought himself strong enough to carry out his plans in regard to the Catholics. As he increased the army, he appointed officers belonging to that faith, and excused them from the requirements of the Test Act. The House of Commons became alarmed. King Louis XIV. of France had just revoked the Edict of Nantes, a law which protected French Protestants, and followed it up with a cruel persecution, which drove thousands into Germany, America, England, and Holland. If James were allowed to disobey the Test Act, it was thought, he might choose Catholics for all the offices, and finally treat Protestants as badly as the French king, whom he regarded as a model. James told the Parliament that he wanted money for a standing army, and would not change his appointments. The House of Commons passed a petition that he obey the Test Act, and to show that they did not approve his conduct, voted only half the money he asked.

**The Dispensing Power** was now claimed by James to support his actions. This was really the power to break the laws whenever he saw fit. When the judges declared that the king had no such power, he turned them out and appointed others, who decided that he did have it. This decision of course made him absolute, for if the king could set aside the laws as he pleased, there was no way to check him but by force of arms.

**The Declaration of Indulgence** was next issued by the king, announcing that all people, Catholics and Protestant dissenters included, were free to worship as they pleased, and to hold office. Before publishing his Declaration, he tried to have the Test Act abolished legally by Parliament. But when he found, by talking with one member after another, that they would not do it, he dissolved Parliament. He thought that the dissenters would be so grateful to him that

they would support him against the established church. But the most of them feared that the Declaration of Indulgence was only a trick to put Catholics in power, and declined to support the king in a measure that gave freedom of worship to themselves.

**The Church of England and the Colleges** were now openly attacked by the king. He created an Ecclesiastical Commission court, suspended clergymen who defended Protestant doctrines, but permitted clergymen who had become Catholics to retain their places. The universities at Oxford and Cambridge were under the control of the Church of England, and only members of that church could be teachers in the colleges there. James insisted on the election of the Bishop of Oxford, who was a Catholic at heart, to the presidency of one of the Oxford colleges.

**A Second Declaration of Indulgence** was announced in April, 1688, and all the ministers were commanded to read it in their churches on two successive Sundays. In London only four clergymen obeyed, and their congregations got up and left the house as soon as the reading began. Seven bishops met and drew up a petition to the king, asking him not to enforce his order. The king declared that the petition was rank rebellion, and the bishops were arrested and confined in the Tower. He brought a charge of seditious libel against them; that is, he accused them of publishing false statements which tended to stir up rebellion against the king.

**The Trial of the Bishops** took place on June 29. The judges had been chosen by the king with the object of securing a conviction. But would the jury bring in a verdict of guilty?

At first three jurymen declared for the king, but before morning all had agreed on a verdict of not guilty. The crowds waiting in Westminster set up a shout, and the crowd in the street echoed it. James was that morning to review

the army assembled near London. As he approached he heard a tremendous cheering and shouting.

"What is that noise?" he asked.

"It is nothing," answered Lord Feversham, "only the soldiers shouting for the acquittal of the bishops."

"Do you call that nothing?" said he. "So much the worse for them."

But it was the worse for James. He had succeeded in losing the friendship of nine tenths of his people, and even of his own children and relatives. They waited patiently, however, thinking that it could not be many years before his daughter Mary would succeed him.

James's first wife having died, he had married again, and two days after the acquittal of the bishops it was announced that a son was born to him. This boy would of course be brought up in the Catholic faith, and when he grew up he would probably do exactly as his father had done. Besides, a story was noised abroad that the child was not the king's at all, but a baby that had been procured somewhere and smuggled into the palace.

**The English Revolution.** William of Orange (p. 249), the nephew and son-in-law of James, was now invited by many English nobles to become king, and to save the liberties and rights of the people. There would be no trouble about this, they said, for the whole nation was ready to give him a hearty welcome. So William collected a fleet and army in Holland, and on the 5th of November he landed on the English coast.

James started with his army to attack the invaders; but his soldiers began to desert him; the bishops he had appointed would not help him; and when he reached his house he found that his daughter Anne and her husband had fled. "Now, God help me!" cried the king. "My own children have forsaken me." Deserted by everybody, he tried to escape to France, but was caught by some fishermen and brought back.

William really wanted him to run away. James did not know this, and requested to be allowed to go to Rochester. Permission was gladly granted. On the 18th of December he rose in the middle of the night and rode to the coast, where he found a ship bound for France. He finally reached the French court, where the great Louis received him with the highest respect and kindness. He never again set foot on the soil of England. With the general approval of the nation, William called for an election and a meeting of Parliament.

**The Throne was Declared Vacant** by the House of Commons on account of the misgovernment and flight of the king. To this the Lords agreed, and William and Mary were elected joint sovereigns of England. The idea that the king received his power directly from God, and could therefore defy the will of the people, was overthrown with James; and the other notion, that the people are the source of power, was established by the election of William and Mary.

**The American Colonies** had been left largely to themselves until the time of James II. As Edmund Burke said of them, "they flourished through the neglect of England." But James was jealous of their growth and prosperity, and considered them a nursery for rebels. He sent Sir Edmund Andros over in 1686 to take away the charters of the New England colonies and unite them under one government. Andros was ordered also to establish the Episcopal Church, to suspend the writ of *habeas corpus*, to levy taxes without asking the people, to take charge of the printing presses, to abolish all the colonial legislatures, and to take possession of all unoccupied lands for himself and his friends. But James did not rule long enough to provoke a revolution in the colonies. The revolution that he provoked at home relieved them of Andros, and under William and Mary they got their liberties back without fighting.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did James lose the confidence of his people?
2. Explain the attempts made to dethrone him. How did they result?
3. What was the dispensing power? On what ground did James claim it?
4. How did the Revolution of 1688 affect the government of England? The church?
5. Why was the case of the seven bishops important?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. JUDGE JEFFREYS. Macaulay, *History of England*, I., pp. 590-611; Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, VIII.
2. THE SEVEN BISHOPS. Creighton, *Stories from English History*, Ch. XLIII.; Macaulay, *History of England*, II., pp. 317-357; Green, *Short History*, p. 672.
3. ALICE LISLE. Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, VIII., pp. 82-83; Macaulay, *History of England*, I., pp. 591-596.
4. THE COVENANTERS. Green, *Short History*, 531-532, 551, 621, 632; Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, VII., VIII.
5. MONMOUTH'S REBELLION. Macaulay, *History of England*, I., 541-579; Besant, *For Faith and Freedom*.

### C. THE NEW ORDER OF THINGS.

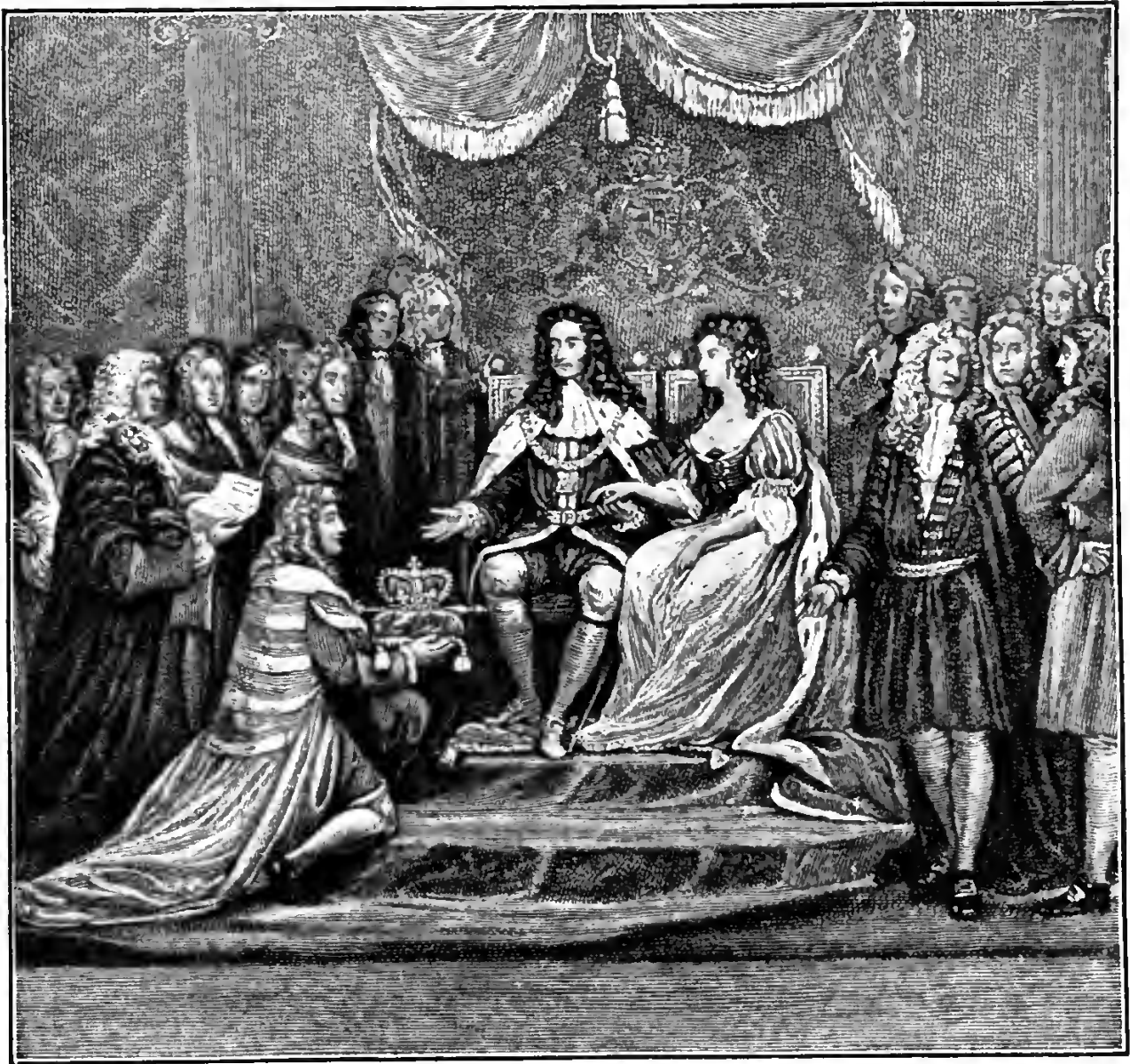
William III., 1689-1702, and Mary II., 1689-1694.

A Declaration of the Rights and liberties of the people was drawn up by the Parliament, and agreed to by William and Mary before they were crowned. James had broken down many of the old liberties, and his judges had said that he had a right to do so. Then, a revolution had taken place; that is, one royal house had been driven out, and a new one set up. It was necessary that the new rulers should agree to abide by the old laws and customs of England.

The new Declaration provided that the king should never set aside the laws without the consent of Parliament; that a standing army should not be kept; that the election of members of Parliament should be free from interference, and that Parliament should be frequently assembled; that Wil-



liam and Mary should reign as joint sovereigns, with the practical care of the government in the hands of William; that if either William or Mary died the other should continue to reign; that if they left no children, the crown should descend to Anne, the sister of Mary, and to her heirs; and



CORONATION OF WILLIAM AND MARY.

that no Roman Catholic, or person marrying a Roman Catholic, should be capable of receiving the crown of England.

These provisions were afterwards made into the "Bill of Rights." This bill is the third great document that goes to make up the English constitution. Magna Charta, the Petition of Right, and the Bill of Rights form what Lord

Chatham called the "Bible of the English Constitution." And according to these three charters England is now governed.

**A Toleration Act** was passed which allowed all sects, except Catholics and Unitarians, to worship in their own churches. The oath of allegiance and supremacy (p. 169) was required of all clergy holding places in the Established Church. There were many among them who held that James was still king. Accordingly, about four hundred refused to take the oath of allegiance to William and Mary. For a long time afterwards they were known as "non-jurors."

Those among the laymen who still held to James were known as Jacobites, a word derived from *Jacobus*, the Latin word for James. There were many who disliked the grave and simple manners of the new king, who was also a little too fond of Dutchmen to please many. But William tried to rule both Holland and England fairly; he would not take the side of any party, but did his best to create good feeling and patriotic harmony among all classes.

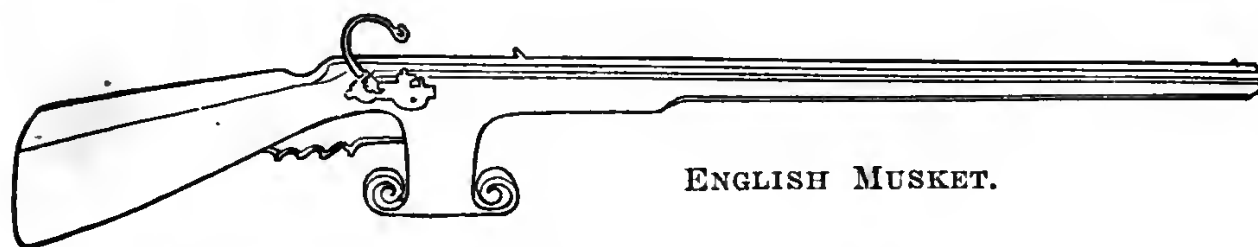
**The Mutiny Act** was a law which gave the king power to enforce discipline in the army for only six months or one year at a time. The act has been renewed from year to year ever since; but if it were not renewed, a soldier could desert or disobey the king's officers without much danger of punishment.

A few years later Parliament adopted the plan of voting the king a revenue for only one year at a time. This, with the plan of the Mutiny Acts, has compelled the king to call the Parliament together often, and so enabled them to keep a close oversight of his conduct and of the condition of the country. In fact, it has made Parliament supreme.

**The War of the Palatinate.** Before William was fairly settled in his new kingdom, the French king had begun war against him. The Protestants of Europe, headed by William,

had formed an alliance against France after the repeal of the Edict of Nantes by Louis XIV. Louis began war by plundering the Palatinate and murdering thousands of Protestants there. He also sent an army to Ireland to help the deposed King James in regaining his throne. There was also some fighting in Scotland.

**Killiecrankie.** In Scotland most of the people favored William and Mary, and the Scottish Parliament elected them to the throne in place of James. The Scotch Highlanders were the chief adherents of the deposed king. Claverhouse, now Viscount Dundee, who had been a hunter of Covenanters



ENGLISH MUSKET.

in the former reign, now gathered a large army of the Highland clans in support of James. William's army, under General Mackay, met them in the steep mountain pass of Killiecrankie. The Scotch were stationed at the top of the hill. As the English troops struggled up to attack them the Highlanders fired one volley, and then, throwing down their muskets, rushed upon the English with their broadswords. The musket in use among the English at that time was changed into a pike by fixing a dagger in the end of the barrel. It was an awkward contrivance, and before the dagger could be adjusted the Scotch were upon them with wild yells and flashing weapons. Mackay was defeated, but drew off his army without severe loss. Dundee was killed in this battle, and the clans, having no capable leader, soon returned to their homes.

Afterwards the Highland chiefs were offered pardon and a sum of money if they would take the oath of allegiance to King William, and agree to live peaceably in the future.

As James had by this time been defeated and driven out of Ireland, they were willing to do this; but to show their independence they put off taking the oath as long as possible.

**MacIan of Glencoe** was an old man, chief of the clan of MacDonald. A proclamation had been issued that all who did not appear before a certain day would be regarded as public enemies. MacIan was by mistake a few days late. He might still have been pardoned, had not the affairs of Scotland been in the hands of men who were his enemies. They sent such a report of the case to William that he consented to the order for rooting out "that set of thieves at Glencoe."

Glencoe was a picturesque little valley in the western Highlands. Here lived the clan of MacDonald, numbering perhaps five hundred people. A company of soldiers was sent among them to ask for quarters, pretending that there was not room for them at their fort near by. For twelve days they lived with the clan, having food, drink, and shelter without payment. Their commander, whose niece was married to the chief's son, lived in the most friendly way with the family of MacIan, though at the time he had in his pocket a letter which ordered him "to cut off the clan, root and branch." At five o'clock one morning, while it was yet dark, the soldiers surrounded the cabins in which they had feasted and made merry the night before. The unfortunate people were dragged out and murdered; many who tried to escape were shot down. It had been planned to have a strong force come from the fort and cut off the fugitives, but it arrived too late, and three fourths of the clan escaped in the darkness. But their huts were burned and their cattle driven off. It was in the middle of winter and many of the fugitives were starved and frozen. Some returned to their ruined village and again built up homes in the little valley. They told the story of Glencoe to their children, and it has come down to us as the

darkest blot on the reign of William, and as the most terrible tale in the tribal wars of Scotland.

**Richard Talbot, Earl of Tyrconnel**, had been sent by James II. to rule Ireland. He had been ordered to recruit a Catholic army and be ready to assist the king. So now, in Ireland, the supporters of James were stronger than their opponents. Those who favored William were called "Orange-men," a name which still clings to the Irish Protestants.

James landed in Ireland with some French troops in the spring of 1689. He found the Irish divided into two parties, one of which, led by Tyrconnel, hoped to make Ireland independent. An Irish Parliament was summoned, and the Act of Settlement passed in 1661 was repealed. By this act much property was taken from the Protestants and restored to Catholics. A great act of attainder was passed against two thousand Englishmen. All of these that did not surrender themselves to James at Dublin within a certain length of time were to be executed without a trial; provided, of course, James could catch them, which at one time seemed more than possible.

The Protestant refugees had gathered in Londonderry and another town in Ulster. The forces of James besieged Londonderry and cut off all supplies of food. For one hundred and five days the siege lasted. All wholesome food was gone. Horses, rats, and dogs were eaten. There seemed to be nothing to do but surrender or starve. The town was approached from the sea only by a river, which the Irish had blocked with a heavy raft. For days and days the ships sent by William lay outside the raft, not daring to break it. At last they received positive orders to relieve the town. One ship was headed straight toward the raft and broke it; the ship was wrecked, but the other vessels sailed through and brought food to the starving inhabitants.

**The Quarrels of Parties in Parliament** had prevented

William from taking prompt action against James; and it was not until he threatened to resign the throne and return to Holland that the wrangling Whigs and Tories came to their senses. A new Parliament was called, and provision was made for war.

**The Battle of the Boyne** (1690). William led an army of 30,000 men into Ireland. James had drawn up his army on rising ground south of the river Boyne (map, p. 232), across which the English had to advance to attack him. The two armies were about evenly matched. The river was skillfully crossed and the battle bravely won by William's army. William crossed at the head of his troops, receiving a wound in the arm; but the Irish were disgusted at the cowardly conduct of James, who ran away before the battle began. The Irish army was badly defeated, but the French covered their retreat and only 1,500 men were lost. The war was continued until the next year, when the Irish were finally routed with terrible loss at Aghrim, 1,000 men being massacred in the retreat. The rest took refuge in Limerick, where they were forced to surrender. All who wished were allowed to retire to France, and about 10,000 officers and men did so. Protestant ascendancy was now established in Ireland, and the cruel penal code began to be built up.

**Two Naval Battles** were fought during this struggle in Ireland. The first one at Beachy Head was lost through the treacherous retreat of the English admiral Torrington, a Jacobite. Two years later occurred the battle of La Hogue, off the northern coast of France. Here a fleet of forty-four French ships met a combined Dutch and English fleet of ninety. The French did not think that the English would fight, as Admiral Russell was known to sympathize with King James. But James's conduct in Ireland, and the threatened invasion of England by France, had caused his best friends to abandon him. The English did fight,



and out of the French fleet only twelve ships escaped; these were pursued under the very walls of the fort and burned before the eyes of James himself, who saw in their destruction the end of his hope for a successful invasion of England. He passed the rest of his life in France, dying there shortly before the close of William's reign.

The French defeat on the sea, however, was offset by several victories which Louis won over the Protestant allies on the continent. For years it had been the boast of the French that they had not lost a battle or a city. But in 1695 William took from the French the city of Namur with its garrison of 12,000, though an army of 80,000 Frenchmen came to raise the siege.

**Queen Mary Died** of smallpox in 1694. She was of a gentle nature and was greatly beloved by all. "I was the happiest man on earth," said William, "and now I am the most miserable." The Greenwich Hospital, on the banks of the Thames, is her memorial. This structure had been begun by Charles II. as a palace, but left unfinished. After the naval battles with France, Mary wished to complete the building as a hospital for wounded sailors. This was done after her death, and it still stands the most fitting monument of a queen who loved to comfort the unfortunate.

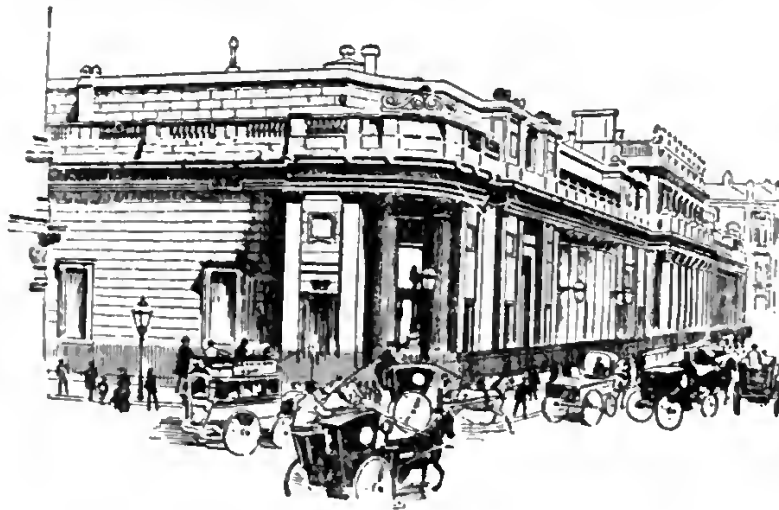
**The Freedom of the Press** was established during the period of this French war. Before that, Parliament had from time to time forbidden the printing of any book or newspaper in England without a royal license; but now Parliament refused to renew the licensing act, so men became free to print as well as speak their thoughts freely — a privilege which continues to be the safeguard of liberty and a check upon wrongdoing.

**The Bank of England.** The wars led to a large debt to the money lenders and bankers. Those who lent money to the government were now formed into a banking company,



which grew into the Bank of England, the most famous financial institution in the world.

**The Money was Re coined** during this reign. Much of it was worn out and mutilated by clipping. The coins had



THE PRESENT BANK OF ENGLAND.

been made with smooth edges, so that with a sharp knife one could cut a strip of metal from a coin and it would not be noticed. But the new coins were made with milled edges, in order that no metal could

be cut off without showing. The public sent in their old money to the government, and received in exchange fresh new coins of full weight.

**A Plot to Assassinate the King** was discovered in 1696. Forty of the Jacobites were concerned in it. If it succeeded a French army was to land in England and attempt to restore King James. The conspirators had planned to conceal themselves along a road by which William would return from a hunt. At a signal they were to spring out and shoot him, before any one could help him. The detection of this plot alarmed the English, and they took careful measures to protect the king. Some of the conspirators were taken and executed.

**The Peace of Ryswick**, made with Louis in 1697, concluded the French war. William was acknowledged to be the rightful King of England, and the cause of James was given up. The new Cathedral of St. Paul's had just been completed by Sir Christopher Wren, and William at the head of a great triumphal procession entered the church, where a solemn thanksgiving was rendered for the return of peace.

The army was now partly disbanded, and the Dutch guards, who had served faithfully, were, much against the king's will, sent back to Holland.

**In America** this war was called King William's War. It consisted in a border war between the English settlers of New York and New England, and the French and Indians.

Schenectady in New York and several other outlying towns were taken and burned by the French, and the Indians were allowed to scalp and murder the inhabitants. The New Englanders captured Port Royal in Acadia, but were obliged to give it back by the treaty of Ryswick.

**A Dispute about the Spanish Succession** soon led to fresh trouble with France. The old King of Spain was childless. As his eldest sister was the wife of Louis of France, their son was, according to the French claim, heir to the throne of Spain. But William and the other kings of Europe were not disposed to allow Louis to become so powerful, and they threatened war unless he would give up the claim. Louis was not yet ready for another war, so he yielded, and signed a treaty by which a part of Spain's territory was to go to France, and the rest of it, with the crown, to the Archduke Charles of Austria. This treaty Louis refused to carry out when the news came that the king of Spain was dead, and that he had left his throne to the grandson of Louis. "There are no longer any Pyrenees!" he exclaimed triumphantly, meaning that now France and Spain were one nation. The Spanish Netherlands, which he had so long fought for, would become his, and the union of the French and Spanish power would make him able to defy all the rest of Europe.

It was not long before Louis showed his defiance of England. He had acknowledged William as the rightful King of England in the Treaty of Ryswick. But in 1701, when James II. died in Paris, Louis immediately declared that

James's son, James Edward, was the rightful king, and promised to help him in getting the throne.

**Act of Settlement.** The Bill of Rights had provided for the disposition of the crown, but as Anne's children all died, an Act of Settlement was passed in 1701 providing that at her death the crown should go to the Electress Sophia of Hanover, granddaughter of James I., and her heirs. The object of this act was to secure a Protestant succession. It was just after this that news came of James II.'s death and the declaration of Louis. The haughty insolence of the French, in presuming to appoint a king of England, was more than the English people could endure. Though they were half disposed to allow Louis to have his own way in Spain, a general demand for war was aroused by his support of another Stuart in claiming the throne of England.

**A Grand Alliance** was made by William against France. Holland, Denmark, Sweden, England, and Austria combined to keep Louis out of the Netherlands, and to compel an agreement that the crowns of France and Spain should never be united. The object of the alliance was to preserve the balance of power.

A new Parliament, called in 1701, began preparation for war, in the midst of which William's horse stumbled one day over a molehill and fell with him. The king's collar bone was broken, and from this and other injuries he died. The nation, which had learned to respect and love him, mourned at his death. A statue of the king in one of the corridors of the Bank of England bears this inscription: "To the memory of the best of princes, William of Orange, founder of the Bank of England." Louis XIV. rejoiced, for he thought now that his worst enemy was gone. And the Jacobites, in their secret meetings, drank many a toast to the "little gentlemen in black velvet" whose earthwork had caused King William's death.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What circumstances gave rise to each of the three great documents of the English constitution?
2. What was the object of the Act of Settlement?
3. What interest did the Irish and Scotch have in supporting James? Why did the French king support him?
4. Compare Tyrconnel's massacres in Ireland with those of Cromwell.
5. What caused the rise of the Jacobites and Non-jurors?
6. Why did the French king break the treaty of Ryswick?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE STORY OF GLENCOE. Colby, *Sources of English History*, pp. 220-222; Scott, *Tales of a Grandfather*, Ch. LVIII.
2. THE BATTLE OF THE BOYNE. Hale, *Fall of the Stuarts*, pp. 181-186; Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, VIII., pp. 135-148.
3. BATTLE OF LA HOGUE. Gardiner, *Student's History*, p. 658; Hale, *Fall of the Stuarts*.
4. KILLIECRANKIE. Rolfe, *Tales from Scottish History*, pp. 130-134; Hale, *Fall of the Stuarts*, pp. 165-168.

### D. THE WAR AGAINST FRENCH DOMINATION.

#### Anne, 1702-1714.

The Accession of the New Queen made no change in the conduct of the affairs of government. Anne was well liked by the English people, and the title of "Good Queen Anne" was given her. She stood up for the rule of the English Church and disliked all dissenters. The Tory party wanted to keep dissenters out of public offices, while the Whigs were willing to admit them if they would come occasionally to the established church. This was called "occasional conformity."

Though Anne had a kindly disposition, she firmly believed in the old Stuart idea of the "divine right of kings," and in the superstition that the sovereign could cure people of scrofula, or "king's evil," by touching them. This practice began with Edward the Confessor, whose great piety, it is

said, enabled him to effect miraculous cures. But Charles II. also, who was not noted for piety, "touched for the king's evil." The practice was to bring the sick, one at a time, before the king, who laid his hands upon them while the bishop repeated the words, "And he laid his hands upon them and healed them." Queen Anne was the last sovereign to observe this custom.

The War of the Spanish Succession filled most of Queen Anne's reign. The armies of the Grand Alliance were under



SPANISH NETHERLANDS ABOUT 1700.

the command of John Churchill, Earl and later Duke of Marlborough, who had been recommended by William as the ablest man for the work. Churchill had been a friend of James II., and held a command in the army when William landed in England. Like many of James's friends, he deserted him for the Protestant prince. He had fought in Ireland and the Netherlands for King William, but when things were going badly on the continent he had thought of going over to James again, and treacherously informed the French of an intended attack on Brest (map, p. 164). The

commander made such good preparation that the whole English force of 700 men was killed or captured.

In spite of this treason, William took Marlborough again into confidence, and left to him the conduct of the war, already begun when Anne became queen. Prince Eugene of Savoy was his able assistant, and commanded the troops of Portugal, Savoy, and Austria, while Marlborough was at the head of the English, Dutch, and some Germans.

Just before the beginning of the war, Louis had seized many forts and towns in the Spanish Netherlands and fortified them. This threatened Holland with invasion. The first two years of the war were spent in recapturing enough of these towns to secure Holland. Meanwhile Bavaria joined France, and in 1704 a French army gathered there along the Danube, preparing for the conquest of Austria.



BATTLE OF BLENHEIM.

**Blenheim.** Marlborough now led his army to Bavaria, and met the enemy at the village of Blenheim, on the Danube. Keeping the French busy with an attack on the fortified village, he led in person a tremendous cavalry charge against the center. Their army was cut in two and terribly defeated, losing more than half their number in killed, wounded, and captured.

It was the first time the armies of Louis had met defeat. For half a century he had broken treaties and oaths, and lorded it over weaker nations at his pleasure. He had tried to force two kings on the English people, and a third one had been his paid servant. No wonder that the English rejoiced over his downfall, and rewarded his conqueror. A large estate was given to Marlborough by Parliament, and



a great palace was built for him, appropriately named Blenheim, which still remains in the possession of his descendants.



BLenheim.

The battle of Blenheim drove the French across the Rhine and out of Germany. They now gathered their armies in the Spanish Netherlands for the defense of their garrisons there.

**The Year of Victories** (1706) began with the battle of Ramillies. The cavalry again won the day, and the French lost 15,000 men. Ghent, Bruges, Antwerp, and other towns were taken in quick succession, and the power of France in the Netherlands was broken. In 1708 and 1709 the French made attempts to regain what they had lost. Marlborough beat them again at Oudenarde and Malplaquet; and, defeated and disheartened, they abandoned the Netherlands and were ready to make peace.

**English Success in Spain** had kept pace with their vic-



tories elsewhere. The Spanish fort at Gibraltar was captured in 1704. The high rock on which the fort stood, is connected with the mainland by a narrow neck of land. While the Spanish were celebrating a religious festival, the English clambered up the rock and found only 150 men on guard, who were easily conquered. Gibraltar was held, and still remains a British stronghold, guarding the strait and the highway to the Indian empire.

**An Act of Union** between England and Scotland was arranged in 1707. When James I. became King of England, each country kept its own parliament and its own church. There were separate laws for each kingdom. The Scotch were not allowed to sell goods in England without paying a heavy duty. It was now agreed that Scotland should be represented in the English Parliament by sixteen peers and forty-five commoners, that the name of the united countries should be Great Britain, and that the cross of St. Andrew, the patron saint of Scotland, should be placed upon the flag with that of St. George, the patron saint of England. Free trade was established between the two countries.

**Government by Political Parties** began in England in the reign of Queen Anne. James II. was the last king who tried to rule without consulting the wishes of the people. After his time, the people gradually attached themselves to the two parties which had arisen out of the dispute over the Exclusion Bill (p. 250). The Tories were the High Church party. They believed in the rule of bishops, in strengthening the power of the king, and in keeping dissenters out of office. The Whigs we may call the Low Church party. They favored dissenters, and wished to strengthen the power of Parliament and weaken that of the king. They favored the Grand Alliance against France, and wished to unite with the Protestants on the continent against the Catholic powers. But as the war dragged on from year to year, the Tories grew

more and more eager to stop it. They did not care whether a French prince or an Austrian prince sat on the throne of Spain. They were content that Louis had been curbed in his attack on the Netherlands.

Marlborough was in favor of continuing the war, because it had brought him honors, fame, and wealth. The queen, although a Tory, was under the influence of the wife of Marlborough, who was her most intimate friend. It is said that this lady, whose name was Sarah Jennings before her marriage, ruled in all court matters, from the trimming on the queen's dress to the management of wars and alliances. So presuming did she become that Anne dismissed her from court and found another lady, one Mrs. Masham, to take her place (1710).

**Cabinet Government** by the ruling party in Parliament grew up at this time. Both William and Anne had tried to select ministers from both parties, but they found that men of different ways of thinking could not work well together. They were therefore obliged to select a ministry entirely from the strongest party. The chief ministers at that time were the First Lord of the Treasury, the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the Lord Chancellor (the presiding officer of the House of Lords and the legal adviser of the Cabinet), the First Lord of the Admiralty, and various secretaries. Government by a ministry took on its complete form and received the name of "Cabinet government" in the next reign (p. 284).

The Case of Dr. Sacheverell strengthened the power of the Tories. This man was a preacher whom nowadays one would call a "crank." He preached sermons advocating the old idea that it was unlawful and unchristian to resist the king or queen of the country. He also called the Whigs hard names and accused them of wishing to overthrow the English Church. The Whigs were very angry at this, and

impeached him before the House of Lords, had him suspended from office, and had his sermons burned by the common hangman. The people thought that Sacheverell had been punished unjustly, and the Whigs lost favor everywhere.

**The Election of 1710** resulted in a strong Tory Parliament, which forced the selection of a strong Tory ministry. This ministry sent a man to Louis to ask if he wanted to make peace. "It was," said Louis's prime minister, "like asking a dying man if he wished to be cured."

**Queen Anne's War**, as the war of the Spanish Succession was called in America, was accompanied by much the same sort of fighting as the previous war (p. 271). An English expedition against Quebec resulted in total failure, with shipwreck and loss of life; but New England soldiers captured and held Acadia (Nova Scotia).

**The Peace of Utrecht** was signed by France and the allies in 1713. Louis's grandson, Philip, was allowed to keep the throne of Spain, but with the agreement that he should never be made King of France. The Spanish parts of Italy and of the Netherlands were given to Austria. England kept Gibraltar and Acadia. Louis agreed to acknowledge the Protestant succession in England, and to drive James Edward, the "Pretender," as he was called, out of France.

**Anne Died** in 1714, the last Stuart sovereign to reign in England. Her husband, Prince George of Denmark, had died several years before. He was a coarse, stupid man, unfit for public office, and never had anything to do with the government. Their children all died young. There were still many Tories who would have been glad to have the son of James II. for the next king. If he had consented to become a Protestant, he might have had the throne; but this he refused to do, and the Act of Settlement was carried out. The Electress of Hanover being now dead, her son became George I. of England.

**The Chief Characteristic** of the Stuart and Orange-Stuart periods is the growing importance of the people. The increase of wealth, due to the growth of trade and manufacturing, brought the middle classes into prominence.

**Woolen Cloths** were still the leading manufacture; nearly twenty different kinds were made. But silk, linen, and cotton became important in the reign of James I. The French Huguenots were skillful silk weavers. So many of them came to England after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes (p. 258), that within ten years no more silk was imported, while before the edict was revoked £200,000 was spent annually for French silks.

**Mining** became an important industry; coal, iron, tin, copper, and salt were produced and sold abroad. The great need of the time was suitable machinery for carrying on the operations of manufacturing and mining. All work was done by hand. England had to wait another century for the steam engine.

**Trade.** This extract from the "Spectator" (p. 281) refers to the extensive trade which had grown up in England. "Our Ships are laden with the Harvest of every Climate; our Tables are stored with Spices and Oils and Wine; our Rooms are filled with Pyramids of China, and adorned with the Workmanship of Japan; our Morning's Draught comes to us from the remotest Corners of the Earth; we repair our Bodies by the Drugs of America, and repose ourselves under Indian Canopies. My Friend, Sir Andrew, calls the Vineyards of France our Gardens; the Spice Islands our Hot-beds; the Persians our Silk-weavers; and the Chinese our Potters."

Trade, discovery, and an acquaintance with many foreign countries had greatly contributed to the intelligence of the people. Newspapers and books were cheap and plentiful enough to come within the reach of the majority.

*In Roger de Coverly Papers,*

**The Desire for News** was first provided for by the issue of pamphlets by the printers and stationers. In 1622 a weekly issue of news was begun in London by Nathaniel Butter and Thomas Archer. In 1641 "The Grand Remonstrance" was published and hawked about the streets by newsboys. It was the first "extra" on record. Later the papers were called "Mercuries." The first daily newspaper, the "Daily Courant," appeared in Queen Anne's time. The most famous paper, however, was the "Spectator," edited by Richard Steele and Joseph Addison. It was not a newspaper, but a kind of society journal, criticising the follies and vices of the time.

The coffeehouses were favorite places of meeting for the exchange of news and gossip. They were the clubs of that time. In 1671 they were closed as "seditious places," but were reopened shortly afterward on the promise of the keepers not to allow their guests to talk too much about the government.

**The Literature of Anne's Time** is next in importance to that of the Elizabethan Age. Addison was the finest writer of prose, and Alexander Pope the most exact writer of poetry. The authors of the time prided themselves on being very elegant and exact in their speaking and writing. Jonathan Swift wrote "Gulliver's Travels," a tale of a voyage to the lands of the Giants and of the Lilliputians, holding up to ridicule the politics of the time. De Foe's "Robinson Crusoe" was printed a few years after the death of Anne. "Gulliver's Travels" and "Robinson Crusoe" are the beginning of the kind of literature called fiction, meaning accounts of things imagined to have happened.

**Encouragement to Artists** was given by Charles II., the first King of England who understood and appreciated pictures. Rubens and Van Dyck, two great Flemish artists, lived for a time at his court. Rubens decorated the king's

palace of Whitehall, and Van Dyck painted portraits of the king and queen and their children, as well as of the nobles and ladies of the court.

**Great Progress in Science** was made during the rule of the Stuart kings. Bacon's methods of observation and ex-



SIR ISAAC NEWTON.

periment (p. 201) were vigorously followed up. The Royal Society was incorporated by Charles II. in 1662. Its object was to advance experimental science. The king himself did experiments, and was considered a good chemist. Robert Boyle improved the air pump, and made the important discovery that gases, like the air, expand and contract according to the pressure put upon them.

Great achievements were also made in astronomy. Edmund Halley first calculated the path of a comet which appeared in 1682. He said the comet would come again in 1759 and 1835; sure enough it did. Isaac Newton, however, is the greatest name of this period. Galileo and Copernicus had said that the planets revolve about the sun. Tycho Brahe and Kepler discovered the laws of motion governing the planets. But Sir Isaac Newton discovered the law of gravitation, the force that holds the planets in their places and keeps our bodies and other objects on the surface of the earth.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How was England connected with the War of the Spanish Succession? How did the war result in America? How did it affect the balance of power?

2. What were the terms of the Act of Union between England and Scotland? How did it benefit both countries?
3. Compare the literature of Anne's time with that of the Elizabethan age.
4. Discuss the career and character of Marlborough.

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE BATTLE OF BLENHEIM. Henty, *The Cornet of Horse*; Fitchett, *Fights for the Flag*, pp. 16-32.
2. WHIGS AND TORIES. Macaulay, *History of England*, I., 240; Hale, *Fall of the Stuarts*, pp. 31-34.
3. QUEEN ANNE'S FAVORITES. Strickland, *Queens of England* (abridged edition).
4. SCIENTIFIC PROGRESS. Green, *Short History*, pp. 610-611.



## X. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER.<sup>1</sup>

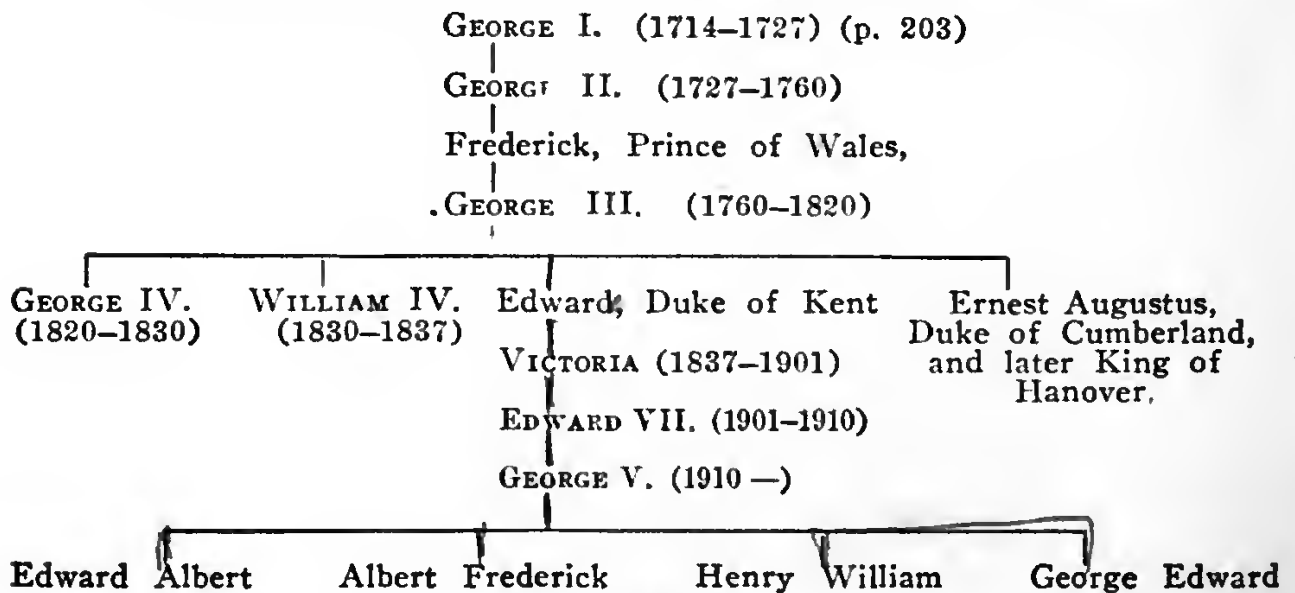
### A. FORTY YEARS OF PROGRESS.

#### George I., 1714-1727.

**The New King** was in no hurry to leave his German province of Hanover, where he had lived happily for fifty-four years. He was an honest, well-meaning man, but coarse and lacking in intelligence. He could not speak English, and the government of England by a king and a Parliament was a complete mystery to him. He had no choice, therefore, but to intrust the management of affairs to his cabinet, which was made up entirely of Whigs.

**The Rule of the Cabinet.** It had always been the custom of the English kings to choose from the Parliament a select body of men known as the "privy council." In this council there would always be a few men especially trusted, and William III. made a practice of calling these favored

<sup>1</sup>HOUSE OF HANOVER, after 1917 called HOUSE OF WINDSOR



few, including the chief ministers, into the king's "cabinet," or private room, to discuss matters that they did not wish to talk about before the whole council. These came to be called the "cabinet council," or the Cabinet. The rule of the Cabinet had been growing more and more independent of the sovereign. It became entirely so in the time of George I., who preferred spending his time in social amusements to attending the meetings of his Cabinet.

Some one had to be chosen to take the king's place in presiding over the Cabinet meetings. To this man the title of premier, or prime minister, was afterwards given. The first man to bear this title was Sir Robert Walpole, who became the head of the Cabinet in 1721 (p. 288).

**The Jacobites** had allowed the new king to be crowned without making any trouble. But the exclusion of Tories from office, and the belief that the Whigs would repeal the laws against dissenters, made the English High Church party angry. In Scotland the Stuarts could always find support, and the Earl of Mar raised a strong force in the interest of the "Pretender," James Edward, who caused himself to be proclaimed king. Mar sent 1,500 men into England, while he himself headed about 10,000 against the Whig leader, Argyle, in Scotland (1715). But the 1,500 men, together with some English Jacobites, were compelled to surrender at Preston, in Lancashire; and Argyle attacked and scattered the army of Mar at Sheriffmuir (p. 106). The Highlanders, however, claimed half a victory, as the old ballad runs:

"There's some say that *we* won, and some say that *they* won,  
And some say that none won at a', man;  
But one thing is sure, that at Sheriffmuir,  
A battle there was, which I saw, man."

The Pretender, unaware of these battles, now landed in Scotland. He had expected to bring a strong French force with him, but his friend Louis XIV. died, and the new French

ruler would give no aid. Stupid, selfish, and slow, James Edward failed to arouse any enthusiasm for his cause, and soon returned to the continent.

**The Septennial Act.** The first Triennial Act, passed by the Long Parliament (p. 222), had been repealed at the Restoration. In William's reign a second one had been passed, which said that a new House of Commons must be chosen at least every three years. Now, in the disturbed condition of the country, it was thought dangerous and inconvenient to have elections so often; so a Septennial Act was now passed, extending the term during which a Parliament may serve, to seven years. This law is still in force.

**The South Sea Company** was founded in Anne's reign by Lord Treasurer Harley. Its members were men to whom the government owed money. Harley induced them to take interest-bearing bonds in payment, and gave them a monopoly of the South American trade. This consisted of the privilege of selling slaves to the Spanish colonies there, and of sending one shipload of goods each year. Spain had given these privileges to England by the treaty of Utrecht. The company made various other plans for extending trade, and proposed a scheme to pay up the national debt by inducing the creditors of the government to exchange their claims for stock in the company (1720). It was given out that the government had invested large sums in the enterprise, and that the profits of the stockholders would be enormous. And so those who had lent money to the government were eager to get the company's stock. Thousands of others who had saved up money invested it in this way. So great was the craze that the price went up from \$500 to \$5,000 a share.

So remarkable was the success in selling the stock of this company that dozens of other similar companies were begun. So many people crowded the offices on Change Alley in London, buying and selling stock, that some of the business was

done in the street. As people became more credulous, companies were formed even for such objects as making salt water fresh, making a perpetual-motion wheel, and telling fortunes by the stars; and finally one man sold \$10,000 worth of stock in an enterprise so wonderful that he refused to tell it at once. After a time it dawned on the investors that they had been cheated. But when they tried to sell their



CHANGE ALLEY AT THE TIME OF THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE.

stock, no one would buy it. Every one had stock to sell, but there being no purchasers the stock was worthless.

When the story came out that the South Sea Company had bribed the ministers to support its schemes, there was an outcry against the government for having encouraged the tremendous fraud by which thousands of poor people had lost their savings. One of the Cabinet was expelled from Parliament; the cashier of the company fled to Holland; others were arrested and punished.

**A New Cabinet** was formed (1721) with Walpole as prime minister. He had, from the first, condemned the South Sea scheme and was now the only man that had the popular confidence. The private property of the officers of the company was seized and distributed among those who had been the chief losers. But as for thousands who had invested their money in some other enterprises, the only return they ever got was their experience.

**The Wealth of the Country** was shown by the large amounts invested in these companies. The government had not dreamed that the people were so rich. It thus learned a way of raising money in future emergencies — borrowing it of the people.

**Walpole's Ministry** was the first one formed according to the method which is followed to-day. That is, the king gave him power to choose the other members of the Cabinet. They were chosen from the Whig party, as the Whigs then had the majority in the House of Commons. Walpole was an excellent financier and man of business. He said it was always good policy to "let sleeping dogs lie." He gave the country rest from wars for about twenty years. He was careful not to stir up opposition among the people. He did not dare repeal the laws excluding dissenters from office, but he evaded them by making good the losses suffered on account of the laws.

**Political Corruption** was commonly practiced in Walpole's time. He got men to vote for his measures in Parliament, and at the elections, by paying them money. He said that "every man has his price." In those times it was hard to find a man who would not sell his vote. He said that all men were naturally bad, and that they would remain so. He had nothing but contempt for reformers and did not believe it possible to bring about a purer and better state of things.

At that time, the meetings of Parliament were secret. No

visitors were allowed, and no newspapers might publish the speeches made, or the way in which any man voted. A member could, therefore, sell his vote without fear that the people would ever know anything about it. Most of those who had a right to vote for members of the House of Commons were sure to vote for the candidate who gave them plenty to drink and the most money. England now has very strict laws preventing such bribery; but they were not made till after many years of corruption.

**Drunkenness and Immorality** were as common as corruption. People of all classes drank to excess, from the vagrant in the street to the First Lord of the Treasury. Dueling and gambling were the everyday amusements of the accomplished gentleman, while many of the lower classes plied the baser professions of the cutthroat, the pickpocket, and the highwayman.

**The Death of George I.** took place in 1727. On the road to Hanover, he was stricken in his carriage with apoplexy and died in a few minutes.

### George II., 1727-1760.

**The Second George** was in some respects an improvement on his father. He could speak broken English, and could understand the language well enough to take part in public affairs. He had little ability, but had a high regard for justice. He would not knowingly allow any one to be wronged. He was a brave soldier, too; he had fought under Marlborough in the battles in the Netherlands, and in his own reign he commanded an army in another European war.

**Ideas of Trade and Commerce** were very different then from what they are now. No nation would then allow its colonies to trade with other nations, even though the articles bought by the colony were not to be had in the mother country. It was not understood that, when two countries made

an exchange of goods, both might be made richer. When Spain, England, and Holland forbade their colonies to trade with other countries, they did not see that by making their colonies poorer they were making them less able to buy goods of the mother country. England, for example, tried to prevent the New England colonists from trading with the French islands in the West Indies, where they exchanged fish for sugar. Part of the sugar was sold at home, while much of it was made into rum and exchanged in Africa for slaves, which found a ready sale for cash in the West Indies and southern colonies. Having the cash they were ready to buy more English goods. In this way England profited by the trade which she was trying to stop.

Spain, in like manner, forbade all nations to trade with her colonies in America. England had obtained a small share in this trade by the treaty of Utrecht, but twenty years later Spain and France entered into an agreement to cut off England's trade as much as possible in all parts of the world.

**English Smuggling** had been extensively carried on with all the Spanish colonies, with profit to both the colonies and the English merchants. Spain now tried to stop this, and many a tale of the cruelty of Spanish coast guards came to England. Finally one Captain Jenkins came before the House of Commons and exhibited an ear which he claimed had been cut off by Spanish officials in the West Indies and given to him with the words, "Go, take that to your king!"

"**The War of Jenkins's Ear**" was the name given to the short war following this incident. There had been a popular cry for a war with Spain, and this tale roused a storm which Walpole could not resist, though he believed that Jenkins's story was a lie from beginning to end. Walpole knew that the war was unjust, because the English were breaking a treaty by which they agreed not to send more than one



ship of 600 tons each year. But, right or wrong, the merchants were bound to trade. There was another point in dispute between Spain and England at this time, the Florida boundary.

**Georgia, the Thirteenth Colony** in America, was founded in 1733. James Oglethorpe, a kind army officer, seeing the terrible condition of the debtor class in England, formed a company for settling poor debtors on the land south of the Carolinas. It was the law in England that a man who was in debt, even for only a few shillings, might be thrown into jail, to remain there until the debt was paid. Unless he had friends to help him, he might remain there till he died. Oglethorpe obtained permission to take imprisoned debtors over to his colony and give them a chance to begin over again. But the land on which they settled was claimed by Spain as part of Florida.

**End of Walpole's Ministry.** When the announcement was made in London that Walpole had consented to declare war the people went wild with delight, lighting bonfires and ringing bells. "They are ringing their bells now," said Sir Robert, "but they will soon be wringing their hands." A fleet sent against the South American towns succeeded in taking Porto Bello, but was defeated with loss at Cartagena. Later in the war, another fleet inflicted great loss on the Spanish colonies and brought home a large amount of treasure. There was some fighting between Georgia and Florida.

Walpole, accused of conducting the war in a half-hearted, inefficient way, was obliged to resign in 1742. The next great prime minister was Henry Pelham (1744-1754), who was aided by his elder brother, the Duke of Newcastle. His policy was to give offices to the members of Parliament who had influence and could make others vote their way. Money was used as freely as in Walpole's time. The two brothers, by buying elections with the state funds, and by judiciously dis-

posing of favors, kept every one in good humor and secured the votes necessary to carry out their measures.

**The War of the Austrian Succession** is interesting for the reason that King George took part in it, and was the last reigning English king who ever commanded an army in a battle. It grew out of the attempt of the powers of Europe to deprive Maria Theresa, the ruler of Austria, of part of her territory. Hanover took the side of Austria, and George led a German army against the French. His army, cut off from its supplies, attempted to pass through the valley of Dettingen, in central Germany, but was met by a French army nearly twice its size (1743). George dismounted from his horse, drew his sword, and putting himself at the right of his men, cried out, "Now boys, for the honor of our country, fire and fight bravely, and the French will soon run." The French did run, and George led his army to safety.

The next year, England was dragged into the war, which continued till 1748; it was then ended by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, by which England and France each restored the conquests it had made. In America the war was called King George's War, and the chief event was the capture of the great French fortress Louisburg by the English colonists.

**The "Young Pretender,"** Charles, eldest son of James Edward, made an attempt to stir up rebellion in 1745. He came with seven followers to the northern coast, and soon gathered several thousand Highlanders about him. He defeated an army slightly smaller than his own at Prestonpans so badly that only a few hundred escaped death or capture. He then advanced into England, but could gather few followers, and was obliged to retire. The next year he was defeated at Culloden by the Duke of Cumberland. The massacre of the prisoners and wounded was an everlasting disgrace to the conqueror.

Charles wandered a fugitive for months among the hills of Scotland. He was at last assisted to escape by a young lady named Flora MacDonald. Her stepfather was an officer in the king's army. From him she obtained a pass for herself and a female servant. Charles, dressed in woman's clothes, was the servant. She took him to the island of Skye, from which he escaped to France. Charles never appeared in Scotland or England again, and the House of Stuart no longer played any part in history.



MONUMENT ON BATTLEFIELD OF CULLODEN.

The faithfulness of the Scotch to the Stuarts is worthy of admiration. Though a large reward was offered for Charles's arrest, not one would betray him. His story is to this day remembered and sung in Scotland. One of the songs runs:

“Over the water and over the sea,  
And over the water to Charlie;  
Come weal, come woe, we'll gather and go,  
And live or die with Charlie.”

**Laxity in Morals.** Since the beginning of the Restoration in 1660, people had been growing more and more wicked, and neither the church nor the laws had done much to make them better. The ministers themselves were indolent and careless, spending their time in card playing, fox hunting, and low amusements. Some of them did not even live in the parishes where their churches were. The few people who attended church gossiped or fell asleep while the minister “mumbled” the prayers.

**The Severe Laws** seemed only to make more criminals. More than two hundred offenses were punished by hanging. Stealing above the amount of five shillings, whether food, goods, or money, was punished by death. It was a common sight to find twenty or more bodies dangling in front of Newgate prison on a Monday morning, while the foul and dismal jails were crowded with victims awaiting slower death through fever and starvation. Lesser crimes were punished by the stocks, the pillory, and flogging. The punishment of the criminals was considered an interesting and amusing performance, not only by the rabble, but by fine ladies and gentlemen, who gathered to witness it much as one would go to the circus or the theater.

Drunkenness increased, owing to the introduction of cheap gin and rum. The officers of the government were no better than others. Walpole was guilty, not only of bribery and corruption in politics, but also of drunkenness and foul language in his private life. It was the ambition of even English statesmen to drink in public until they rolled off their chairs.

**The Number of Schools** had not increased since the time of Edward VI., and children grew up in ignorance, learning only the vice and depravity of the streets. The churches paid little attention to the children. There was little religious teaching either in the church or in the home. Hannah More tells us that in one parish she found only "one Bible, and that was used as a prop for a flower-pot."

**A Great Religious Revival** began with some young men who were students in the Oxford colleges. The leaders among them were George Whitefield, and the brothers John and Charles Wesley. Their regular habits of work and worship, and the orderly and careful way in which they lived, soon gave them the name of "Methodist," and this name was kept for the new church which grew out of their preaching.

In order to reach the people who did not go to church, the Methodists preached in the open air under the oak trees, riding on horseback from place to place. The people came by thousands to hear them. Near Bristol, Whitefield preached to twenty thousand miners, and so powerfully did he speak to them about their sins and evil lives, and the certainty that punishment would come upon them, that the tears flowed, "making white channels down their blackened cheeks." The Methodist preachers visited the foul slums of London, where the people seldom had a chance to hear of anything good. On the wharfs and the street corners, wherever listeners could be found, they would preach to the people, urging them to give up their drunkenness and gambling and to lead better, purer lives. Whitefield and the Wesleys did not confine their work to England, but visited the American colonies also.



JOHN WESLEY'S HOUSE.

Charles Wesley was noted as a hymn writer, and this new form of worship was sung in words so beautiful and strong that his influence for good was not surpassed by the most eloquent of the preachers.

Though it was not the intention of these men to separate from the English Church, their manner of work was so different from the old ways, that John Wesley organized a new church. Before his death (1791), it numbered 110,000 members.

**The Effects of this "Wesleyan" Movement**, as it is called, were most important. The English Church was stirred up to new life and energy, and its eyes were opened to the great evils of the times. Towards the close of the century Robert Raikes of Gloucester established Sunday schools for the religious education of the children, a movement which has spread through the whole Christian world. Next, day schools appeared and increased until finally, before the middle of the next century, a system of public schools was begun.

**John Howard**, a sheriff of Bedfordshire, began in 1774 to tell people about the evil condition of the prisons under his care. The prisoners were confined in dark and filthy cells and were treated with the greatest cruelty by their keepers, who lived on the money which they could compel them to pay. Sometimes a man who had served his sentence could not go free because he could not pay the jailer for the food which had been furnished him. Howard went through many of the prisons in England, as well as in France and Germany. He had himself put in prison so he could know by actual experience just what the prisoners had to suffer. He wrote a book describing all he had seen, and from that time things began to improve, because he showed people the terrible conditions which prevailed.

**An Important Reform in the Calendar** was made in 1752. Before that time the year began on the 25th of March, "Lady's Day," and was reckoned to be  $365\frac{1}{4}$  days in length. This length had been established by Julius Cæsar. But it was found that a year is not exactly  $365\frac{1}{4}$  days, but about eleven minutes less. In Catholic countries a new style calendar had been adopted, by order of the Pope, which reckoned the year at very nearly its true length. In 1752 English dates were eleven days behind those of the continent, and to set them right the 3d of September was called the 14th, and the new year was made to begin on January 1st.



## QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What was the Privy Council? How did the Cabinet arise?
2. Compare the time of Walpole with the present in regard to political corruption. Why was it allowed then and not now?
3. What determines the length of time that a Parliament may serve?
4. In what way was the accession of the House of Hanover a benefit to the English people?
5. Describe the reforms in religion and morals. What good results followed from them?
6. Why was the commerce of the colonies restricted to Great Britain?

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. PRINCE CHARLIE. Henty, *Bonnie Prince Charlie*; Scott, *Red-gauntlet*; Morris, *Historic Tales, English*, pp. 260-279, 300-319.
2. GEORGE WHITEFIELD. Holt, *Out in the Forty-five*.
3. JOHN WESLEY. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 333-335; Yonge, *Cameos from English History*, IV., pp. 1-12.
4. THE SOUTH SEA BUBBLE. Wright, *Stories of American History*.
5. GIBRALTAR. Church, *Stories from English History*, III., Ch. XVI.
6. THE CABINET. Moran, *English Government*, chap. IV-X.

## B. THE STRUGGLE FOR EMPIRE.

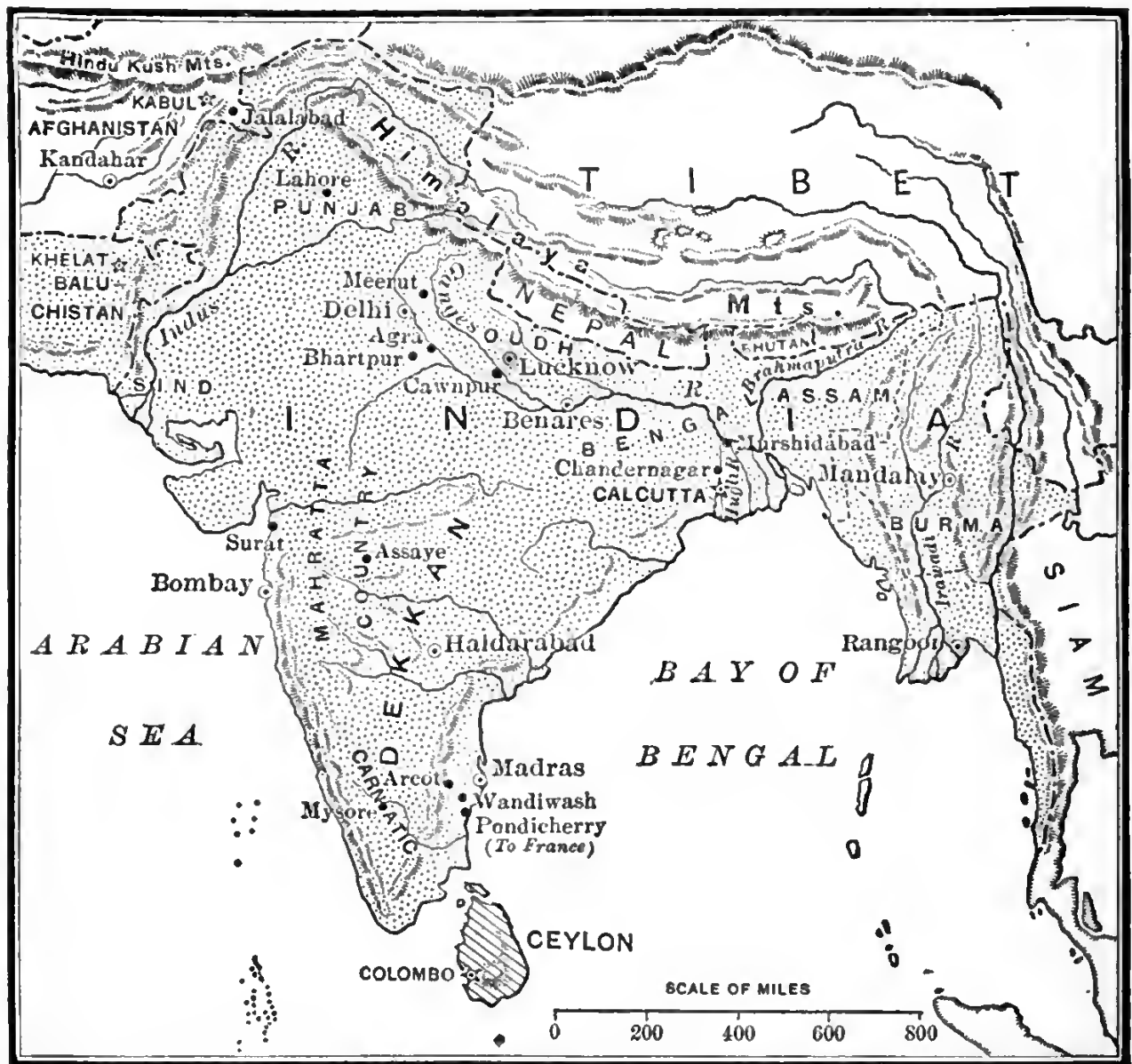
A Struggle for Empire was going on all over the world, wherever France and Great Britain had possessions. This struggle really lasted from 1744 till 1763.

In order to know what all the trouble was about, we must remember that since the discovery of America by Columbus, five nations of Europe, Portugal, Spain, Holland, England, and France, had sent out ships and colonists into every part of the world to settle and to engage in trade. At first there was room enough for all, but sooner or later jealousy and strife was sure to come.

Spain and Portugal were the first to begin a dispute over their respective claims. This was settled by a decision of the Pope, and by a treaty. A line was drawn across the map from north to south, giving to Portugal all new lands from Brazil east to the East Indies, and to Spain all of America except



Brazil. Next Holland, after gaining her independence from Spain about 1579, came into the field and soon became the greatest commercial nation in Europe. She outstripped the Portuguese in the East, seized Sumatra, Java, and other islands of the East Indies, besides parts of the coast of Africa, and came to control the larger part of the East Indian trade.



INDIA.

England and Spain fought long wars over the Western trade; but the English colonies were located in the north and those of Spain in the south, and did not fight each other very much. The English naval power proved too strong for Holland, but these two countries were usually friendly, and the power of the Dutch was too firmly established in the Indies

to be disturbed. In Africa and India, however, they were in the end driven out by the English.

The wars of France and England, at home and with each other, at first kept these nations from giving much attention to the settlement of new lands. But we have seen how, in the peaceful reign of Elizabeth, English merchants and explorers began to find their way into all parts of the world. France during the time of Louis XIV. had also made great progress in foreign trade and colonization. France and England were now, in the middle of the eighteenth century, the great rival powers, and the trial of their strength was to be made in India and America.

**French and English in India.** We have seen how the East India Company was founded near the end of Elizabeth's reign (p. 199). It now had trading posts or forts at Surat, Bombay, and Madras, on the eastern and western coasts of India, and at Calcutta, near the mouth of the Ganges. The Dutch, the Portuguese, and the French also held trading posts and were ambitious of power in India. While the first two nations wished only to trade, the French were eager to get control of the country, which as yet was almost entirely under the government of native princes.

About the time of the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle (p. 292), the French governor of Pondicherry, Dupleix, leagued with some of the native princes who were opposed to the English, captured Arcot, the capital of the Carnatic, and made his own candidate the nabob, or king, of that province. He drilled the Sepoys, or native soldiers, in the French fashion, and became so powerful that the Mogul emperor at Delhi appointed the Frenchman governor of the whole southwestern coast. It looked as though the French, and not the British, were destined to rule India.

**Robert Clive** was a clerk in the offices of the English East India Company at Madras. He was only twenty-one years of

age, but absolutely fearless. He once fought a duel with an officer whom he accused of cheating at cards. His antagonist, unhurt by Clive's bullet, stepped up and, holding a pistol at his head, demanded an apology. "Fire away," said Clive, "I said you cheated, and I still say it." The officer did not fire. Clive soon headed a small band of English against the French headquarters at Pondicherry, but failed to take it. After raising a force of 500 men, natives and English, he



WAR ELEPHANT.

attacked Arcot, a city of a hundred thousand people under French control. As he approached the town a terrible thunderstorm came on. The superstitious natives were afraid to fight during the storm, and the city surrendered without striking a blow.

**Siege of Arcot (1751).** The French, however, soon surrounded Arcot with an army of ten thousand men, and things looked desperate for

the two hundred English within the walls. For weeks they held out, until there was little food left.

On a great festival day, the natives led by the French made a fierce attack on the walls. Elephants whose heads were covered with iron plates butted against the gates. If they could not take the city on this day, it was certain they would not try again. Clive urged his men to fight. He

trained a piece of artillery on a raft which was crossing the moat before the town and killed all the men on it. At night the army gave up the siege and fled. They thought the man who could defy thunderstorms and holy days was in league with the devil, or perhaps with God himself. Clive had broken the alliance between the natives and the French, and had saved the English power in the Carnatic.

**The "Black Hole of Calcutta"** (1756). North of the British town of Calcutta, in the city of Murshidabad, lived a cruel and dissolute young prince, Surajah Dowlah. He thought that the English had great stores of treasure in their trading station at Calcutta, and led a great army to capture them. After he had bombarded the town for two days, the little company of one hundred and fifty men were forced to surrender. The surajah was dissatisfied at finding only fifty thousand rupees, and thought that the English had buried their money in some part of the town. To secure his prisoners for the night, he drove them at the point of the bayonet into a small dungeon which had but two small windows. In the hot Indian climate of midsummer, it would have been torture for a single prisoner to spend the night in such a place. For a hundred and forty-six it meant, for the larger number, death with all the agonies of heat, thirst, and suffocation. They struggled to the windows to get the air, and trod to death their companions who had fallen. "As the hours passed," says Macaulay, "the prisoners grew mad with despair; they trampled upon, and fought one another for the pittance of water which was allowed them; they raved, prayed, blasphemed, and called upon the guards to fire upon them. At length the tumult died away in low moans and quick gasping for breath. When daylight came and the dungeon was opened, the floor was heaped with the mutilated bodies of the dead. Of the whole number only twenty-three were alive, and those so changed that their own mothers would not

have known them." The one woman among the prisoners survived.

**The Battle of Plassey.** It was two months before the news of the "Black Hole" came to Madras. Clive, after a visit to England, had now returned to Madras, and to him was given the task of vengeance. He went to Calcutta with three thousand men. The surajah had fifty thousand. The battle of Plassey, fought near Murshidabad, the surajah's capital, in June, 1757, settled the strife. Part of the surajah's army deserted, and the remainder, 30,000, was totally defeated. The surajah was murdered by his own general, whom Clive placed upon the throne of Murshidabad. English supremacy was thus firmly established in the basin of the Ganges, the richest territory in India. To Robert Clive, more than any other man, Great Britain owes her Indian empire.

**French and English in America.** French colonies had been established along the St. Lawrence River, the Great Lakes, and the Mississippi, to the Gulf of Mexico. They stretched around the English colonies like a great bow of which the string was the Atlantic coast. The vast inland region between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi had been entered only by a few bold hunters and traders. Before 1750 it became evident that a struggle must soon come between the French and the English for the control of this interior region.

**The Ohio Land Company** was formed in 1749, composed of wealthy Virginians, to whom King George had granted a half million acres in the valley of the Ohio. Four years later, some surveyors and soldiers were sent to build a fort there and to survey and mark off the claims of the company. But they were driven off by the French, who completed their fort and named it Fort Duquesne.

The Virginians sent Washington with a small force the next year to recapture the fort. He surprised a company





of the French in the woods and defeated them, but later was compelled to surrender to superior numbers.

General Braddock was sent to America the next spring and again took the road to Fort Duquesne with a force of 1,500 men. A few miles from the fort he was badly defeated by a smaller force of French and Indians.

**The Seven Years' War** began in Europe in 1756, the year following Braddock's defeat. Austria, France, and Russia joined against Frederick the Great of Prussia. George II. made an alliance with Frederick and furnished him money and soldiers.

**Thomas Pelham**, Duke of Newcastle, became George's prime minister in 1754. While he could control votes in Par-



WILLIAM PITT.

liament, he could not manage a war. The only way he had of making appointments was to sell them to his friends. At the beginning of the war the French had slipped quietly over and captured the island of Minorca (p. 164). Admiral Byng, whom Newcastle had sent to defend it, considered the French too strong for him and withdrew. The people were enraged at the incapacity of Newcastle and at the failures in both Europe and America. To satisfy the popular feeling, Byng was arrested for cowardice and, after trial, was shot on the quarter-deck of his ship. A Frenchman wittily remarked that the "English were accustomed to shoot one admiral to encourage the rest." Newcastle, fearing that his head might be wanted also, resigned.

**William Pitt**, the greatest Englishman of his time, was now put at the head of affairs. He was one of the young men at whom Robert Walpole had sneered for opposing the buying of votes. He was one man that Walpole could not buy.



He had become famous in Parliament on account of his power in speaking. His influence was felt throughout the country. "No one ever talked with him," said one man, "who did not feel himself better and braver afterward." Frederick the Great, when he heard of Pitt's appointment, exclaimed, "England has at last produced a man!"

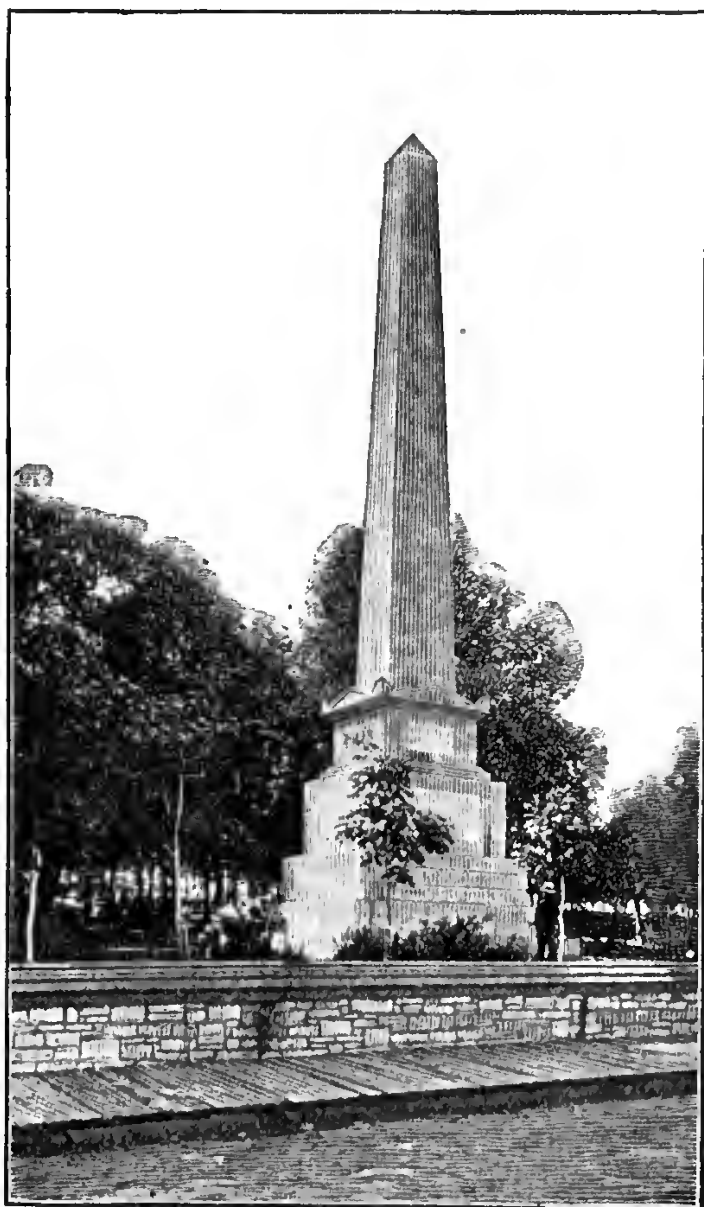
Pitt, however, did not control many votes in the House of Commons. Before long he and Newcastle formed a coalition. Pitt was to manage the wars, and Newcastle was to do the bribing and keep the support of Parliament. Pitt had great confidence in Frederick. He sent him 20,000 English soldiers and large amounts of money. Frederick was the greatest soldier of the age, and kept the French so busy on his western frontier that they could spare few soldiers for America. At Minden, one of the many battles of this war, six English regiments, through some mistake, were ordered to attack ten thousand French cavalry. Though the cavalry charged again and again, they were hurled back defeated, and a victory was won that was entirely unexpected. Said the French commander, "I have seen what I never thought possible, a single line of infantry break through three lines of cavalry ranked in order of battle and tumble them to ruin."

**The French and Indian War** in America had been going on at the same time with the wars in India and Europe. In the same year that Surajah Dowlah thrust the English prisoners into the Black Hole of Calcutta, Montcalm, the French commander in Canada, captured Fort Oswego in New York. Two years later (1758), with Pitt in power, the tide turned; the English at last took Fort Duquesne. The year 1759 saw the battle of Minden and the capture of Quebec by General Wolfe.

The secret of Pitt's success was his knowing how to choose the right man for the work in hand. When he sent General Wolfe to America, it was not because he wanted to get his

vote, but because he knew Wolfe could take Quebec if any one could.

The Capture of Quebec decided the war. Wolfe took his army there on a fleet that sailed up the St. Lawrence. But the city stands on a lofty rock and the river is bounded by high, steep cliffs. It was apparently impossible to get an



WOLFE MONUMENT AT QUEBEC.

army near enough to the city to begin the battle. Wolfe sailed up and down the river and at last discovered a path beginning at the river's edge and winding upward among the rocks until it reached the Plains of Abraham above. One dark night he placed his soldiers in boats and took them safely down to the place where the path began. A long line of soldiers began to climb upward. All the night they toiled up, and when day broke the French general looked out upon an English army before the walls of Quebec. Montcalm threw open the gates and led his troops

against the foe. A desperate battle was fought in which Montcalm and Wolfe were mortally wounded. As the English general lay on the ground, he heard some one cry, "They run, they run!"

"Who run?" said he, lifting his head.

"The French," was the answer.

"Then," said he, "I die happy."

**The Treaty of Paris**, signed in 1763, made this year the most important in the whole history of the British Empire; for it gave her control of India and half of North America, and established her as "Mistress of the Seas." France was compelled to give to England Canada and the territory east of the Mississippi. She agreed also to keep no military force in India, keeping only the right to trade, and lost besides four of her West India islands.

**George II.** Died in the height of England's prosperity (1760), when the news of victories was so constant that Horace Walpole said, "We must ask every morning what new victory has been won, for fear we may miss hearing of one." His eldest son having died before him, the throne descended to his grandson.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What were the causes of the war with France?
2. In what way did these wars grow out of trade?
3. Compare Pitt's rule with that of Newcastle.
4. In what ways did England acquire possessions in India?
5. How do you explain the English victories? How did they affect the position of England as a commercial nation?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. **ARCOT AND PLASSEY.** Church, *Stories from English History*; Henty, *With Clive in India*.
2. **WOLFE AT QUEBEC.** Church, *Stories from English History*, pp. 573-580; Fitchett, *Deeds that Won the Empire*, pp. 13-26.
3. **WILLIAM PITT.** Mowry, *First Steps in the History of England*, Ch. XXII.; Rosebery, *Pitt*.
4. **THE BLACK HOLE OF CALCUTTA.** Macaulay, *Essay on Clive*.
5. **ROBERT CLIVE.** Macaulay, *Essay on Clive*; Henty, *With Clive in India*.

## XI. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER (CONTINUED).

### A. THE LOSS OF THE AMERICAN COLONIES.

#### George III., 1760-1820.

The New King had the advantage of not being a foreigner. "Born and educated in this land," said George in his first speech to Parliament, "I glory in the name of Briton." His tutor, Lord Bute, a Scotchman, had educated him to believe that an English king ought to have far greater power than his grandfather had enjoyed.



GEORGE III.

His mother, too, disliked the party rule that had grown up in England, and would say to him, "George, be king!" meaning that he should take the direction of affairs himself. Pitt was compelled to resign, because he could not persuade the Cabinet to declare war on Spain in 1761. Newcastle also was soon induced to resign, leaving Bute prime minister.

But Bute became so distasteful to the Parliament because he was a Scot, and because he did not believe in the old system of bribery, that he too soon resigned.

The King's Plan was to break down the power that the Whigs had had, and to choose his Cabinet from both parties if he saw fit to do so. The Tories had lost their influence because they had favored the Pretender and opposed the House of Hanover; but now that no Stuart could any longer hope for the throne, they had become as loyal as the Whigs, and were entitled to a share in the government.

**George Grenville** became prime minister in 1766. He was the author of the famous Stamp Act, the first attempt made by Parliament to raise money by taxing the American colonies.

**The Growth of the Thirteen Colonies** had been steady and rapid. Their population was nearly three millions. They had a flourishing commerce. Tobacco, rice, indigo, and the products of the pine forests, were the exports from the South; iron, fish, rum, lumber, and ships, from the North. Agriculture was profitable. By law they were allowed to trade only with Great Britain, but they had a large commerce with Holland and France, carried on through the West Indian possessions of these countries. The governments of the colonies were much alike. In every one there was a body of men elected by the people, called usually the Assembly. This body had the sole power to levy taxes. The governors were elected by the people in two colonies, appointed by the king in eight, and by the proprietor in the three colonies that still had proprietors.

The colonists had learned to fight during the colonial wars. More than forty thousand of them had become experienced soldiers, and many were excellent leaders. Since the French colonies had been conquered, they had no longer a dangerous white foe on their borders, and they did not feel the need of England's protection so much as before.

**The Stamp Act.** England had a large public debt. Since William III. founded the Bank of England, the country had



BRITISH SOLDIER.

been borrowing money. The last war had been especially expensive, because so much money had been given to Frederick. Grenville said that this war had been fought on account of the American colonies, and that they ought to pay for it, or at least ought to support part of the British army. The colonists argued that they had furnished nearly all the soldiers who fought in America, had paid more than their share of the expense, and did not need the protection of a British army. But Grenville had the Stamp Act passed (1765), which said that all newspapers, and law papers, such as wills, marriage licenses, deeds, and leases, must be written or printed on stamped paper purchased from the British government. The money thus raised was to support British soldiers stationed in the colonies. But the colonists drove away the stamp agents and resisted the tax. They said they sent no members to Parliament and therefore Parliament had no right to tax them.

In England the colonists had many friends. For centuries the English people had fought kings for the sole right of taxing themselves, and should they now refuse that right to the English in America? Among these friends, William Pitt was the leader. He made an eloquent speech in favor of repealing the Stamp Act. "Taxation and representation," he said, "go hand in hand." He argued that the country would lose the trade of the Americans, and perhaps the colonies too, if it tried to tax them. Most Englishmen applauded him when he said, "I rejoice that America has resisted; three millions of people, so dead to all the feelings of liberty as willingly to submit to be slaves, would be fit instruments to make slaves of all the rest."

Parliament finally repealed the Stamp Act, and Grenville, having quarreled with the king, resigned.

**A New Tax** was imposed on the colonies in 1767 at the suggestion of Charles Townshend, who had become one

of the "king's friends," as those men were now called who supported George in his efforts to "be king." This was an import tax on glass, paints, paper, and tea. The colonists had always admitted the right of Parliament to regulate trade in the British Empire by means of such duties on imports, but they saw that the object of Townshend's tax was not to regulate trade, but to raise money, and they were already angry over the Stamp Act. They refused, therefore, to buy any British goods till the tax should be repealed. The English merchants then urged Parliament to repeal the tax, and it soon did so, on all the articles except tea.

An English company now sent several shiploads of tea to America, but the colonists refused to allow it to be landed, and when there was no other way to keep the tea out of Boston, a party of men went on board the tea ships at night, and threw the tea into the harbor (1773).

**The Port of Boston** was now ordered closed until the people should pay for the tea that they had destroyed. Parliament also took away from Massachusetts some of the rights given to her by her charter, and it sent soldiers to Boston and compelled the people to support them.

**The English People**, it must be remembered, did not want such laws made. The House of Commons at this time did not truly represent the people. There were only one hundred and sixty thousand people, of a population of eight millions, that had the right to vote. The Tories and the king's friends bought up the elections just as Walpole and the Whigs had done; and if a member got into the House who would not support them they made it very unpleasant for him.

**The Case of John Wilkes** shows the situation. The people of Middlesex had elected him; but, as he had condemned the policy of the king, the Tories in the House voted that his opponent was elected, although this opponent



had received only a few votes. This led to riots all over England. The people of London declared that the House of Commons no longer represented the people. Many large towns, like Manchester and Birmingham, had no representatives at all, while many small towns, called "rotten boroughs," had two each. When Englishmen told the Americans that they were as well represented in Parliament as many cities in England, James Otis replied, "Don't talk to me about those towns! If they are not represented, they ought to be." And the Whigs in England applauded.

**The Arguments on Both Sides** were something like this. The king and the Tories held that the colonies belonged to the crown, which had rightfully seized heathen lands and



A MINUTEMAN.

given them to certain individuals and companies, with the understanding that they could do nothing contrary to the king's will. The king had the right to make any laws he chose for them. "The only use of colonies," said one Englishman, "is to buy our goods and to furnish freight for our ships." The colonies had no rights except those that the king chose to give them.

The colonists claimed that America was an expansion of the mother country, and had the same rights; that it was the right of English people to be taxed only by their own representatives.

In England, the king had at last got the government entirely into his own hands. Lord North, who became prime minister in 1770, did exactly as the king wished. From this time until the close of the War of the Revolution, George was really *King* of England.

**Beginning of the American Revolution.** Preparations for war went on rapidly in the colonies after the port of

Boston was closed. Companies of "minutemen" were drilled in every town, and stores of ammunition were collected. In April, 1775, the British general in Boston sent some soldiers to destroy the military stores at Concord; on their way they fired upon some minutemen at Lexington; and at Concord and on their way back they were attacked so fiercely that they were saved from destruction only by prompt reinforcements. The British were now besieged in Boston and in June was fought the battle of Bunker Hill, in which part of the besieging force twice repulsed a British attack, but was finally driven back. The siege continued and the next year the British were compelled to leave the city.

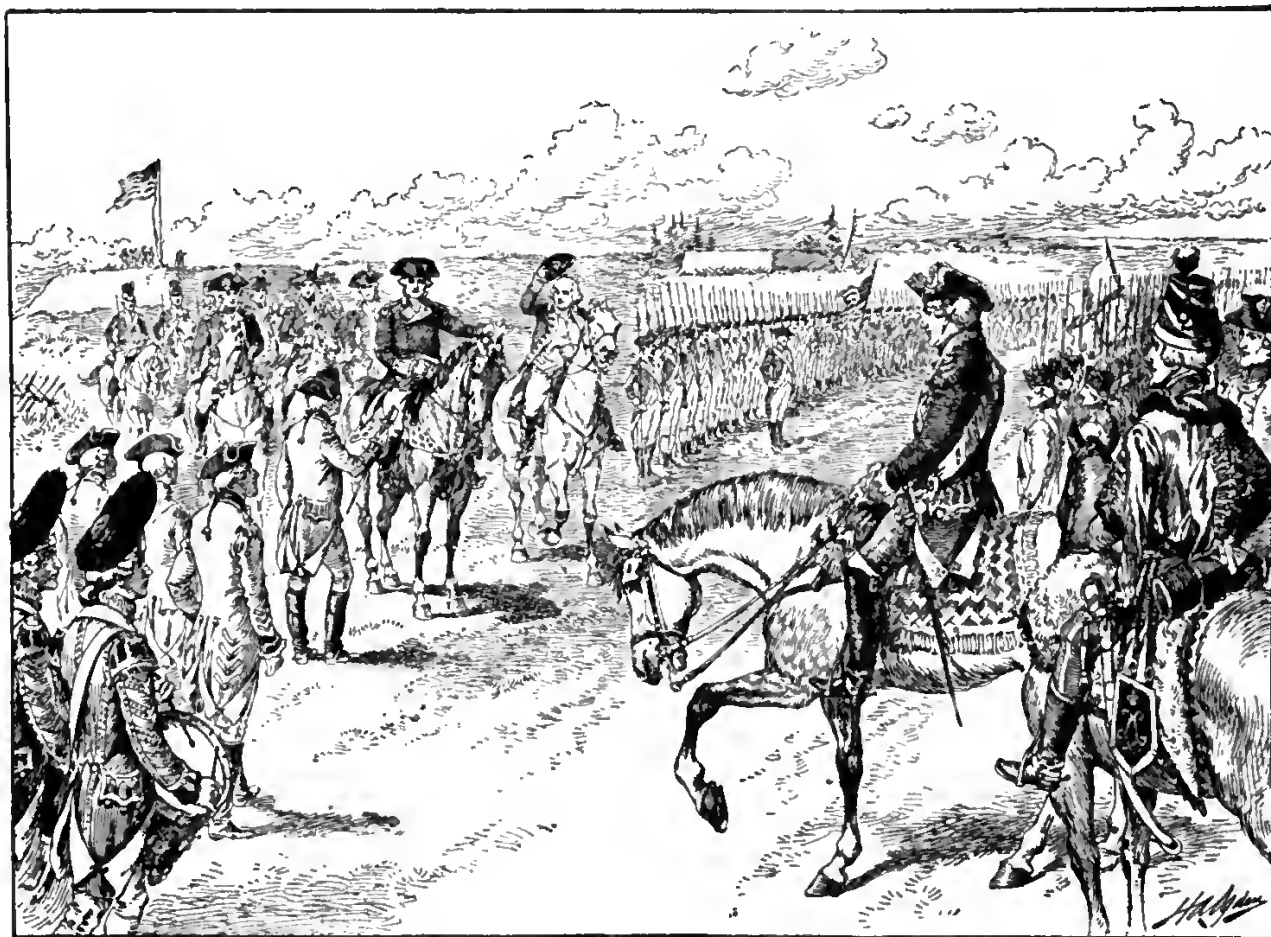
**Declaration of Independence.** Meanwhile a congress of delegates from all the colonies had met in Philadelphia (May, 1775), voted money for war, and elected George Washington commander in chief of the Continental Army. In July, 1776, all the colonies having voted in favor of separation from the British Empire, Congress adopted a formal Declaration of Independence.

**War in the Middle States** began in 1776. The British, under Howe, seized New York in the summer, after defeating Washington in the battle of Brooklyn; and drove the American army beyond the Delaware. The next year it was planned that the British general Burgoyne should come down from Canada, and that Howe should ascend the Hudson to meet him. This river was to be held, and the New England colonies thus cut off from the rest. But Howe decided first to capture Philadelphia; and Burgoyne, when he reached Saratoga, was surrounded and forced to surrender.

**The War in the South** was the last stage of the Revolution. The British, defeated in New England and in New York, now aimed to regain the Southern colonies, where the Tory party was strong. At first they were successful, and for a time there were again royal governors of Georgia and

South Carolina. In 1780, however, a strong force of British and Tories was destroyed in the battle of Kings Mountain; and after many more fierce fights the British were driven out again.

**France Aids the United States.** Meanwhile, France had been carefully watching the struggle of the Americans.



THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

When she received the news of Burgoyne's surrender, she decided that the time had come to get revenge for her loss of Canada. In 1778 she made a treaty of alliance with the colonies, and sent fleets, armies, and money to help them. The next year Spain also declared war against England, hoping to get back Gibraltar and Florida, which England had acquired in 1763. War also broke out in India, at Haidarabad and Mysore (map, p. 298); in western Africa, and in the West Indies. Thus not only was the alliance

of France with America directly helpful to the Americans, but England, being obliged to fight everywhere at once, could not send so many men to America as she otherwise might. More than 300,000 British soldiers were on duty in various parts of the world; but when Washington forced the surrender of the British army under Cornwallis, at Yorktown (1781), though it numbered only 7,000, England could not replace the loss. When Lord North received the news, he threw up his hands and cried, "It is all over," and gave up his office. George III. announced to the House of Lords in December, 1782, that he acknowledged the independence of the United States.

Edmund Burke and William Pitt had urged Lord North and the king to repeal the laws against Massachusetts. But Pitt died in the House of Commons in 1778, and Burke made his great "Conciliation Speech" in vain. "It is intolerable," said Fox, another distinguished member of Parliament, referring to Lord North, "that it should be in the power of one blockhead to do so much mischief." But the mischief was done.

**The Treaty of Versailles**, made in 1783, acknowledged the independence of the United States. Spain got back Florida and Minorca; France the most of her settlements in India, Africa, and the West Indies. England thus lost more than she had gained under the splendid rule of William Pitt, which had resulted in triumph at Quebec and Plassey. George had realized his desire to "be king," but had lost a large part of his dominions.

**Religious Riots** broke out in England near the close of the American war. In the time of William III., when there was fear of a Stuart invasion, many unjust laws were made against Catholics. The celebration of Catholic worship was condemned as high treason. Catholics were not allowed to inherit or to acquire property. These laws were repealed

in England in 1778, but Protestant societies were formed to secure their reënactment. A half-crazy religious fanatic, named George Gordon, led 50,000 men to petition Parliament to restore the laws, but the petitioners soon became a lawless mob. They began to burn Catholic chapels; then they burned other chapels; finally they burned and plundered whatever they pleased. Prisons were broken open, and the prisoners released. Every man who wanted to be safe had to wear the blue Protestant ribbon and chalk "No Popery" on his door. The government foolishly allowed the mob to go on unchecked for eight days. Lord Amherst was then ordered to attack the rioters. A few volleys of musketry and a bayonet charge soon cleared the streets, but five hundred of the mob were killed or wounded.

**In India**, the East India Company partly made good the losses that England suffered in America. In 1772 Warren Hastings was made governor of Bengal, and two years later the first governor-general of British India. He established the rule of the company in Bengal, defeated the Mahrattas, or native Hindus, and conquered the able Mohammedan leader, Hyder Ali, in the Carnatic.

To raise money for these wars, Hastings plundered some native princes and committed other acts for which he was impeached and tried before the House of Lords. Some of the greatest English statesmen and lawyers of the time, Burke, Fox, and Sheridan, made speeches against him. But the good work he had done towards securing India for England was an excuse for all his faults, and he was acquitted.

**A Bill for the Government of India** was made a law in 1784. A trading company had accidentally come into possession of a part of India, and was ruling over many millions of people. The appointment of the governor-general was now transferred to the Cabinet, but the details of the government were left to the company, subject to the will of a board of

control composed of the king's ministers. The company was to keep all the rights and privileges of trade. In this way India continued to be governed for many years.

**When England Lost the Thirteen Colonies**, many statesmen thought that she would never be so great a nation as before; but the separation proved to be an advantage to both countries. England's foolish laws for restricting the trade and manufactures of the colonies were wiped away by their independence. But now that the colonies were free, they began to buy more English goods than ever, because they had more money with which to buy them; and England found to her great surprise that she made more money out of the new republic than she had made out of the old colonies.

**Adam Smith**, a Scotchman, published in 1776 a book called "The Wealth of Nations." This book had a great influence in reforming English notions about commerce, both with her colonies and with foreign countries. English people had always thought that the more gold and silver they could keep in the country, the richer they were. But Smith proved that the wealth of a country does not depend so much on money as upon the number of sheep and the bushels of grain produced, and upon the number of useful things manufactured.

People had always thought that it was a loss for the nation to buy goods in France, that the French could make more cheaply than the English. The English government would not allow the Irish to sell linen and woolen goods in England, because the Irish sold them cheaper than the English people could make them. Adam Smith said that the country should make the things that it could make most cheaply; that it should buy linen in Ireland, and silk in France, if these goods were cheaper there than in England. If England could make iron and steel, cotton and woolen goods, at less expense than other countries, she should make



these things. This, he said, would make every country richer.

**William Pitt the Younger**, who became the king's chief minister in 1783, thought there was much truth in what Smith said. He believed that a nation that keeps its customers poor, as England had done, can not sell them so many goods. He made a new treaty with France, lowering the rates of duty so that there could be trade between the two countries. The duty on French goods had been so high that English merchants could not buy them. This had led to a vast amount of smuggling, which was very hard to stop. When the duty was made low, the smuggling stopped and the government began to get an income, because merchants could now buy the goods and afford to pay the duty. A similar arrangement was made with the other countries of Europe, and with the West Indies. An attempt was made also to take off all the duties on Irish goods, but the English merchants and manufacturers made such a strong opposition that it could not be done. The Irish Parliament had agreed to the plan of free trade between the two countries; but when the British Parliament proposed a half-way measure, the Irish rejected it.

**Two Great Evils** now needed to be cured. The old system of bribery, by which the king and a few political leaders kept control of the government, ought to be done away with; and more people ought to have the right to vote. As it was, a few people chose the House of Commons. Since it was easier to buy a few men than to buy many, the Cabinet did not wish a change. At one time in Great Britain, thirty-two men had the power to choose seventy-two members. In the Irish Parliament, also, twenty-five men controlled one hundred and sixteen seats, and the British ministers one hundred and eighty-six.

In such a state of affairs the people had little power. They



were beginning now to demand a change. Pitt proposed to take away the representatives from the "rotten boroughs" in Great Britain and give them to the larger towns; but the Parliament would not listen to such a proposal and it was not done until 1832.

**Prohibition of the Slave Trade.** The evils of the slave trade also began to receive attention. The Quakers had petitioned against it in 1783. A young man named Thomas Clarkson had written a book describing the horrible treatment that the slaves received. It is estimated that as many as 50,000 were seized in Africa every year, and carried off to be sold in America. They were crowded into ships, chained and packed away on shelves like merchandise. A bill to prohibit the slave trade was passed by the Commons three times, but each time the House of Lords refused to pass it. Finally in 1807 the slave trade was prohibited. Success was largely due to William Wilberforce, a member of Parliament who devoted his whole life to the cause of the slave. The law did not abolish slavery; it only said that the buying of slaves in Africa must stop.

**These Measures of Reform** began with the people, whom Pitt represented. The merchant and trading classes were becoming rich and powerful in England. The press had become a very great power. The doings of Parliament were now printed in the newspapers, and people were free to speak their minds. Wilkes (p. 311) and an unknown author who signed the name "Junius" to his letters, had written harsh criticisms on King George and his "friends." An effort to punish Wilkes failed; the people were determined to sustain the freedom of the press. They wanted to know what their government was doing. The Parliament, knowing that the people were keeping close watch of them, were more careful to do what was desired, and in most cases the voice of the people was right.

**Farming, Manufacturing, and Transportation** were wonderfully improved during the first half of the reign of George III. It was not her colonies that made England the greatest industrial country in the world, but the genius of the people who knew how to make use of the products of these colonies. During this period, the people also improved their methods of farming and of stock raising. A country can not have a large population unless enough food can be procured to feed them.

A large part of the land at the end of the eighteenth century consisted of waste moorlands and swamps, affording only a scanty pasturage. People began to cut ditches through the wet land and drain it, so that it could be plowed, planted, and cultivated. A Yorkshire miner, named James Croft, set a good example to farmers by fencing eight acres of moorland, thought to be worthless. But Croft dug out the stones and filled up the holes with soil; he brought marl and fertilized it, and found that it was excellent land.

A farmer named Robert Bakewell learned how to breed cattle and sheep so that he could get twice as much beef or mutton from a single animal as before. By keeping only the largest and finest animals, he soon had better flocks and herds than any of his neighbors. His methods were imitated until England came to produce some of the finest breeds of cattle and sheep in the world.

But means of transportation, good roads and canals, are necessary if the farmers and others are to find a market for their products. When the United States became independent in 1776, it had better means of getting from place to place than England had. There was no better way to carry goods on land, than in carts and on the backs of horses; and the roads were so bad that even this could be done easily only at certain times.

**Canal Building in England** came about in this way. The

young Duke of Bridgewater had valuable coal beds on his estate, situated nine miles from the large city of Manchester. If he could get the coal to the city it would find a ready market; but the expense of taking it there in carts over the bad roads was more than the coal was worth. The duke had in his employ a millwright, James Brindley, who thought a canal could be made. The canal would have to go through tunnels, across valleys, and over rivers. Such an undertaking had never been dreamed of. The most famous engineers in England only laughed at Brindley. But he went to work and built the canal. People came from far and near to see the work. They said that Brindley "handled rocks as easily as a boy would a plum pie at Christmas." It was finished and was a success.

Once started, canal building went on, until the chief rivers and cities were connected by three thousand miles of navigable canals. The great coal and iron deposits could now be brought together. Iron working had stopped when the wood in the neighborhood of the mines was exhausted. But soon it was found that hard coal could be used, as well as charcoal, for smelting iron ore. Now that the canals made it possible to transport the heavy coal and iron, England became the greatest iron-manufacturing country in the world.

**Three Great Inventions** connected with cloth making were the beginning of the great factories for which England has long been noted. James Hargreaves was a weaver living near Blackburn. His daughters were the "spinsters" who supplied the woof for his loom. In the old-fashioned wheel then in use only one thread could be spun at a time. A large wheel was turned with the hand, and the thread was spun on a horizontal spindle. One day a wheel in motion was accidentally upset so that the spindle stood perpendicularly. Hargreaves noticed that the wheel continued to spin. He then constructed a wheel which he called a "spinning

jenny," in which the spindles were vertical and which would spin eight threads at once, thus doing as much work as eight persons could do in the old way. For a time he kept it secret, but at last his jealous fellow-weavers, hearing of his invention, broke into his house and destroyed it. But they could not destroy his idea. He built another and took out a patent; and in a short time every weaver in the county had a "spinning jenny."

A similar story could be told of the barber, Richard Arkwright, who invented an improved spinning machine in 1769; and of Samuel Crompton, the inventor of the "spinning mule." Crompton and his wife worked in secret and had a dark loft to conceal the "mule" in case of trouble. When his neighbors saw that his yarn commanded a higher price than theirs, they wanted to get into his house and learn his secret. When he could keep it no longer, he gave his invention to the public. The manufacturers, to whom he gave it, agreed to pay him for it, but he never received more than \$500 for a machine worth hundreds of thousands of dollars.

Edmund Cartwright's invention of the power loom, near the close of the century, completed the machinery for cloth making. In 1807 Parliament gave him £10,000 for his invention. There were then 2,000 looms in Great Britain. In 1833 there were 100,000. Twenty years later there were 350,000. These figures show the progress of cloth making. ✕

**James Watt** made the greatest invention of all, for it furnished the power to move all the machines we have mentioned. In 1763 he was an instrument maker in the College of Glasgow. A toy called an "atmospheric engine" was given him to repair, and out of it Watt made the steam engine. The toy that Watt took to repair consisted of a cylinder in which the piston was forced upward by steam. Then a jet of water was turned on, condensing the steam, and the pressure of the atmosphere forced the piston down. But the cold

water not only condensed the steam, but cooled the cylinder, so that the steam entering the cylinder the second time was partly condensed and wasted. Watt made a cylinder in which the steam was made to enter first above and then below the piston, the pipes being opened and closed at the proper moment by an automatic sliding valve. The used steam was pumped out into a tank of cold water to be condensed. He covered the cylinder with felt to keep it hot, and thus prevented loss. He invented the governor, a mechanism for keeping the speed of an engine uniform.

The North of England was turned, from a rude and barren country, into a very hive of industry by the steam engine.

Before this, the south had been the place where new ideas sprang up. The north had been the source of rebellion and ignorance. It had been frequently turned into a desert to subdue the restless inhabitants. Now, the great coal and iron mines have made it the chief manufacturing part of Britain, and Newcastle, Manchester, Liverpool, and Sheffield are great and flourishing



WATT DISCOVERING THE POWER  
OF STEAM.

cities. All of this was made possible by the invention of James Watt, who began to study steam when as a boy he watched the vibration of the cover on his mother's teakettle as it simmered and sang on the kitchen hearth.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did the personal rule of George III. bring on the American Revolution?
2. In what ways did the French alliance help the Americans?
3. How can you explain the "Gordon Riots"?
4. Was the loss of the American colonies an advantage or a loss to England? Explain your answer.
5. What were Adam Smith's ideas about trade? How far were they true?
6. How do the industries of a country depend upon easy transportation?
7. Show the importance of Watt's invention.
8. How did the inventions of this period affect the English people?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. HYDER ALI. Bright, *History of England*, Vol. III. (see index); Sarkar, *History of India*.
2. WARREN HASTINGS. Macaulay, *Essay on Hastings*; Hume, *History of England* (Student's Series), pp. 636-642.
3. HARGREAVES, ARKWRIGHT, CROMPTON, AND CARTWRIGHT. Smiles, *Self-Help*.
4. BRINDLEY AND WATT. Smiles, *Lives of the Engineers*.

### B. FROM THE FRENCH REVOLUTION TO THE PEACE OF AMIENS, 1789-1802.

**The French Revolution** marks the uprising of the people against kings. In the days of William the Conqueror, the nobles shared the powers of government with the king. Then the nobles were gradually put down and kings arose, like Louis XIV. and Henry VIII., who had absolute power. Against this power of the king, the people of England rose in 1641-1649, when they put King Charles to death and established the Commonwealth. Again in 1688 they drove

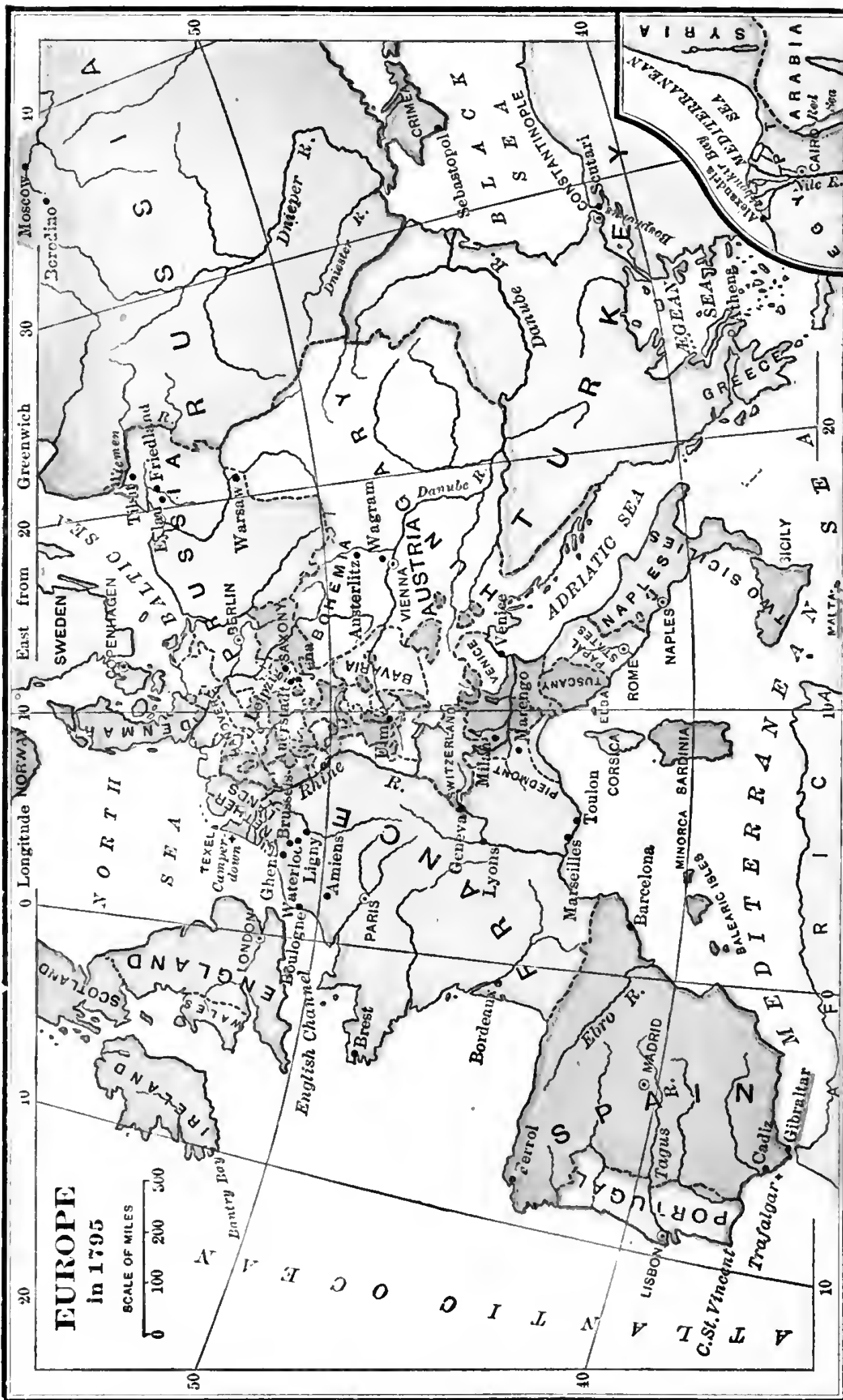


James II. out of the country, and established William and Mary on the throne. In 1776, the Americans revolted against George III., who attempted to get back the power that other kings had given up. And now, in 1789, comes a great revolution of the French people against their king Louis XVI. This event is important in the study of English history, because it had a great influence on England.

The French people had long been taxed heavily and unfairly, while the French nobles and clergy were untaxed. The people had no share in the government, and were despised by the king and nobles. But French soldiers returning from the American war, filled with the spirit of liberty, helped to rouse them to assert their rights. The government, on account of its lack of money, was forced to call together the States General, including the nobles, the clergy, and representatives of the people; they had not met for more than 200 years before this. The representatives soon took matters into their own hands, put to death the king and his young queen Marie Antoinette, massacred or drove out of the country all those who favored the old form of government, and established a republic. The rule of the republican leaders was marked by a "reign of terror," during which many thousands of people were arrested and put to death. Finally the people rose against these leaders, and a new government of five men, called the "Directory," was set up in 1795. This proved displeasing to the Paris mob, who wanted to return to the old days of "terror," and 40,000 of them advanced to attack the convention that was forming the new government. The task of defending it was entrusted to a young artillery officer named Napoleon Bonaparte. Napoleon planted cannon at the corners of the streets leading to the hall where the convention was sitting, and when the mob approached mowed them down with grapeshot. The new government was established.

**The English People** had at first looked upon the revo-





lution with favor. They thought that the French would establish an orderly parliamentary government like their own. But the French had been for centuries without any share in the government, and they knew only how to destroy, not how to build up. The French republicans not only wanted a free government for themselves, but gave notice that they would establish republics throughout Europe. They began war on the neighboring nations. They boasted that they would send 50,000 men to England to help the republicans there to put down the king. They declared war against England in 1793, and seized the Austrian Netherlands (formerly Spanish), after defeating an English army there. This broke a treaty which had been made by France and was a reason why England should declare war. Another very important reason was that the spread of French rule interfered with English commerce.

**The English Plans of War** provided for the command of the sea and the defense of the coast against invasion. Napoleon had become commander in chief of the French armies. He defeated the Austrians, drove them out of Italy, and forced them to make a treaty of peace. Prussia also was frightened into making peace. Spain and Holland had joined France, for they saw in the strength of the new French republic an ally against their great rival, England. England therefore stood forth alone against France and her allies.

**The Battle of St. Vincent** prevented the invasion of England. A Spanish fleet was coming out of the Mediterranean to join the French and Dutch vessels for an attack on the English coast. As it was rounding the southern point of Portugal, it was met by Sir John Jarvis and Commodore Nelson with fifteen vessels. Nine Spanish ships were cut off from the main body. The rest were attacked, and four of them were captured. When Nelson boarded one of them, the

Spanish officers crowded about, and gave up so many swords to him that he had to give them to one of his men to hold, who went away with an armful.

**Two Serious Mutinies** broke out in the English navy at this time (1797). The first began at Spithead near Portsmouth. The sailors had just cause for complaint. The rations furnished them were very bad, and sometimes they could



AN ENGLISH  
SAILOR.

not get even bad food, because the officers appointed to provision the ships would manage to keep part of the money. The rate of wages was not enough to support them. Besides this, the discipline was brutal; men were flogged for trifling causes and hung up by the heels for serious offenses. The sailors now refused to work until they should receive better food, better wages, and better treatment. Lord Howe, a great favorite with the sailors, went among them and told them that their grievances should be remedied. When the sailors were convinced that the Admiralty meant to do what Lord Howe

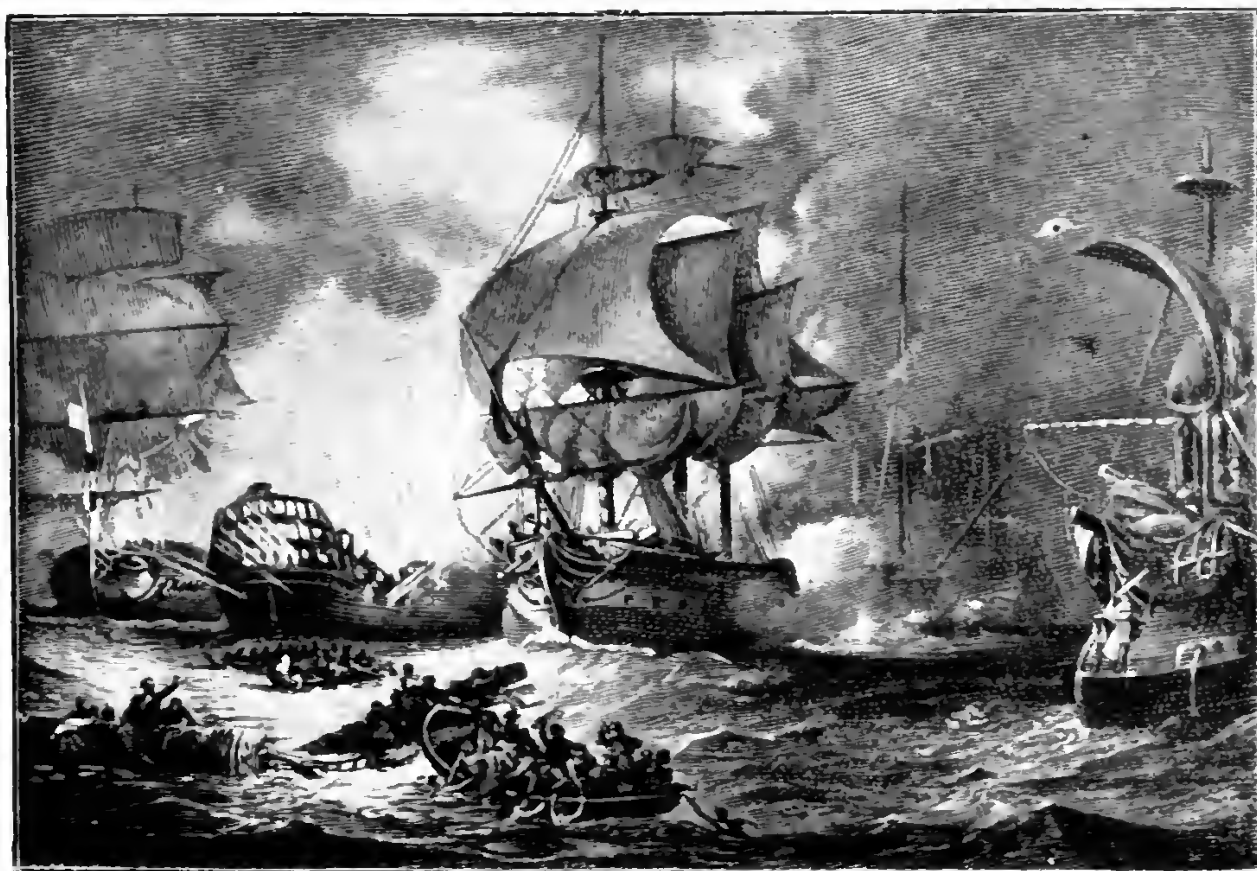
promised, they returned to their duty and there was no more trouble.

**The Second Mutiny** was at the Nore, in the mouth of the Thames. Under the lead of a disorderly man named Parker, the sailors not only demanded all that had been granted to the sailors at Spithead, but wanted to choose their own commanders and run the ships to suit themselves. The fleet of Admiral Duncan, who was watching the Dutch fleet at the Texel, also mutinied. The Dutch fleet was planning to attack the English coast, and it was a time of great danger. All Duncan's ships but one sailed away and joined the mutineers; but he managed to make the Dutch think his fleet was still near by running up signals from time to time, pre-

tending to keep up communication with it. Finally Parker was caught and hanged. The other sailors were treated fairly; their just demands were granted, and only a few of them were punished.

**The Battle of Camperdown** was fought as soon as Duncan got his ships together again. Camperdown is on the Dutch coast. The English admiral ran his ships between the Dutch fleet and the shore, to prevent their escape. He then attacked them and came off with twelve prizes. There was no more fear of a Dutch invasion. The French fleet was soon to meet the same fate. )

**Napoleon Bonaparte**, after winning a great reputation by victories over the Austrians, now formed the plan of attacking England through her Indian colonies. In 1798 he took



THE BATTLE OF THE NILE.

a large army and fleet to Egypt and made himself master of the country. Egypt commanded the Red Sea and the eastern Mediterranean. Having possession of it, France could send

ships down the Red Sea and across the Indian Ocean to India in far less time than England could send ships around the Cape of Good Hope.

Bonaparte's fleet had seized the island of Malta on its way to Egypt, and was now at Aboukir Bay, near one of the mouths of the Nile. Nelson had been watching for it, sailing up and down the Mediterranean. At length he sighted it off the Egyptian coast.

**The Battle of the Nile** was a repetition of Admiral Duncan's stratagem at the Texel. Nelson boldly sailed with half of his fleet between the French ships and the shore. By this means he prevented their escape. He attacked in the evening, and all night the battle raged. When morning came eleven French ships had been taken or destroyed. Only two came off safe. Napoleon himself soon returned to France, and two years later, in 1801, the French army was defeated by the English at the battle of Alexandria, and compelled to leave the country. Thus Napoleon's grand scheme for striking a blow at India by way of Egypt came to nothing.

**In India**, also, during this time, the English had been successful. Tippoo Sahib, Hyder Ali's son and successor, relying upon French aid, had begun an attack on the English in the Carnatic. But General Harris pursued him to his capital, which he took by assault. Tippoo was killed, and part of the kingdom of Mysore, with an immense amount of silver, gold, and jewels, fell into the hands of the English. From this time on the English power in India increased rapidly. It was only a few years before Arthur Wellesley defeated the Mahrattas in the bloody battle of Assaye (1803), and brought all the Mahratta Country under British control.

**Napoleon's Return to Paris** (November, 1799) found the Directory in confusion. He caused a new government to be formed, consisting of three men called "consuls." Napoleon became the First Consul. He soon conceived the idea of con-

quering all Europe. He at once crossed the Alps with 40,000 men and defeated the Austrians in the battle of Marengo. The Emperor Francis I. was compelled to make a peace which extended the boundary of France to the Rhine, and made changes in Italy and the Netherlands.

**The Battle of the Baltic (1801).** During the Revolutionary War in America, England claimed the right to stop the vessels of neutral nations on the high seas and search them, to see whether they were carrying any war supplies for America. The neutral nations Holland, Russia, Sweden, and Denmark joined in a league, called the Armed Neutrality, to resist this search. As England continued to search vessels, Russia, Sweden, and Denmark, in 1801, refused to allow any English vessels or property to enter or leave their ports. England upon this began war. Sir Hyde Parker and Nelson were sent with a fleet to destroy the ships of the league.

The Danish fleet was assembled at Copenhagen. The approach to the harbor, at the entrance of which the fleet was drawn up, was defended by six hundred guns. The channels leading up to the harbor were narrow and dangerous. Nelson chose the more dangerous one, because it was less strongly defended. Three of the twelve British ships that made the attack went aground, but with the nine remaining ones he sailed close up to the Danish line. Of all his battles Nelson said this was the fiercest. So doubtful was the contest that Admiral Parker hoisted the signal to discontinue action; but Nelson's signal for "close action" was flying. When an officer called his attention to the admiral's signal, he put his telescope to his blind eye and said, "I really can not see the signal." "Leave off action!" he muttered, "I'll be hanged if I do!" and turning to the officer, he said, "Foley, mind you keep my signal up!"

After four hours, the Danish fire slackened. Half their ships were wrecked; their flagship was on fire and soon blew



up. Nelson sent a messenger on shore, offering a truce, which the Danes were glad to accept. You may imagine the joy with which England received the news of this victory. The poet Thomas Campbell has written a stirring ballad about it.

Of Nelson and the North,  
Sing the glorious day's renown,  
When to battle fierce came forth  
All the might of Denmark's crown,  
And her arms along the deep proudly shone.  
By each gun the lighted brand  
In a bold, determined hand,  
And the Prince of all the land  
Led them on.

Like leviathans afloat  
Lay their bulwarks on the brine,  
While the sign of battle flew  
On the lofty British line :  
It was ten of April morn by the chime :  
As they drifted on their path,  
There was silence deep as death,  
And the boldest held his breath  
For a time.

\* \* \*

Again! again! again!  
And the havoc did not slack,  
Till a feeble cheer the Dane  
To our cheering sent us back;  
Their shots along the deep slowly boom,  
Then cease — and all is wail,  
As they strike the shattered sail;  
Or in conflagration pale  
Light the gloom.

The battle of the Baltic settled the war against the Armed Neutrality. The Swedish fleet declined to fight and sailed away, while Nelson went on to attack the Russians. But the accession of a new czar, Alexander I., changed the policy of Russia. He was an enemy of Napoleon, and made peace with England. It was agreed that the right of search should continue, with some restrictions.



**The Treaty of Amiens** (1802) put an end to the wars with Napoleon for a time. It had been pretty clearly settled, even to the satisfaction of that determined general, that England was supreme on the ocean. He might go on winning victories on the continent of Europe, but he never afterwards seriously threatened England by sea. The peace only meant that the two countries were willing to stop fighting for a time. As Napoleon was still aiming to rule over all Europe, and as England, in defending her commerce and trying to preserve the balance of power, would not admit his right to seize other countries and add them to France, it was plain that war must soon be resumed.

**Affairs in Ireland.** The Irish Parliament was controlled by Protestants who made laws against the Catholics, forbidding them to vote, hold office, or keep arms. The Catholics had to pay tithes to the English Church. The land on which they lived belonged either to the English Church or to landlords who collected their rents by means of agents who treated the Irish peasants with the greatest cruelty.

Irish rebellion broke out soon after the beginning of the French Revolution. Men's minds everywhere were stirred in behalf of liberty. The Irish made an attempt, with the help of the French, to get entire independence of England, and they came very near succeeding.

Wolfe Tone, a young lawyer and a Protestant, succeeded in uniting the Irish Catholics and the Irish republicans into one great society, the "United Irishmen." He then arranged with the French Directory to send a strong army to set up a republic in Ireland. A French expedition of thirty-eight ships sailed for Bantry Bay at the end of 1796, but General Hoche, who was to lead it, was delayed, and a hurricane compelled the ships to return to Brest.

The United Irishmen; however, soon formed a new plot. On May 23, 1798, the branches of this society throughout the

country were to fall upon the English and sweep them from the island. Then, in union with a French army, they would be able to bid defiance to England. It was a reasonable scheme; but there were traitors among them who sold information to the British government. Some of the leaders were arrested, and an English army began to disarm the conspirators. In Ulster alone it took from them 50,000 muskets, 70,000 pikes, and 72 cannon. Still, on the appointed day, the Irish societies rose in various parts of the country and committed many acts of cruelty, burning, plundering, and murdering. The only fights worthy the name of battles were at Arklow and Vinegar Hill (map, p. 232). But the vengeance taken by the English army, the "bloody Orange dogs" as the Irish called them, was frightful. Hundreds were lined up and shot. Fitzgerald, the Irish leader, made a desperate attempt to escape arrest. He killed two men with his dagger before he was shot. Wolfe Tone was condemned to death, but committed suicide in prison.

**Union With Ireland.** Order was again established, but Pitt believed that there was no cure for the troubles in Ireland except to unite the two Parliaments. In 1800, the Act of Union passed both Parliaments. Ireland was to send thirty-two peers and one hundred commoners to the British Parliament, and to pay two seventenths of the taxes.

Pitt also urged the making of a law to give the Catholics liberty of worship, and the same rights to hold office that the Protestants had; but the stubborn king declared that any one supporting such a bill would become his personal enemy. Pitt therefore resigned, and his friend, Henry Addington, became premier. Addington's plan was to keep peace with France at any sacrifice. When Bonaparte's continued aggression again made war unavoidable, he resigned. Pitt was recalled and remained in office until his death, which took place in 1806.

## QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did the English people regard the French Revolution? Why?
2. What war in England may be compared with the French Revolution? Why?
3. How far was England's claim to the right of search just?
4. Do you favor Pitt's plans in regard to Ireland or those of the king? Why?
5. What were the reasons for the wars between England and France?
6. Show the importance at this time of the geographical situation of England.

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. NAPOLEON IN EGYPT. Hume (Student's Series), pp. 652-655.
2. BATTLE OF THE BALTIC. Campbell, Poem, *Battle of the Baltic*; Russell, *Nelson*, Chap. XIV.
3. HOW NELSON LOST HIS ARM. Creighton, *Stories of English History*.
4. BATTLE OF THE NILE. Fitchett, *Deeds that won the Empire*, pp. 99-112; Brooks, *Heroic Happenings*, pp. 72-83; Hemans, *Casabianca*.

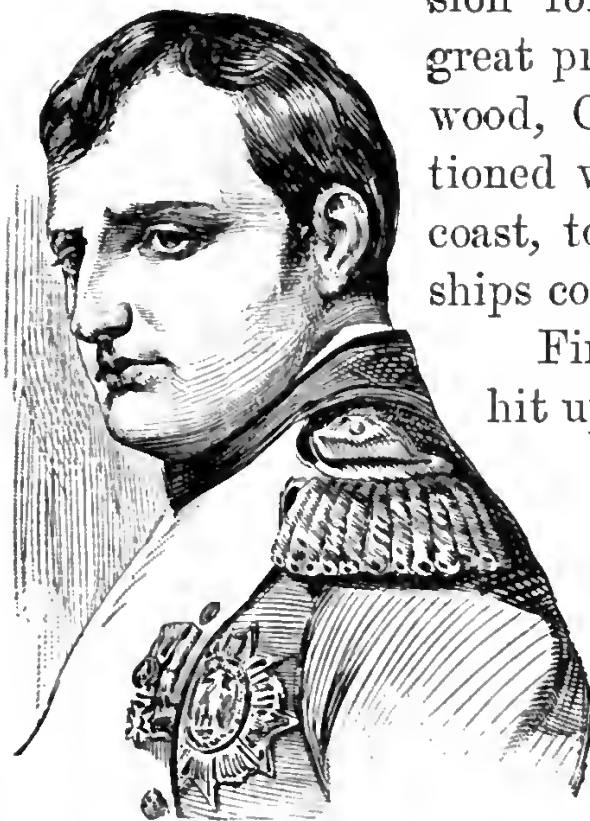
## C. THE DEFEAT OF NAPOLEON.

**Napoleon and England.** The Peace of Amiens gave Napoleon time to think over the strength of England. She had given him some hard blows in Egypt, in the Baltic, and in India. But his victories over the Austrians, and his knowledge that the other countries hated England on account of her colonies and trade, soon led him to provoke a new war. He felt that if he could conquer England he could conquer the world. And "eight millions of people," he said, "must yield to forty millions." England, for her part, knew that Napoleon was determined to destroy her colonial empire and to ruin her commerce; and she was ready to fight in their defense.

On beginning the war in 1803, Napoleon seized and threw into prison about 10,000 English travelers in France, though he had not warned them to leave the country as is customary when two countries begin war. He soon stirred up another

rebellion in Ireland under Robert Emmet. But Emmet was seized and hanged, and the rising was quickly put down.

**An Attempted Invasion of England.** All the fighting men in England were called out and drilled, to repel an invasion for which Napoleon was making great preparations, and Nelson, Collingwood, Calder, and Cornwallis were stationed with strong fleets off the French coast, to keep watch so that no French ships could cross the Channel.



NAPOLÉON.

Finally Napoleon thought he had hit upon the right plan. There was a Spanish fleet at Cadiz, and French fleets at Toulon, Brest, and Boulogne. His admiral, Villeneuve, was to sail from Toulon, pick up the Cadiz fleet on the way, and then steer for the West Indies, pretending to attack the English possessions

there. This would draw Nelson in pursuit and weaken the blockade at Brest and especially at Boulogne, where Napoleon's army was mustered. When Nelson was far enough away Villeneuve was to sail back suddenly and take in the French fleet at Brest. This would make him strong enough to brush away the English ships at Boulogne, and to take the French army safely to Ireland and England.

Villeneuve succeeded in the first part of the plan, and Nelson followed him to the West Indies. But when he returned to France and approached Brest, he was met by an English fleet and took refuge in the safe harbor of Cadiz.

Napoleon was at Boulogne, anxiously scanning the horizon seaward to catch a glimpse of Villeneuve. The appointed day came, but no fleet. Napoleon, who was now Emperor of

the French, wrote to his admiral: "England is ours. Let us avenge six centuries of shame. We are ready. All is embarked. Come within twenty-four hours and all is finished." Medals were already struck in honor of the expected victory. The future government of England was all planned. But Villeneuve did not come. Ten days the impatient general waited, and then, with curses on the cowardly and inefficient admiral, he broke up his camps and headed his armies toward



BATTLE OF TRAFALGAR; DEATH OF NELSON.

Germany. Before the year was out, he had won the battle of Austerlitz and had again humbled Austria to the dust.

• **The Battle of Trafalgar.** Villeneuve, under Napoleon's orders, sailed out of Cadiz with forty ships. Nelson arranged his twenty-seven ships in two columns, which struck the French battle line at right angles, cutting it into three parts. It was a terribly dangerous plan for the vessels leading, but made victory more certain, since fresh ships were all the time coming up. Before the battle, Nelson put up his fa- >

mous signal at the mast-head of his flagship, the "Victory": "England expects every man will do his duty." English sailors never did it better. Out of the whole fleet of the enemy, only eight ships escaped, and these were afterward burned in the harbor of Cadiz. But Nelson, who had fought more than a hundred battles, was shot by a rifleman from the rigging of a French ship, and died in the moment of victory. Napoleon and Nelson are the greatest names of this period, the one unconquered on the land, the other unconquered on the ocean. But Napoleon fought to make other nations his slaves; Nelson fought to protect his own nation against invasion.

"Wherever brave deeds are treasured and told,  
In the tales of the deeds of yore,  
Like jewels of price in a chain of gold  
Are the name and the fame he bore.  
Wherever the track of our English ships  
Lies white on the ocean foam,  
His name is sweet to our English lips,  
As the names of the flowers at home."<sup>1</sup>

Russia and Prussia had joined against Napoleon. But Prussia was crushed in two great battles, and Napoleon marched his victorious army into Berlin. The next year the Russians were completely overwhelmed. It seemed that nothing could stand against Napoleon's genius. These wars were ended by the treaty of Tilsit (1807). Napoleon met the czar on a raft in the river Niemen.

"Do you hate the English?" asked the emperor.

"As much as you do," replied the czar.

"Then," said Napoleon, "peace is soon made."

All Europe was to be compelled by Russia and France to join in an alliance against England. Russia was to look after Norway, Sweden, and Denmark, while Spain and Portugal were left to Napoleon to deal with as he pleased. The Neth-

<sup>1</sup>From the poem "Nelson," by E. Nesbit.



erlands and the various states of Italy and Germany were already under Napoleon's influence or control.

**George Canning** was now the English Foreign Secretary, and believed in vigorous war measures against France. Learning through his secret agents that Napoleon was planning to seize the strong fleet of the Danes to use against England, he sent an expedition to demand its surrender, agreeing to return it at the end of the war. As the Danes refused to give it up, Copenhagen was bombarded and burned and the fleet taken.

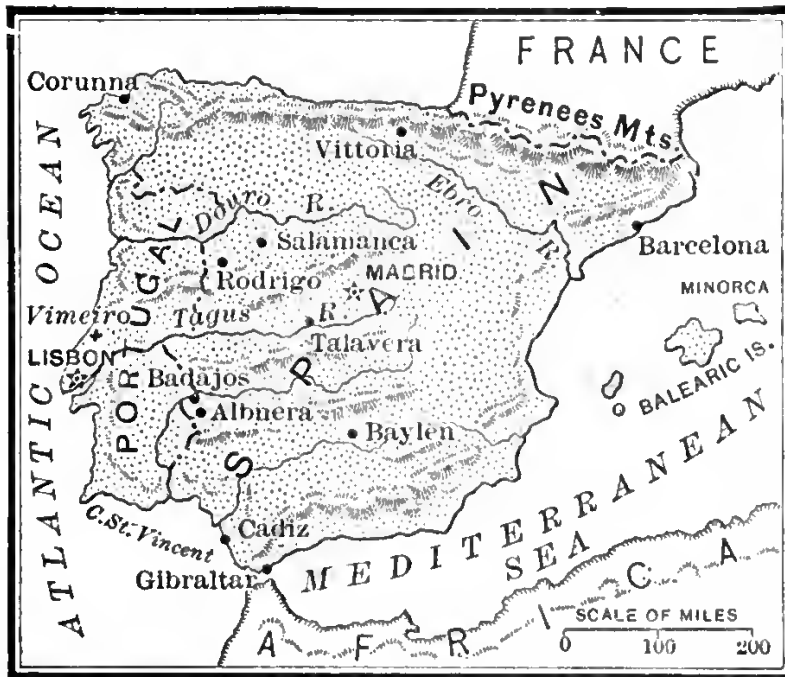
**Attacks on Neutral Commerce.** The loss of the French navy had compelled Napoleon to allow neutral ships to do the carrying trade in French West Indian products. As England would not allow direct trade between these islands and Europe, United States vessels first took their cargoes to some home port, and then reshipped them to France. But in 1805 Great Britain refused to allow French West Indian goods to be sent from any American port to France, and began to search United States ships and seize them. Also, many sailors found on American ships, including some deserters from the British navy, were impressed into the British service.

As Napoleon could no longer attack the English commerce on the ocean, he now attacked it on land. He issued the Berlin Decree after his victory over the Prussians. It forbade all countries in Europe under French influence to trade with Great Britain. The British replied by their Orders in Council, declaring that all ports of France and her allies were blockaded, and that any vessel going to any of them would be captured unless it had previously touched at a British port. Napoleon then issued his Milan Decree, declaring that all neutral vessels that touched at any British port would be captured. The Americans were the chief sufferers from these laws, as they were the chief neutral nation engaged in trade. In 1807, nearly 400 American ships were captured and sold by England and France.



Spain and Portugal now attracted the attention of Napoleon. In August, 1807, he wrote to the Prince Regent of Portugal, ordering him to seize all English property, and to close the ports of his country to English trade. He also sent a French army to enforce his orders. Instead of obeying, the

entire royal family of Portugal emigrated to the Portuguese colony of Brazil. Soon after this Napoleon set up his brother Joseph as King of Spain, but the disgusted Spanish rose in rebellion and sent to England for help. Canning was not slow to help them. Immense quantities of military supplies and



SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

money were sent at once. Sir Arthur Wellesley, who had fought in India, and Sir John Moore, who had fought in Egypt, were sent with 20,000 men.

**The Peninsular War** was a struggle for independence on the part of Spain and Portugal, aided by England, against Napoleon. It began with a series of victories over the French. The Spanish compelled a French army of 17,000 men to surrender at Baylen, and advanced toward Madrid. "King Joseph" fled north of the Ebro. The English under Wellesley met a French army on the road to Lisbon and defeated it with a loss of 3,000 men at Vimeiro (1808).

Napoleon now appeared in Spain with an army of 200,000 men. He entered Madrid in triumph and reëstablished Joseph. The Spanish were not good soldiers; when they should have gathered to the aid of the English, now under Sir John Moore,

they ran away and left their allies to fight alone. The 25,000 English could not fight 200,000 trained soldiers, led by the greatest general of the age. Moore therefore retreated to the coast. At Corunna he beat off the French so that the army could embark safely; but he himself was killed. The poet Wolfe has told the story of his burial:

“ We buried him darkly at dead of night,  
The sods with our bayonets turning;  
By the struggling moonbeam’s misty light,  
And the lantern dimly burning.

“ Slowly and sadly we laid him down,  
From the field of his fame fresh and gory;  
We carved not a line and we raised not a stone,  
But we left him alone with his glory.”

During Napoleon’s absence in Spain, Austria had declared war, and he was soon forced to lead away the best of his troops to the Danube. He met the Austrians and defeated them for the fourth time at Wagram (1809).

Three weeks later, Wellesley defeated the French army in Spain in the bloody battle of Talavera. The Spaniards were again treacherous, and Wellesley resolved to have nothing more to do with them. He withdrew to Portugal and fortified the hills around Lisbon, which he declared no French army could take. For his skillful conduct of the war he was rewarded with the title of Viscount Wellington, and later he became the Duke of Wellington.

**Masséna**, Napoleon’s best general, was now sent to Portugal with 65,000 men. The English and Portuguese laid waste the country, driving all the sheep and cattle with them, and retired within the forts. The French marshal examined the works carefully, and the longer he looked at them, the less he liked them. For a month he remained, and food began to fail. He then retreated into Spain, but so terrible was the

famine that 30,000 of his men starved and died. Portugal was safe.

Wellington now advanced and won several victories. At this time Napoleon withdrew part of his forces for the invasion of Russia, and Wellington entered Madrid, driving out King Joseph. In June, 1813, the French were again defeated at Vittoria and driven over the Pyrenees. Spain was at last cleared of the enemy.

**Napoleon's Russian Campaign.** In the summer of 1812 Napoleon led a great army through Russia to Moscow. He defeated the Russians in battle, but soon after his arrival Moscow burst into flames in a hundred places. The Russians had decided to burn their capital and destroy their enemies by famine. The French began a retreat late in October. The severe Russian winter came on, food was lacking, and the armies of the czar hung upon the rear and cut off small bodies of the French. When Napoleon reached the borders of Germany, he had lost 300,000 men. Marshal Ney was the last man to cross the Niemen. Some one asked him who he was. "I am the rear guard of the French army," said he. Napoleon hurried to Paris and by great efforts raised another army of 200,000 men. But his enemies rose up behind him. Russia, Prussia, Austria, and Sweden put an army into the fields of Germany larger than his own.

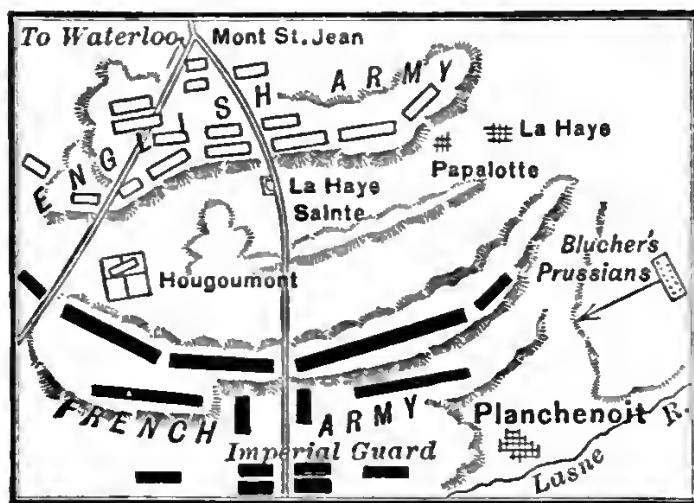
Leipzig was the battlefield of the nations. In a battle lasting three days, Napoleon was defeated and driven back to France (October, 1813).

He was now forced to resign the throne of France, and to retire to the island of Elba, near the western coast of Italy. In September, 1814, delegates from the various countries of Europe met at Vienna to rearrange the map of Europe, which Napoleon had so roughly disturbed. While they were busy at this work, news came that he had escaped from Elba and was in Paris levying soldiers. It is said that the commissioners

looked at one another in astonishment, and then burst into a shout of laughter. It was the last surprise that he had in store for his enemies.

**The Battle of Waterloo** was the closing event of Napoleon's career. The French people had rejoiced when they heard that their emperor, who had led them to so many victories, was on the way to Paris. The old soldiers flocked around him with the greatest enthusiasm, and he soon had an army of 250,000 men. But the allies had a million soldiers ready to pour over his frontiers and crush him. This required time, and Napoleon did not mean to let them unite their forces.

The English and Prussians had armies in the Netherlands under Wellington and Blücher. Napoleon suddenly crossed the French frontier and attacked Blücher at Ligny and drove him back twenty miles. Turning northward he started for



BATTLE OF WATERLOO.

Wellington, whose headquarters were at Brussels. The English general took his position about two miles from the village of Waterloo, drawing his army up in squares along a highway, and defending the approach by two strong posts on the right and

left of his lines. The two armies were of nearly the same size, — 70,000 men each,—but the French had veteran troops and more guns. All day the French beat upon the English squares, which stubbornly held their ground. Toward night Blücher's Prussian army arrived on the field and struck Napoleon's flank. The French fire weakened, and the whole English army moved forward and drove the French in utter

rout from the field. Each army lost about 25,000 men. It was Napoleon's last battle. He was exiled to St. Helena, a lonely island in the south Atlantic, and Louis XVIII., the brother of that Louis who had been executed during the revolution, was restored to his throne. }

**The War of 1812.** During England's struggle against Napoleon, a second war was waged with America. In 1812 the United States declared war on Great Britain because of her interference with American commerce (p. 339), her impressment of American seamen, and the frontier attacks by Indians under British influence. Most of the battles of this war were fought upon the ocean and along the southern border of Canada. The wonderful thing about the war is the great number of victories that the Americans won against the finest navy in the world. The American aim was better than the British, and besides this, the British made the same mistake that they made in the Revolution. They regarded the Americans as inferior to them in every respect, and did not take the same care that they did in fighting battles in Europe.

The battle of New Orleans (January, 1815) taught them this error in a very emphatic way. An army of British veterans tried to storm intrenchments defended by volunteers from Kentucky and Tennessee, and were driven back with the loss of over 2,000 men, as against an American loss of 71.

The war was closed by a treaty signed at Ghent in December, 1814, in which nothing was said about the causes of the war. But Great Britain impressed no more American sailors; and the right of search was quietly dropped, and in 1856 was declared unlawful.

**Results of the Wars.** England had been at war with France and other nations nearly all the time from 1789 to 1815. She was now at peace, and the suffering caused by the war began to receive attention. The national debt had in-

creased from \$5,000,000 to \$4,500,000,000, that is, it had become nine hundred times as great. The yearly interest amounted to \$160,000,000. To raise this amount and to meet the expenses of government, taxes were very heavy. Nearly everything that people used in daily life was taxed. Hundreds of men were ruined by the heavy taxes or by the effect of the wars on their business. Banks and factories closed, and thousands of people were out of work.

The “**Corn Law**” passed in 1815 did not aim to produce revenue, but to keep up the price of grain in the interest of the landholding class. By it no grain was allowed to be brought into England till the price reached ten shillings (\$2.50) a bushel. The next year there was a bad harvest, the price of grain rose, many people could not get food, and riots broke out all over the country, accompanied by the destruction of property and the stopping of business.

Another cause of distress was the rapid introduction of machinery, throwing many out of employment. The people thought that the new machines were a bad thing for them. Night attacks were made upon the factories, and many machines were destroyed. This led to riots, conflicts with the officers of the law, and the stopping of useful work.

**Demand for Reform.** The Parliament was still controlled by the nobility and the landholders; the working classes had no representatives, and began to demand reform, thinking that many of their troubles could be cured if they were allowed to have some share in the government.

**The Criminal Laws** were still enforced in the old harsh way. It was seen that these laws did not decrease crime, but no change had been made. Many bills were brought before Parliament by Sir Samuel Romilly to make the penalties less severe, but the House of Lords voted them down. The “thief-takers” and constables were often ready to let criminals off for a bribe, and in many cases they actually encouraged crim-

inals, in order to get the rewards which the government paid for catching them.

**The Old King, George III.**, died in January, 1820, in his eighty-second year. For nine years he had been insane, and his son, who later became George IV., had reigned in his stead as Prince Regent.

**Literature**, under the Hanoverian kings, is marked by a great change. Men stopped writing about religion and society, and revived the old romantic tales of the days of chivalry and of the border wars of England and Scotland.

**Sir Walter Scott** was the greatest writer of this period of "romantic revival," as it is called. He collected and published



SIR WALTER SCOTT.

three volumes of tales and ballads, which he called "The Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border." The "Ballad of

Chevy Chase" (p. 129)

was one of these. He also

wrote poems on the basis of

these tales. "The Lady of

the Lake," "The Lay of

the Last Minstrel," and

"Marmion" are three of

the best. He then turned

his attention to fiction, and

wrote about thirty "Waverley Novels" on historical and legendary subjects. "Ivanhoe" and "The Talisman" deal

with Richard's crusade and his return to England. "Kenilworth" is a story of the reign of Elizabeth. "The Monastery" and "The Abbot" tell of the imprisonment and death

of Mary Queen of Scots. These tales were the beginning of the kind of literature called "historical fiction," and are useful for fixing in the mind the characteristics of the historical

periods with which they deal.



**Lord Byron** became Scott's rival and surpassed him in the field of romantic poetry. "Childe Harold," a poetic account of historic scenes and incidents in Europe, is his best poem. "I awoke one morning," said Byron after its publication, "and found myself famous."

**William Wordsworth**, with Robert Southey and Samuel Taylor Coleridge, was the founder of the "Lake School" of poetry. These poets lived at times in the picturesque Lake region of the northwest. It was their aim to write simple poetry about the people and occurrences of everyday life. Coleridge's "Ancient Mariner" is his most famous poem; "To the Cuckoo," "The Green Linnet" and "The Daffodils" illustrate Wordsworth's notion of what true poetry should be.

**Other Writers.** Samuel Johnson, in 1755, completed a great dictionary of the English language. Oliver Goldsmith, like Walter Scott, wrote prose and poetry equally well. His "Deserted Village" describes the effects of the factory system on the country towns; "The Vicar of Wakefield" is his masterpiece in prose. David Hume and Edward Gibbon were the great historians of the century. Hume wrote the "History of England." Gibbon's "Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire" has never been surpassed in the field of historical literature. William Robertson ranks with Hume as the author of a "History of Scotland." ✕

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did the French government influence affairs in Ireland during this period? Illustrate.
2. What was Napoleon's plan for invading England? Why did it fail?
3. How did the French and English wars affect American commerce? Why? Explain the purpose of the Berlin and Milan Decrees and the Orders in Council.
4. Why did England take part in the Peninsular War?
5. Give the causes of the war with America in 1812. What important question was settled by it?
6. How did the Napoleonic wars affect the English people?

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. NELSON AT TRAFALGAR. Russell, *Nelson*, Chap. XIV.; Edgar, *Heroes of England*, pp. 271-318.
2. THE BATTLE OF WATERLOO. Henty, *One of the Twenty-eighth*; Fitchett, *Deeds that Won the Empire*, pp. 223-288.
3. THE BERLIN DECREE. Colby, *Sources of English History*, pp. 289-292; Green, *Short History*, pp. 822-3.
4. REFORM OF THE CRIMINAL LAWS. Hume, *History of England* (Student's Series), p. 743; Gardiner, *Student's History*, p. 885.
5. SIR JOHN MOORE. Creighton, *Stories from English History*, Chap. LI.; Fitchett, *Fights for the Flag*, pp. 133-157.
6. WELLINGTON. Edgar, *Heroes of England*, pp. 336-70.

### D. THE STRUGGLE FOR REFORM.

#### George IV., 1820-1830.

George IV. had been in possession of royal power since his father's insanity began in 1811; the beginning of his reign was therefore marked by no abrupt changes. He was the worst of the Georges, a selfish, wicked man, always in debt, and caring only for his own pleasure. His father had tried to make him mend his ways, but succeeded only in receiving his hatred.

A Conspiracy to murder the members of the Cabinet was discovered early in the first year of the reign. To explain this we shall go back to the last year of George III.

The "Manchester massacre" (1819) grew out of the meeting of vast numbers of unemployed men in the manufacturing districts, who used to gather together to talk over their troubles. They had a sort of uniform, practiced military drill, and carried banners, very much as political parties do now. Their banners bore such mottoes as these: "Union and Strength," "Liberty and Fraternity," "Annual Parliaments, and Universal Suffrage."

A great meeting was held at Manchester, at which a popular reform speaker, named Hunt, was to address the people. A number of soldiers and a regiment of cavalry were at hand

to keep order. When Hunt rose to speak, one of the magistrates got a mistaken notion into his head that the soldiers were being attacked, and called upon the commander of the cavalry to disperse the crowd. That officer understood that he was to lead a cavalry charge against them, and a trumpet sounded the order. His men rode their horses at full speed into the dense throng of men, women, and children, and cut them down with their swords, killing or wounding nearly a hundred.

Severe laws were soon passed by Parliament to prevent persons practicing military drill, carrying arms, and using seditious language. The people thought they had been badly used, and their wrongs provoked the "Cato Street conspiracy." A dozen or more desperate men planned to murder the Cabinet ministers at a certain meeting which was to be held at a private house in London. One of their number informed the government. The police seized some of the plotters in a building on Cato Street, and five of them were executed.

**Changes in Laws.** After the excitement over this conspiracy had died away, Parliament at last changed the criminal laws so that a hundred or more offenses, such as small thefts and misdemeanors, which before had been punished by hanging, were now punished by fine or imprisonment.

The duties on raw wool and silk were lowered so that the English manufacturers could get material to keep their factories going. Machine smashing, however, was kept up. In 1826 every power loom in the town of Blackburn was broken by a mob of men who ignorantly thought machines the main cause of their misery.

**Two Great Reforms in Religious Matters** were carried in this reign. The first was the repeal of the old Corporation Act and of part of the Test Act, passed in the time of Charles II., which prevented dissenters holding any office in public

or private corporations. The second reform was the passage of the Catholic Emancipation Act (1829), which allowed Catholics to sit in Parliament and to hold all but a few of the highest offices.

The man who secured this last reform was Daniel O'Connell, an Irishman of great eloquence and wonderful influence over men. He organized the Catholic Association, which soon spread all through Ireland, and which created a healthful public opinion by means of a free press. He worked faithfully in the cause of Catholic emancipation, as did also Robert Peel, a member of the Cabinet. Finally Wellington, who was then prime minister, announced to Parliament that the only alternative to Catholic emancipation would be another civil war in Ireland. After nearly three centuries of persecution and injustice, the English and Irish Catholics at last gained nearly equal rights with the Protestants.

**Parliamentary Reform** also was demanded by the people, and it was plain that the question could not be put off much longer. The great cities that had sprung up through manufacturing had no representatives, and people continued to desert the old country villages for the more profitable work in the cities. In Bute County, in Scotland, on one election day, only one man appeared to vote. He voted for himself and became a member of Parliament. Some villages had disappeared entirely; members for these were selected by the stronger party in the Parliament. It did not seem right that a few men should select all the members of the House of Commons, and that several millions should have nothing to say.

Lord John Russell now took up the cause of parliamentary reform. He had tried to take away the representatives from some boroughs where the votes were openly bought; but the very men who bought them were members of the House of Lords, and that body refused to pass his bill. In

*Dunwich had been buried under the waters of the North Sea in 1280. But in 1848, when the sea was at its lowest, the ruins of the town were discovered.*

1821 he managed to have the town of Grampound disfranchised, that is, he had its right to vote taken away, because it elected for its two members the politicians who would give the most money. Lord Russell had made a beginning in a great reform.

**The Great Influence of the French Revolution** was seen in the reign of George the Fourth. All over Europe it had stirred up a war between republican government and monarchical government. The people in Portugal, Spain, Italy, and the Spanish colonies in America rose against their kings and demanded a share in the government. The kings of Europe were more frightened than at the time of the outbreak in France, for their own people were now against them.

**The Holy Alliance** was a league of Russia, Austria, Prussia, and France, to maintain the power of kings in the countries of Europe and in their colonies. England refused to join it. In the Italian kingdoms of Naples and Sardinia the people drove out their kings, but Austria sent a strong army to put down the people, and made the kings more absolute than ever. A revolution in Spain was put down with the aid of French soldiers. But Greece, then a province of Turkey, carried on a struggle for freedom so long that at last England, France, and Russia interfered to give her independence. Lord Byron and many other Englishmen fought for the Greeks from the beginning. Some of his finest poems are about Greek subjects. In the great battle of Marathon, centuries before, the Greeks had maintained their independence against the Persians; and Byron wrote:

“The mountains look on Marathon —  
And Marathon looks on the sea;  
And musing there an hour alone,  
I dreamed that Greece might yet be free;  
For standing on the Persians' grave,  
I could not deem myself a slave.”

In Portugal, the people compelled the king to grant a constitution, providing for a parliament. Spain and France threatened to restore the absolute power of the king; but England sent a force to protect Portugal in her new government.

**The Spanish Colonies in America** revolted when Napoleon made his brother King of Spain, and after a long war they became independent republics. The Holy Alliance in 1823 was considering the question of helping Spain to get back her colonies. Canning, who was then prime minister of England, proposed that the United States should join England in warning the Holy Alliance to let the Spanish colonies alone. But the United States government preferred to make its declaration alone. President James Monroe in his message to Congress, December 2, 1823, announced that if the European powers should make any attempt to oppress or control any independent country in America, the United States would consider it an unfriendly act. This meant that the United States would go to war, if necessary, to resist any attack by the Holy Alliance on the Spanish republics. The Holy Alliance decided not to offend both England and the United States, but to let the new republics alone.

**The Navigation Law** was repealed in 1823. This law said that no goods could be brought to England except in English ships. The Americans had made a similar law in regard to England. The result was that English ships might come and carry away American products, but were not allowed to bring any goods with them. This made the cost of carrying freight twice as high, and both nations lost money by it.

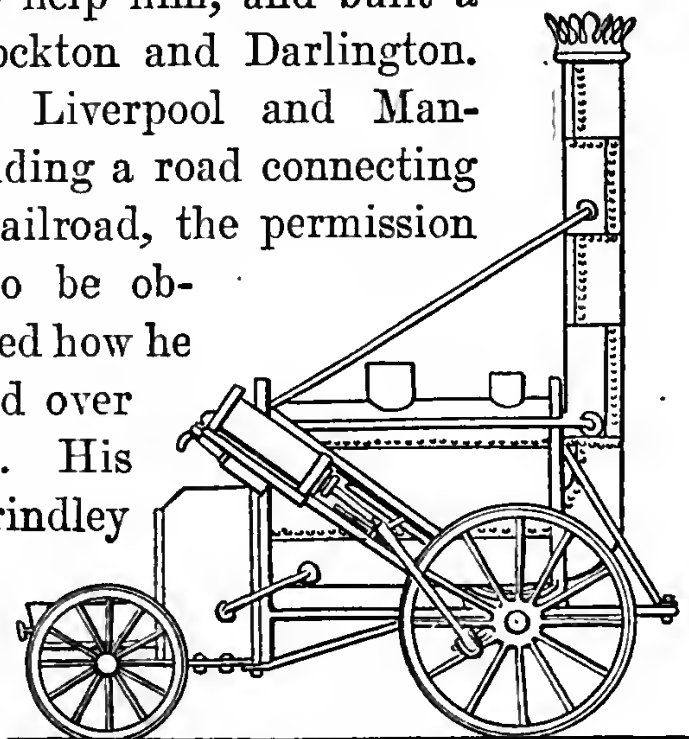
Along with reforms in politics and reforms in commerce came improvements of the greatest importance in the means of transportation.

**The First Railroads** were built, about 1825, by George

Stephenson, a poor Northumberland coal miner. He was employed in the coal mines in taking care of the pumping engine. While working at this, he thought of a plan of putting an engine on wheels, and making it turn the wheels; and he succeeded in making such a locomotive. This was able to do the work of drawing the coal cars far more cheaply and easily than it could be done by horses. He next got some rich men to help him, and built a short railroad between Stockton and Darlington. Later, the merchants of Liverpool and Manchester assisted him in building a road connecting those cities. To build a railroad, the permission of the Parliament had to be obtained. Stephenson was asked how he expected to build a railroad over valleys and through hills. His answer was like that of Brindley on a like occasion: "I can not tell how I will do it, but I will do it."

A report on the railroad plan, read in the

House of Commons, ended like this: "As for those who speculate on making railways take the place of canals, wagons, stage-coaches, and post-chaises, throughout the kingdom, we deem them and their visionary schemes unworthy of notice. It is a gross exaggeration to say that a locomotive could be made to go fifteen miles an hour, and even if it should, the danger of bursting boilers and broken wheels would be so great that the people would suffer themselves to be fired off on one of Congreve's rockets about as soon as they would trust themselves on a machine going at such a rate of speed." But the bill allowing the railroad to be built passed, and Stephenson's new locomotive, the "Rocket," was found to be able to



THE ROCKET.



go at the rate of thirty-five miles an hour without hurting any one.

During the next twenty-five years ten thousand miles of railroads were built and equipped in England at a cost of \$2,000,000,000.

**Better Wagon Roads** also were built at this time. A Scotchman named McAdam discovered how to make a road by covering the earth with broken stone to a depth of six or eight inches. The wagon wheels would gradually force the bits of stone together so as to form a hard surface. He also made the road higher in the center than on the sides, and dug ditches to carry off the water. Roads made in this way are still said to be *macadamized*.

**George IV. Died** in the summer of 1830. He was not missed, except agreeably. He had squandered millions of the people's money, and had stood in the way of every reform. Scarcely anybody in England had a good thing to say about him. His brother William, called the "Sailor King," succeeded him.

### William IV., 1830-1837.

**The New King** was a bluff, hearty old man of sixty-five when he began to reign. His life had been spent in the navy. He was a friend to the people, and was certain to use his efforts in their behalf.

**The Reform of the Parliament** was now the one great question. Action on it was hastened by another revolution in France. The French king, Charles X., had disagreed with the Chambers, as the French parliament was called, and had tried to seize absolute power. The people took up arms against him, the royal army deserted to their side, and the king had to flee from the country.

When the English people heard of this change in France, they felt like rising up and doing away with the Tory minis-

try and the "rotten boroughs" by force. They might have done so, if the House of Commons had not begun now to do it for them. The Duke of Wellington was prime minister, and as he said there should be no reform at all, the House of Commons would not support him and he was forced to resign.

**A New Whig Cabinet** was now chosen. Petitions poured in upon it from all parts of the country, urging reform. A reform bill was drawn up by Lord Russell and introduced into the House of Commons. Many boroughs were to be entirely disfranchised, and many others were to send one member instead of two. Most of the one hundred and sixty-five places thus vacated were to be given to the counties and large towns of England. When it became evident that the House would not pass the bill, the Cabinet had the Parliament dissolved and a new election ordered. The Whig, or "Liberal" party, as it began to be called, was sure of support from the country. "The bill, and nothing but the bill" became the rallying cry at the elections. The Reform Bill, slightly amended, was passed by the new House of Commons by a large majority.

**The Creation of Peers.** The majority of the House of Lords, however, was opposed to the bill. This brought matters to a standstill. The Cabinet asked the king to create enough new peers to carry the bill, and resigned when he declined to do so. Before the king could get any one to take the office of prime minister he had to promise to create the new peers if necessary. When the Lords found that new peers would be created to pass the bill, some of those that were opposed to it remained away, and the Reform Bill became a law June 4, 1832.

Since the time of William IV. it has been the custom, whenever the House of Commons and the House of Lords are unalterably opposed, for the king's ministers to create enough

356 HOUSE OF HANOVER [1832  
with less than 4000 inhabitants lost one member

43 peers, or declare such intention, to compel the House of Lords to pass the measure desired by the House of Commons.

w.B. The Reform Bill in its final form not only abolished the rotten boroughs, thus doing away with old bribery system, but it gave forty-six of the large cities the right to elect sixty-eight members of Parliament, and it added thirty to the representatives of English counties, and eleven to the representatives from Ireland and Scotland.



THE PRESENT HOUSES OF PARLIAMENT.

It also cured a greater evil than the rotten boroughs. Under the old system the right to vote was very unequally distributed. In some towns all the freemen voted; in others none at all. The new law gave a vote to every man living in a town or borough who paid an annual rent of \$50. In the country all those owning or leasing a certain amount of land could vote. The bill added over half a million voters to the list. The nobility and the landholders were no longer to have control of the lawmaking machinery, which they had so long used for their own advantage. Now the great "middle

class" of England, the merchants, mechanics, and farmers, were to control the House of Commons.

**The New Reformed Parliament** met in January, 1833. The Liberal party had a large majority, but it was found that the members were older and wiser men than those of former Parliaments; and none of the bad results that had been predicted by Wellington and other members of the House of Lords came to pass.

**Slavery Abolished.** The slave trade had been stopped in 1807. Since then it had been shown by some members of Parliament that slavery did not pay; for it cost more to raise sugar in the West Indies, where slave labor was used, than it did in the East Indies, where wages were paid. In 1833 slavery was abolished in all the colonies. The owners received \$100,000,000 to compensate them for their loss. It was soon found that slavery had been only an evil, and that the slaveholding colonies benefited by the change.

**Other Excellent Laws** passed by this Parliament met with general approval. One of these relieved the Irish Catholics from paying certain taxes for the support of the English Church. Another regulated the employment of children in factories, the first law of the kind made in England. Another forbade flogging in the army. The first national appropriation of \$100,000 was made for the aid of common schools. An important change was made in the poor laws. England was overrun with paupers and vagrants. The old laws had encouraged pauperism by giving too much help. The new laws were stricter. Less help was given, and the poor who really needed help were helped in such a way that they might be able to help themselves.

**The Monopoly of the East India Company** was taken away by the Reformed Parliament in 1833, and the Eastern trade was thrown open to all. This was found to be a great advantage to the country. Now all merchants could buy

and sell in India and China, and in less than ten years three times as many British goods were sold. The company stopped carrying on trade, but continued to govern the country as before (p. 316) until after the great Indian Mutiny of 1857. Its rule had been greatly extended at the expense of the Mahrattas and the Burmese, and now included more than half of India.

“**Good King William**” had passed his three score and ten years, and died in 1837. Up to this time, the kings of England, beginning with George I., had been rulers of Hanover also. But it was a law in Hanover that only males could succeed to the throne; therefore when William’s niece, Victoria, became Queen of England, his younger brother, the Duke of Cumberland, became King of Hanover, thus separating the two countries.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Account for the opposition to the Reform Bill. How was it finally passed? What evils did it cure?
2. What does the demand for the Reform Bill teach us about the English people? Why did the Lords oppose it?
3. Which law passed by the first Reformed Parliament do you think best? Why?
4. How did the revolutions in France affect the English people?
5. How did the English secure control of India?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. **GEORGE STEPHENSON.** Smiles, *Life of Stephenson*; Wright, *Stories of American Progress*.
2. **THE EAST INDIA COMPANY.** Hume, *History of England* (Student’s Series) (see index); Sarkar, *History of India*.
3. **THE REFORM BILL OF 1832.** McCarthy, *England in the XIXth Century*, Chaps. IX., X.
4. **DANIEL O’CONNELL.** Lawless, *Story of Ireland*, pp. 379-389; Mowry, *First Steps in the History of England*, Chap. XXVI.

## XII. THE HOUSE OF HANOVER (CONTINUED).

### A. FROM THE ACCESSION OF VICTORIA TO THE END OF THE INDIAN MUTINY IN 1858.

Victoria, 1837-1901.

At Kensington Palace, in 1830, the year of the coronation of William IV., his eleven-year-old niece, Victoria, was studying



ELEVEN-YEAR-OLD VICTORIA.

ing a table of the kings of England. "Mamma," she exclaimed, "I do not see who is to be the next sovereign of England, unless it is myself." Her mother had never told her that she was to become Queen of England, but allowed her to make the discovery for herself. Her father had died when she was an infant, but the wise and careful training she received from her mother bore fruit in the guiding principle of her rule, the determination to do right.

**Victoria's Marriage** took place three years after her accession to the throne. Her cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg and Gotha, became her husband. The marriage was highly pleasing to the people of England, chiefly because it

was one of real affection and not for political reasons. Prince Albert received the title of Prince Consort, an honorary distinction conferred upon him as the queen's husband, but the sovereign power remained solely with the queen. He became a member of the House of Lords and was made Secretary to the Queen, a very important office. He proved a wise and prudent counselor and gave his whole attention to the interests of the country. He was the first man in England to see that the selfishness and strife of employers and laborers was hurtful to both. "Depend upon it," he said, "the interests of the classes are the same, and it is only ignorance that prevents their uniting for each other's advantage." He said that whatever made the laborer better and happier would make the employer better off, too.

"**The Victorian Age**" was the most progressive period in the history of England. More was done than ever before to promote the comfort and enlightenment of the people and to give to every one a voice in the government. The character and reign of the queen afforded an example of virtue and goodness to the nation. Tennyson says of her:

" Her court was pure ; her life serene ;  
God gave her peace ; her land reposed ;  
A thousand claims to reverence closed  
In her as Mother, Wife, and Queen.

" And statesmen at her council met,  
Who knew the seasons when to take  
Occasion by the hand, and make  
The bounds of freedom wider yet

" By shaping some august decree,  
Which kept her throne unshaken still,  
Broad-based upon her people's will,  
And compassed by the inviolate sea."

**The Chartist Movement** was one of the early troubles of the reign. It was an attempt on the part of the workingmen



to get political rights. Daniel O'Connell helped them to draw up a list of their demands which was called the "People's Charter." Those who favored it were known as Chartists.

The People's Charter contained six demands: manhood suffrage, vote by ballot, annual Parliaments, the division of the country into equal electoral districts, the removal of the property qualification for members of Parliament, and the payment of salaries to members of the House of Commons.

Some of the Chartists called themselves "physical force," others, "moral force" Chartists. The "moral force" men held meetings, formed clubs for discussion, and published newspapers, in order to convince others of the truth of their beliefs. The "physical force" men, to show their strength, were to bring a petition to Parliament signed by five million names, and carried by a million of the signers. There was great alarm in London and special care was taken to prevent violence. But the monster procession dwindled down to a dozen, and the monster petition was found to be filled with names gathered from old directories and gravestones. This ended the influence of the "physical force" men (1848). In time, however, all the demands of the charter, except annual Parliaments and the payment of members, were practically granted by acts of Parliament.

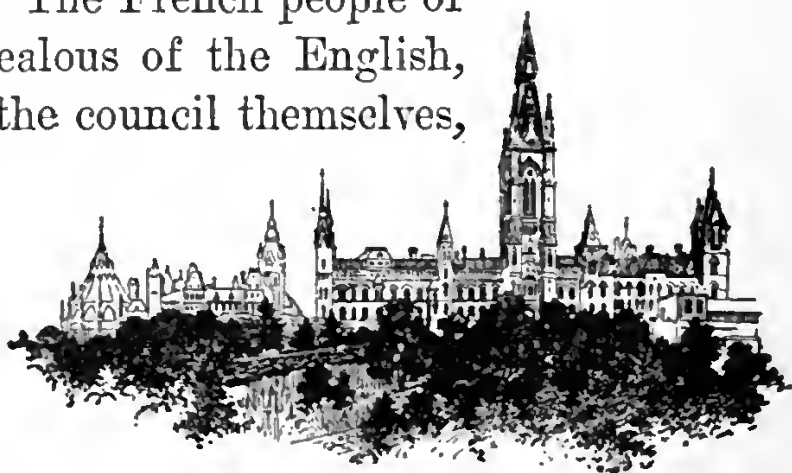
**The "Penny Post"** of England owes its origin to Mr. Rowland Hill. Before 1840 the charge for carrying a letter was from one to two shillings, and was paid by the receiver. That was a large sum for the poor people, and few could afford to have letters written to them. The idea of reforming the postal system was suggested to Mr. Hill by a story told by Coleridge, one of the "Lake poets."

One day as Coleridge was walking past a cottage in the Lake region, a postman brought a letter to the door. The poor woman to whom the letter was addressed said she could not pay the postage and returned it to him. Coleridge kindly

paid it for her, as she said the letter was from her brother, who had gone to work in London. She was unwilling that the poet should pay the money, and after the postman had gone, she showed him that the letter contained only a blank sheet. She said that her brother had adopted this method of letting her know that all was well with him.

The story set Rowland Hill to thinking. He came to the conclusion that if postage were made cheaper so many more letters would be written that more money would come to the government than under the high rates. So many petitions came, asking for the trial of Hill's plan, that the Parliament, as an experiment, tried a four-penny rate. Soon after this, the rate was made a penny per half ounce. The result showed that Hill was right. The sender now paid the postage by putting a stamp on the letter. Since that time, every country in the civilized world has adopted this plan.

**Dominion of Canada.** A rebellion in Canada was going on when the queen's reign began. In both Upper and Lower Canada the upper house, or council, was appointed by the sovereign of England. The French people of Lower Canada were jealous of the English, and wanted to choose the council themselves, and refused to pay their salaries. The rebellion was put down, and peace was made by joining the two provinces into one and by giving it



PARLIAMENT BUILDINGS, OTTAWA, CANADA.

a freer government. Further jealousy, however, led to the adoption of a new plan about thirty years later. The two provinces were again separated, under the names of Ontario and Quebec, for purposes of local government; but together with other North American provinces they were formed into

a federal union, called the Dominion of Canada, with a general government nearly independent of Great Britain.

An important event near the beginning of the reign led to the closer connection of England and America. Samuel Cunard established the first regular line of steamships between Great Britain and America (1840).

The "Opium War" was fought to compel China to allow English merchants to import opium into the country. The Chinese government had forbidden trade in opium, on account of the bad effects of its use upon the people. But opium was a leading production of India, and after the Indian trade was thrown open to all, there were many British merchants who made a business of selling the drug in China. The Chinese government seized a quantity of the opium, and took means to prevent any more being landed. The British began war at once, in 1839. The Chinese were defeated, and were obliged to surrender the island of Hongkong and open five important ports to British trade. Besides this, they were compelled to pay \$20,000,000 for the opium destroyed, and the expenses of the war.

The "Eastern Question" also attracted much attention. As it is very important, let us see how England is concerned in it. A glance at a map of Europe will show you that Turkey controls the entrance to the Black Sea, and is favorably situated to send ships into the eastern Mediterranean. If a strong nation, like Russia, should get control of Constantinople, she might be able to control both the Black Sea and the Mediterranean, thus cutting off England from her East Indian possessions. For this reason it is better for England to have Constantinople in the hands of a weak nation. But Turkey, through bad government and the unjust treatment of her Christian subjects, had come to be disliked by all Christian nations, particularly Russia, since the illtreated Christians are members of the Russian or Greek Catholic

Church. The "question," therefore, is this: If Turkey is to be driven out of Europe, what nation shall have her territory, especially the part bordering on the Bosphorus?

**Mehemet Ali**, the ruler of Egypt, was one of the vassals of the Turkish sultan, but had grown stronger than his master. He had conquered Syria, and had defeated every Turkish army sent against him. In 1839 a second war began between Mehemet and the sultan. The Turkish fleet went over to the Egyptians, and if Mehemet were allowed to go on he would soon be in possession of Constantinople itself. It did not suit the nations of Europe to have Turkey either too strong or too weak. So England, Austria, Prussia, and Russia made Mehemet give up his Syrian conquests and let the Turks alone. France was not invited to take part in the affair, and became very angry with England on account of the slight. The truth was that France was friendly to Egypt, over which she hoped to have great influence.

**Lord Melbourne**, the premier, with his cabinet, was forced to retire in 1841.

His name suggests the Australian city named after him, founded in the first year of Victoria's reign (p. 401). Australia was first seen by Captain Cook in 1720. The first settlement was made in New South Wales at the time of our Revolutionary War. For fifty years it was used as a place to which to banish criminals. In 1803 Tasmania, too, was occupied. Early in the nineteenth century, it was discovered that sheep would thrive in the Australian climate. In the year 1851 gold was found and immigrants from all parts of the world hurried there in search of wealth. The growth of Australia was rapid. Five provinces grew up, which were finally, with Tasmania, joined in a federal government like that of Canada (1901). New Zealand was occupied in 1838, and became another flourishing British colony.

**Sir Robert Peel** became prime minister on Melbourne's

retirement, and held office for five years. Although Peel was a Conservative, or Tory, he favored a further reduction of the duty on imports. He found that by lowering the tax business was increased so much that the government received more money than before. The manufacturers bought their supplies more cheaply, and furnished more employment for labor.

**The Retreat from Kabul.** Terrible news from India reached England the year after Peel entered office. The rugged mountain passes of Afghanistan are the gateway to India from the north. Russia being in power at the north end of the gateway, and England at the south end, it behooved each nation to look to the character of the "gate keeper." Russia had sought the alliance of Dost Mohammed, who had lately driven from his throne in Kabul the old "gate keeper," the Shah Soojah. The governor-general of India thought it good policy to send an army to Afghanistan to set up Shah Soojah again. This was done. But the Afghans would not have Soojah, and rebelled. They surrounded the English force and compelled them to make an agreement to return to India.

Dost Mohammed's son, Akbar Khan, was now leader of the Afghans. The English commanders were cowardly and incompetent, and foolishly gave up their arms to Akbar, on condition of being allowed to retreat in safety. They were 15,000 in number, among them 4,000 English soldiers, the rest being natives of India, with some women and children. It was winter, and ice and snow covered all the country. In spite of Akbar's orders, the Afghans lined the heights along the roads where the English had to pass, and shot down hundreds. Akbar now took charge of the women and children, and the English advanced to the next pass. But the Afghans kept up their attacks until all of the English force were killed, except one man, who from weakness lagged behind the rest and so escaped to tell the awful tale.

General Pollock afterwards marched to Kabul, took revenge

upon the Afghans, and recovered the prisoners in Akbar's charge. But Dost Mohammed was sent back to reign in Kabul; for it was now discovered, what should have been learned before, that it is not profitable to force a king upon an unwilling people. ✕

**The Corn Laws** now occupied the attention of the ministry at home. The duty on imported grain, as fixed by the "corn laws" then in force, was designed to keep the price up to two or three dollars a bushel for the benefit of the landholders. The higher the price of wheat, the more rent they could get for the land on which the wheat was raised. But the poor people who bought the bread had to pay the rent in the end.

An Anti-Corn-Law League was formed by the manufacturers in Manchester, the leaders of whom were Richard Cobden, John Bright, and Charles Villiers. Cobden had traveled widely, and understood matters connected with commerce. Both he and Bright were accomplished speakers and writers, and they soon made many people in England think as they did about the corn laws.

**An Irish Famine**, coming at this time, added strength to the demand for the repeal of the corn laws. Half the people of Ireland had come to depend for food almost entirely on the potato crop. In the fall of 1845 a long continuance of cold, wet weather caused the potatoes to rot in the ground. The entire crop was a failure. A great cry went up to open the ports to food from abroad. Peel, the prime minister, decided that the repeal of the corn laws should not be put off any longer. But the landlords made great opposition. An opposing party was formed, led by Benjamin Disraeli, called the Protectionist Party because they wanted to protect the English farmers. In spite of the Protectionists, a law was passed, through the efforts of Peel and Lord John Russell, which left a light tax on grain for a few years, and then took it off altogether. Food was at last untaxed in Great Britain.

This change, however, came too late for the starving Irish. Large amounts of money were raised for their relief, but the famine was so widespread that enough food could not be brought in time. The people streamed toward the towns and villages for help, and died in heaps by the wayside. When the famine ended it was found that the population of Ireland had sunk from eight to six millions. Of the two millions lost, about half had left the country, many of them going to the United States.

**Free Trade.** The removal of the duty from food and raw materials was followed up in 1860 and 1872 by admitting all goods free of duty, except liquors, tea, coffee, and tobacco, thus making England practically a free-trade country.

**The First World's Fair** was held in England in 1851. The plan was thought of and carried out by Prince Albert, who made the opening speech. An immense building of glass and iron, called the Crystal Palace, covering nineteen acres, was erected for it in London. The nations of the earth sent exhibits. Alfred Tennyson wrote an ode which was sung at the opening.

“Uplift a thousand voices full and sweet,  
In this wide hall with earth's invention stored,  
And praise the invisible universal Lord,  
Who lets once more in peace the nations meet  
Where Science, Art, and Labor have outpoured  
Their myriad horns of plenty at our feet.”

**The Crimean War** came from an attempt to solve the Eastern question (p. 363). It was so called because the greater part of the fighting was done in the peninsula of Crimea in the south of Russia.

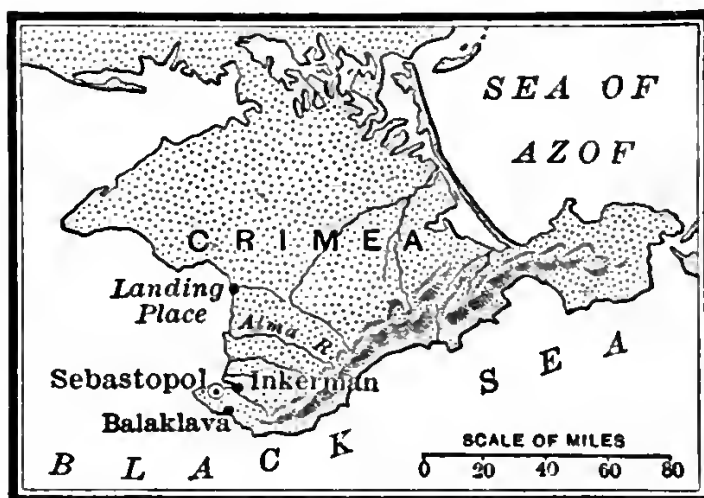
The czar Nicholas I. had taken upon himself the task of protecting the Christians who were under Turkish rule. He now proposed to England that they divide the territory of the “sick man,” as he called Turkey, between them, and put him



out of the way by a quick war. When the English ministers declined this, he at once sent his armies to the Danube and invaded Turkish territory. The Turks defended their frontier, but their fleet was destroyed. This left the Black Sea in the control of Russia, and Constantinople would soon be attacked.

At this point (1854) England and France joined Turkey in the war in order to preserve the balance of power by preventing Russia from gaining too much territory. The Russians had in the Crimea a fortress of great strength, known as Sebastopol. This fortress afforded protection to the Russian navy, and its capture would practically end the war, since it would leave the Russian fleet at the mercy of the combined navies of France and England.

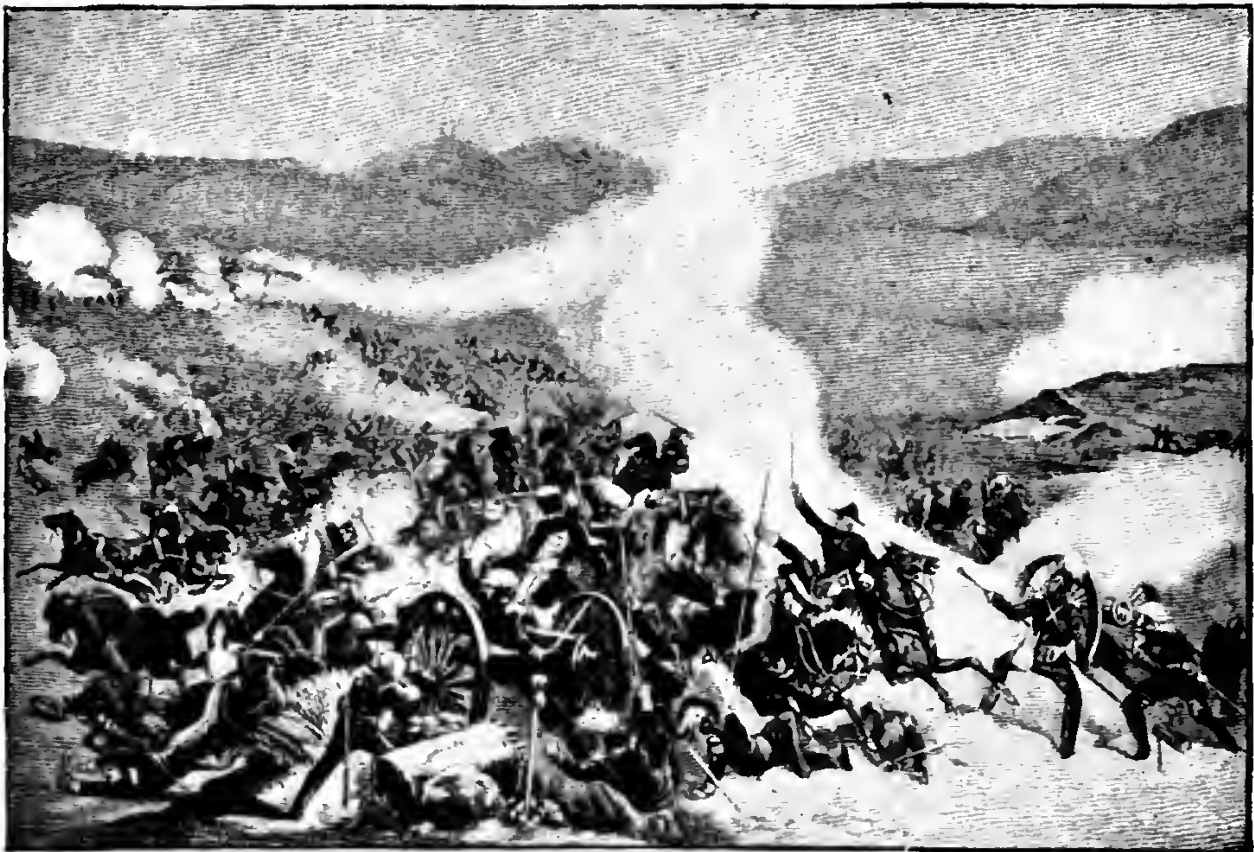
The English and French landed a combined force of 64,000 men on the coast north of Sebastopol. On the march



THE CRIMEA.

southward the allies crossed the river Alma and drove the enemy out of their intrenchments. Soon the armies took up their positions around Sebastopol. The Russians fiercely attacked them near Balaklava, October 25, 1854, and were gallantly repulsed.

Some guns had been taken by the Russians in their attack. Lord Cardigan, who commanded a brigade of light cavalry numbering about 600, was ordered to "retake the guns." The officer who carried the order supposed that the guns referred to were those of the Russians a mile or more down the road. To take these, meant to charge into the center of the Russian army of 30,000 men, along a road lined with the guns of the enemy. The order was given to advance. The men



THE LIGHT CAVALRY CHARGE AT BALAKLAVA.

rode the length of the Russian lines, drove them from the guns, and rode back—but “not the six hundred.” Only 198 returned. This famous deed has been made immortal by Tennyson’s poem, “The Charge of the Light Brigade”:

Half a league, half a league,  
Half a league onward,  
All in the valley of Death  
Rode the six hundred.  
“Forward, the Light Brigade!  
Charge for the guns!” he said:  
Into the valley of Death  
Rode the six hundred.

“Forward, the Light Brigade!”  
Was there a man dismayed?  
Not tho’ the soldier knew  
Some one had blundered.  
Theirs not to make reply,  
Theirs not to reason why,  
Theirs but to do and die:  
Into the valley of Death  
Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,  
Cannon to left of them,  
Cannon in front of them  
    Volleyed and thundered;  
Stormed at with shot and shell,  
Boldly they rode and well,  
Into the jaws of Death,  
Into the mouth of Hell  
    Rode the six hundred.

\* \* \*

When can their glory fade?  
O, the wild charge they made!  
    All the world wondered.  
Honor the charge they made!  
Honor the Light Brigade,  
    Noble six hundred!

Thousands of the English soldiers fell sick and were sent to the hospitals at Scutari. When the severe Russian winter came on, it was found that not enough provision had been made for the comfort of the soldiers and for the care of the wounded. The hospital supplies were in the holds of ships off Sebastopol, and the tents, blankets, and clothing for the soldiers had been lost in a storm that wrecked the fleet of transports. Some curious blunders were made. A cargo of boots were all for the left foot, and mules for the hauling of supplies were delivered at posts in the hands of the Russians. The havoc made by the cold and the storms of winter killed five times as many men as the bullets of the Russians. The emperor Nicholas was accustomed to say that there were two generals on whom he could always depend, General January and General February.

Florence Nightingale, an English lady who had made a special study of hospital work, went to Scutari, with other women, and wrought marvelous changes in the methods of caring for the sick. This was the first time that women were regularly employed as nurses in war.

**Sebastopol was Taken** in the following year, and Russia was ready to make peace. The forts in the Crimea were destroyed, and the Russians were not to keep a war fleet in the Black Sea. Turkey was kept independent of all interference on the part of Russia.

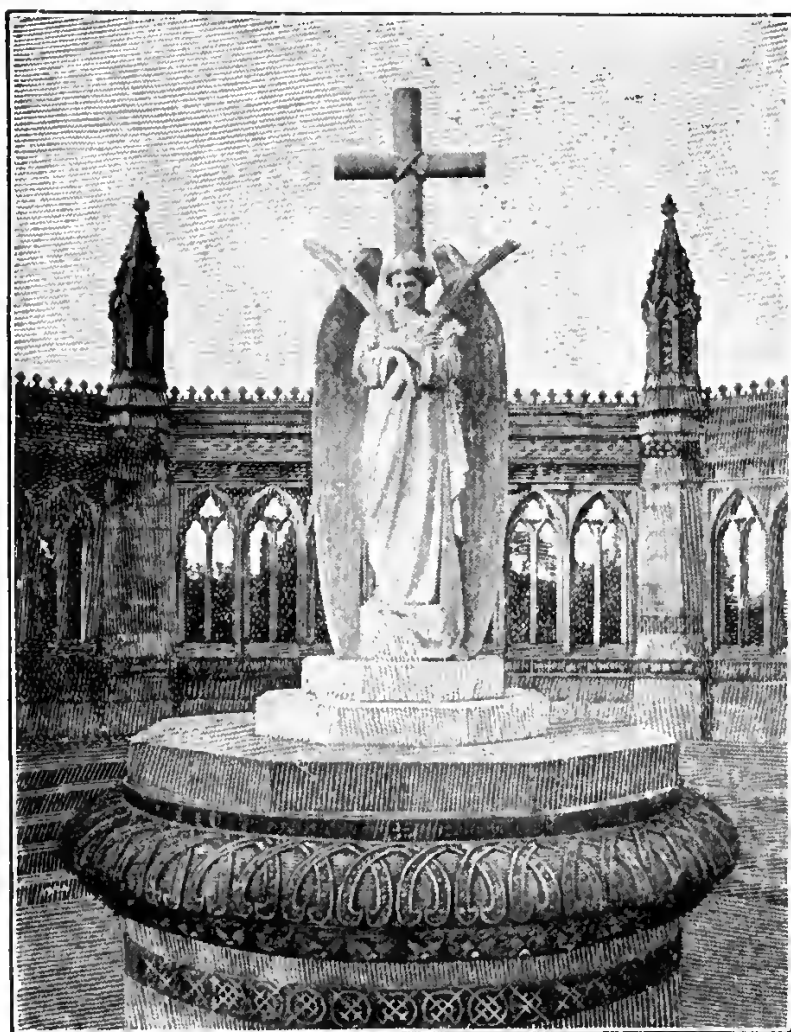
**The Indian Mutiny** began soon after the Crimean War. It was a rebellion that sprang up among the Sepoys, or native soldiers, of whom there were about 300,000 in the British army in India. By this time nearly all of India, including Sind and the Punjab, had been brought under English control. About two thirds of the country belonged to the company, and the other third was ruled by rajahs, or native princes, under the company's influence.

A new rifle had been introduced among the Sepoys, using a greased paper cartridge, the end of which had to be bitten off before loading. Some of the Indian princes who had lost their thrones spread abroad the story that the grease used was a mixture of lard and tallow. The story was not true, but the Sepoys believed it. To the Hindu the cow is a sacred animal, while the Mohammedan looks upon the hog with utter loathing. The Sepoys were nearly all either Hindus or Mohammedans, and they outnumbered the English ten to one. They had heard, too, of England's war with Russia. It seemed to be a time when they might regain their independence. On Sunday, May 10, 1857, the Sepoys at Meerut mutinied and killed their officers. They then hurried to Delhi, where there was living in retirement an old man who was a descendant of the Mogul emperors. They brought him out and saluted him as "Emperor of India."

The revolt quickly spread through the Ganges valley, and many English were slain. In the Punjab, however, the British governor, warned by telegraph, put his Sepoys on parade and brought them in front of twelve cannon loaded with grape-shot, flanked by columns of British soldiers. A command to

“stack arms” was given and obeyed. He then sent an army which took Delhi, but only after a siege of several months.

At Cawnpur, meanwhile, the English had taken refuge in an old military hospital, and resisted every effort of the Sepoys to capture it. But there was little food, and the only well was outside of the walls, exposed to the enemy’s fire. Many a life was lost in bringing water from that well. Finally the Sepoy leader, Nana, made up his mind that he could never take the



MONUMENT AT CAWNPUR.

fort, and he proposed to let the garrison go away in peace if they would surrender. There was no suspicion of treachery. The English all knew this Nana; they had been entertained in his palace, and he had always appeared to be courteous and generous. Boats were brought in which they were to float down the Ganges to a post held by their friends. The people passed down a few stone steps to

the river’s edge, but no sooner had they commenced to go aboard the boats than a storm of cannon and musketry opened on them from the banks. Only four men escaped.

Some of the boats drifted to the bank, and a hundred and twenty-five women and children, and several men, who had not been killed by the shot, were kept as prisoners. One night

five natives went into the prison house and murdered them all. The next day the bodies were thrown into a well near by, which is now marked by a beautiful monument.

**At Lucknow** the English gathered into the Residency, a fortified place containing the governor's house and the public buildings. The attack of the Sepoys was beaten off, but the place was closely besieged for five months. Many perished, but the brave remnant fought on and waited for relief.

“ Oh, they listened, looked, and waited,  
Till their hope became despair;  
And the sobs of low bewailing  
Filled the pauses of their prayer.  
Then up spake a Scottish maiden,  
With her ear unto the ground:  
‘ Dinna ye hear it? dinna ye hear it?  
The pipes o’ Havelock sound!’

“ She knew the droning pibroch,  
She knew the Campbell’s call,  
‘ Hark! hear ye no’ MacGregor’s,—  
The grandest o’ them all!’

“ Then a burst of wild thanksgiving  
Mingled woman’s voice and man’s;  
‘ God be praised! — the march of Havelock!  
The piping of the clans!’ ”<sup>1</sup>

The coming of General Havelock’s army saved the women and children at Lucknow from the fate that had befallen those at Cawnpur. The mutiny was soon suppressed by new troops sent from England. The government of India was now taken away from the old East India Company, and given to the British ministry.

**A War against China** was in progress when the Indian Mutiny broke out. It was caused by the seizure of a Chinese vessel sailing under the British flag. The Chinese governor at Canton, Yeh, took twelve Chinamen from the ship, on a charge of piracy, and refused to apologize for insulting the

<sup>1</sup> From “The Pipes at Lucknow,” by Whittier.



British flag. Canton was bombarded by the British and French, and Yeh was made prisoner. It was a hard matter to tell one Chinaman from another, but Yeh was known by his enormous size. He was found hiding in a closet and made a vigorous resistance. But a British sailor got a firm grip by winding Yeh's long pigtail around his hand, and held on while the fat prisoner was secured.

Peace was to be made at Peking, the Chinese capital. But when the French and English ships tried to sail up the river to that city, they were fired on from the Chinese forts and driven off. Afterward, a French and British force entered Peking, burned the beautiful summer palace of the emperor, and set up a monument on the ruins with an inscription in Chinese, warning the natives against further treachery. This was the first visit of foreigners to the Chinese capital. Peking had been supposed to be a very powerful city, but was found to be a tumble-down sort of place without regular streets and pavements, and not nearly so large as had been thought.

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. What was the purpose of each war in this period?
2. Compare the Chartist movement with the uprising of the peasants under Wat Tyler.
3. What is the "Eastern question"? Is it still as important as ever? Give your reasons.
4. Mention the most important events in the history of British India. Why is each important?
5. Why were the corn laws made? Repealed?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. THE RETREAT FROM KABUL. Church, *Stories from English History*, Vol. III., Chap. XXII.; Henty, *For Name and Fame*.
2. RELIEF OF LUCKNOW. Lowell, poem, *The Relief of Lucknow*; MacKenna and O'Shea, *Brave Men of Action*, pp. 483-515.
3. THE FAMINE IN IRELAND. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 414-419; McCarthy, *History of Our Own Times*, I., pp. 93-110.



4. FLORENCE NIGHTINGALE. Fitchett, *Fights for the Flag*, pp. 322-333.
5. SIR HENRY HAVELOCK. Edgar, *Heroes of England*, pp. 428-470; McCarthy, *History of Our Own Times*, I., pp. 232-237.
6. BALAKLAVA. Henty, *Jack Archer*; Fitchett, *Fights for the Flag*, pp. 282-292.

## B. FROM THE INDIAN MUTINY TO VICTORIA'S DEATH.

Just before the end of the Indian Mutiny, a change in the ministry was made on account of a dispute with France. The French had long before this tired of their king, had organized a second republic, and then finally had fallen under the rule of a second emperor — Napoleon III. In 1858 an Italian threw at his carriage, in Paris, three shells containing a kind of powder that explodes by concussion. The explosion was so terrible that ten persons were killed and a hundred and fifty-six wounded. There was a great outcry among the French people because the assassin had obtained these bombs in England, and the emperor's secretary asked Lord Palmerston, who was then prime minister, to have a strict law made by Parliament for punishing such people. So Palmerston introduced a measure known as the Conspiracy Bill, which provided severe punishment for any one detected in a plot to murder.

The British people did not relish the interference of the French in the business of a British Parliament, and the bill did not pass. Lord Palmerston was therefore forced to resign. Lord Derby and Mr. Disraeli formed a new Cabinet.

**A Law Allowing Jews to Sit in Parliament** was made at this time. The oath that every member had to take on entering Parliament contained the words "on the true faith of a Christian," words which could not apply to a Jew. The form of oath was altered in such a way that these words were omitted.

The new ministry also tried to pass another reform bill,

giving laboring men the right to vote; but it was defeated. Lord Palmerston became prime minister again, and remained in office till his death in 1865.

**The Civil War in America** now came to add to the troubles of the working people in England. The manufacturers of cotton had their chief source of raw material suddenly cut off by the Federal blockade of Southern ports, and thousands of workmen in English cotton mills were thrown out of employment.

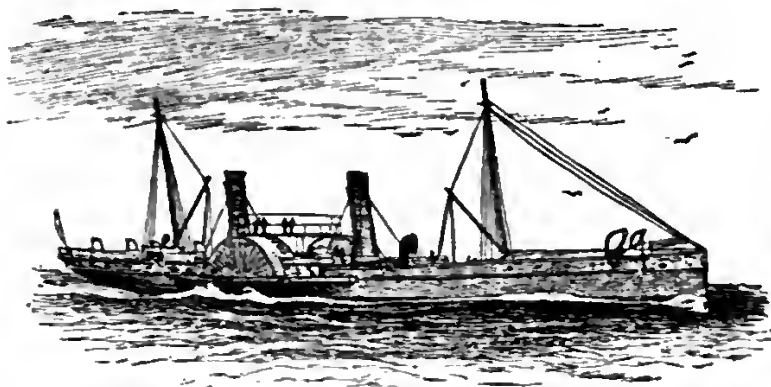
**The Trent Affair.** The Southern Confederacy wished to send representatives to the countries of Europe to enlist aid. James M. Mason and John Slidell were dispatched to Paris and London. They escaped through the blockade to Havana, and there boarded a British steamer, the "Trent," for England. The United States steamship "San Jacinto" overhauled the "Trent," and the two envoys were forcibly taken prisoners. Lord Palmerston at once demanded a return of the envoys and an apology, threatening war if refused. President Lincoln replied that the captain of the "San Jacinto" had acted without authority, and delivered the envoys to an English steamer in the Bahamas.

About this time, Prince Albert died, at the age of forty-two. By his death the United States lost their strongest friend in England. He had favored the Union from the beginning of the war and had already done much to keep English sympathy on the side of the North. His death was a great sorrow to the queen. From that time until her death she held no court and lived in seclusion. "The real queen died with her husband, and only her shadow remained."

The sympathy of the British government (that is, the Cabinet), and that of the merchant and manufacturing classes, was on the side of the South, while the lower ranks of the people favored the North. The workingmen of England felt that the North was fighting to set free millions of slaves, and

no amount of suffering, from lack of employment, could make them say or do anything in support of slavery.

**Blockade Runners**, low-built, swift-sailing steamers, were fitted out by English merchants. These ships would sail into Southern ports in the darkness, with supplies for the Southern armies, and carry off a cargo of cotton. Many were captured by the Federal navy, but those that escaped made large profits.



BLOCKADE RUNNER.

**The Alabama Claims.** The South also built or bought steamers in Great Britain, to plunder the merchant vessels of the United States. This was contrary to the law regarding neutral nations. The American minister, Mr. Adams, protested against it, but five of these vessels were sent out, manned partly by British sailors. The "Florida" and the "Alabama" were the most important of them. Their plan was to keep the British flag at the mast-head until they got near enough to the vessel they wished to attack; then they would suddenly run up the Confederate flag and compel the United States ship to surrender. In this way the "Alabama" captured seventy American merchant vessels. After the war was over the treaty of Washington was made with the United States, leaving the question of the payment to be made by Great Britain, for the property destroyed by the Confederate cruisers fitted out in that country, to a commission of five men who met at Geneva in 1872. It was decided that Great Britain should pay \$15,500,000, to be divided among the merchants who had lost their vessels.

**The Question of Parliamentary Reform** came up again at the close of the American war. Lord Palmerston died in

1865, the year of a parliamentary election. The Liberals carried the day, and Mr. Gladstone and Earl Russell became leaders. Russell was premier, and Gladstone the leader in the House of Commons. The reform bill which they proposed was defeated, and they resigned. Lord Derby and Mr. Disraeli came again into power. The workingmen held great meetings and sent petitions to Parliament. The government saw that they were determined to have the right to vote given to them. Mr. Disraeli thought that he might as well have the credit of being the giver. After several attempts, a bill was made that was satisfactory, and it passed both houses in 1867. It practically gave the right to vote, in cities, to every man who owned or rented a house.

**The Education Act.** Robert Lowe, a member of Parliament, said, "Now that we are to be ruled by the majority, the workingmen, we must educate our new masters." But a division in Parliament in regard to the Irish Church forced Disraeli and his ministry to resign, and it was left for Mr. Gladstone's ministry, which began in 1868, to make better provision for the education of the people. An Education Act was passed in 1870, establishing free schools among the poorer population throughout the kingdom. A small fee was charged where the people could afford to pay. All children were compelled to attend, and the dense ignorance which had so long prevailed in the great cities began to disappear. In each town there was a School Board chosen to look after the new schools, to which the name "Board Schools" was therefore given. Women as well as men were allowed to become members of such boards, and some of the best people took an active interest in education.

**The Fenian Movement** in Ireland had already given the government much trouble. The Fenian Brotherhood was an association of Irish and Irish-Americans for the purpose of making Ireland independent of England. Many Irish sol-

diers who had fought in the American Civil War were members. Irishmen who had gained wealth and influence in America drifted back to the old country to help in the cause of Irish independence. A general insurrection was planned for February, 1867, but did not succeed.

**Mr. Gladstone's Policy.** For centuries England had been keeping the Irish down by force. Mr. Gladstone now



AN IRISH FARMHOUSE.

proposed to listen to their complaints and satisfy them. "Three great branches of the Irish Upas-tree," he said, "I will cut down: the Irish Church, the Irish land system, and the Irish system of university education." In the first place, the Irish were taxed to support the so-called Irish Church, a branch of the English Church, which they did not attend, and they also paid willing contributions to support the Catholic Church, which they did attend. In some Protestant churches no services were held because no one came; yet the

poor Irish farmer was taxed for their support. It is no wonder that Mr. Lowe called the Irish Protestant Church "a barren tree in an ungrateful soil; it has no leaves, no blossoms, no fruit. Cut it down." It was cut down by a law which abolished all church rates, or taxes, in Ireland (1869). After this, all churches there were to be supported by the voluntary contributions of their members.

The Irish land system was the next "great branch" that Mr. Gladstone attacked. The most of the land was owned by English landlords who lived at a distance. It was let, by the year, to the small farmers, who could be evicted whenever the landlord pleased. If the farmer made improvements on his land, the landlord could turn him out and get more rent from some one else, and the old tenant lost the time and money that he had spent in making the improvements. A law was now passed which made the landlord pay the outgoing tenant for all the improvements that he had made. This act did some good, but did not satisfy the Irish farmers, who wished to own their farms and stop paying rent.

Mr. Gladstone did not succeed in cutting off the third branch,—the university system, by which the Catholics were practically excluded from a university education,—but he did make several other reforms.

**The Ballot Act** was passed in 1872. Before that time men had voted openly for members of Parliament, so that it was known for whom each one voted. For this reason men were often afraid to vote as they wished, fearing the power of their landlords or employers. The secret vote by ballot stopped this evil.

**Important Changes in Europe** were made during the passing of these reform measures. A third French Republic and a new German Empire came into existence; and the different parts of Italy were united under one ruler. These changes were brought about by several wars carried on be-



tween 1859 and 1871. The union of the small German and Italian states, each into a strong nation, was worth all the struggle it cost; but while these countries, with France and Austria, were devoting their chief energies to war, the English were advancing in the arts of peace. While France and Prussia were engaged in the war of 1871, also, Russia seized the opportunity to build a fleet in the Black Sea and fortify Sebastopol again; and England alone could not interfere.

**Mr. Disraeli**, who was later made Earl of Beaconsfield, became premier in 1874. For six years he carried on the government with a great display of power abroad. "Imperial policy," this was called; but his enemies called it "jingo policy," taking the name from a comic song written in ridicule: "We don't want to fight, but by jingo, if we do, we've got the ships, we've got the men, and we've got the money, too."

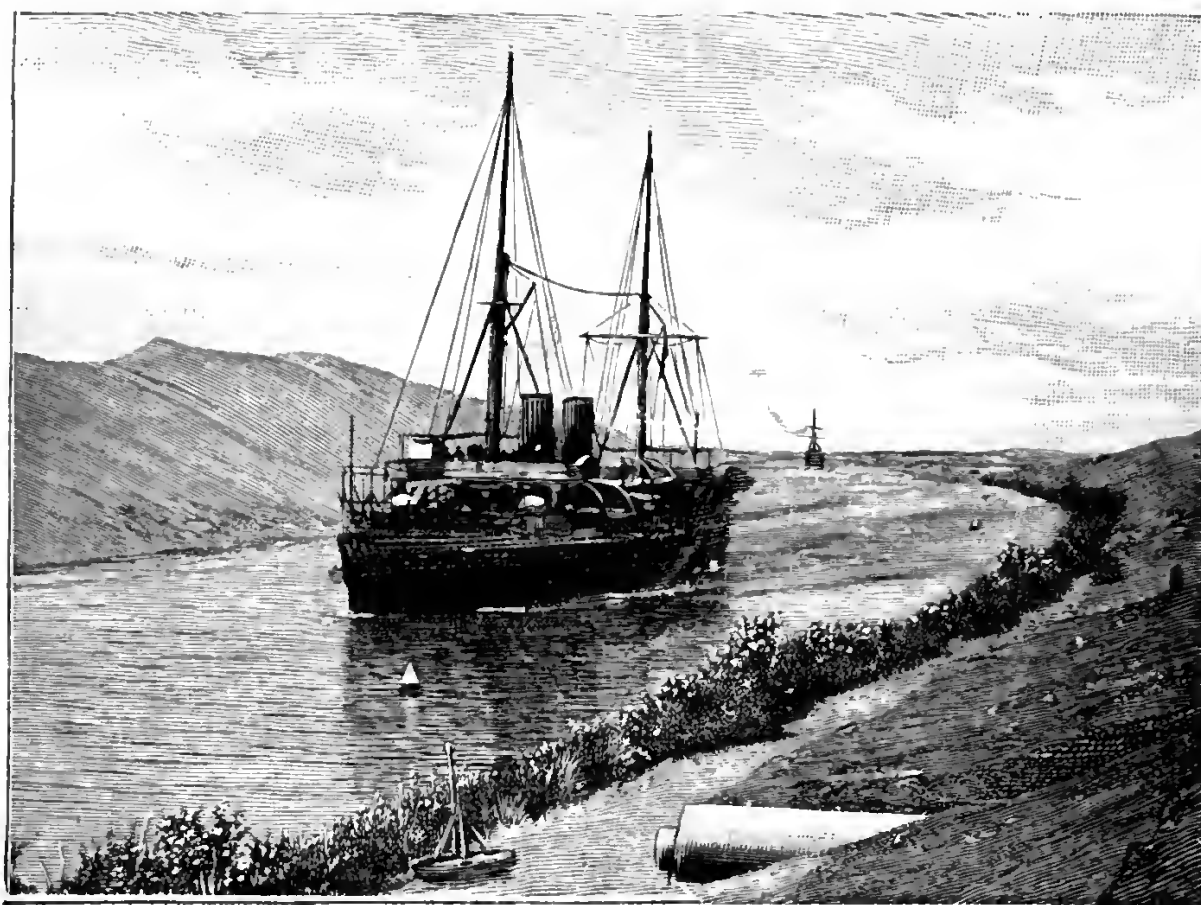
It was during this period that the queen formally took the title of "Empress of India" (1877); this was a suitable expression of the relations that had long existed between England and India.

**The Eastern Question** was brought up again by the massacre of Christians in Turkey. Russia declared war and defeated the Turks in 1877-8. But Beaconsfield thought the terms of peace were too favorable to Russia; and a congress of the European powers was held at Berlin to consider the matter. Through the influence of England and some other nations, Turkey was allowed to keep more territory and power than she otherwise could have held; still, several of the old provinces of Turkey were made independent. England at this time received from Turkey the island of Cyprus, which Beaconsfield thought was important on account of its being near the route to India.

**Egypt.** Among the foreign enterprises of Lord Beaconsfield was the purchase of nearly half the stock of the Suez



Canal Company. This canal had been built by the French engineer De Lesseps. It was opened in 1869. The Khedive of Egypt sold his share, which was nearly half the entire value of the canal, to the British government for \$20,000,000. The English people were delighted with the transaction, because the canal is of the utmost value to their commerce. The purchase gave England some right to interfere in Egyptian



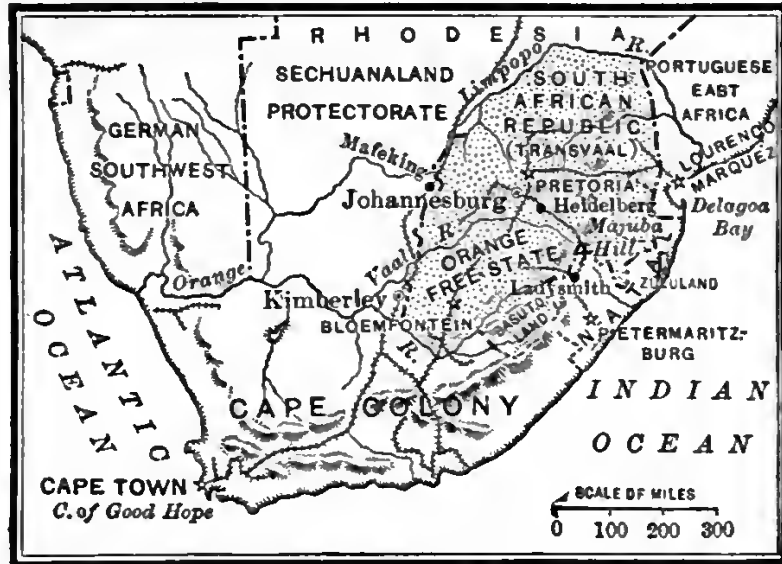
SUEZ CANAL.

politics, and she has gradually extended her power until Egypt is to-day practically a British province.

**Another Invasion of Afghanistan (1878)** was made under General Roberts. Several battles were fought, in which the British were successful, though they lost heavily. A force under Gen. Burrows, however, was defeated and besieged in Kandahar. Then came General Roberts's wonderful march across the mountains from Kabul to relieve this force (1880), an achievement that made him famous. The

Afghans were defeated, but, to the disgust of the officers, an order came from Lord Beaconsfield to retreat and give up the ground that the English had won.

The War with the Dutch South African Republic was due to another attempt of the premier to force British rule on unwilling people. The Dutch had originally settled Cape Colony, which was a halfway station on the way to their East Indian possessions. The Dutch colony was built up between 1650 and 1806, when the British



THE BOER REPUBLICS (1899).

seized it. Some years later English settlers began to arrive; but many of the Dutch colonists, or Boers, disliked their new neighbors so much that they moved farther north and east. The British government followed them, however, and annexed Natal (1843) and the country along the Orange River (1848). Many Boers then migrated across the Vaal River and founded the republic known as the Transvaal. England acknowledged their independence (1852) and the independence of the Orange Free State (1854). In 1877 the government of the Transvaal was in a very bad condition. Some of its people, favoring English rule, said that England ought to take possession of the country and restore order. An English agent at once declared the Transvaal a part of the British Empire. The English now took up a quarrel between the Boers and the Zulus, which ended in the capture of Cetewayo, the Zulu king, and the reduction of Zululand to a British province.

After the Zulu war the Boers of the Transvaal became dis-

satisfied, and set up for themselves the new independent government of the South African Republic. In the war that followed the successes were all on their side. At Heidelberg a hundred British were shot down with the loss of one Boer. Several other attacks of the British were almost as disastrous. Their last and greatest defeat was at Majuba Hill. Six hundred British troops had fortified themselves on the top of the hill, overlooking the Boer camp. The Boers, four hundred in number, stormed the hill and surrounded the British, killing or capturing half of them with a loss to themselves of one killed and five wounded. During this time Mr. Gladstone had again become prime minister. He made a treaty of peace with the Boers of the Transvaal, again acknowledging their independence, but reserving to Great Britain the control of their relations with foreign countries.

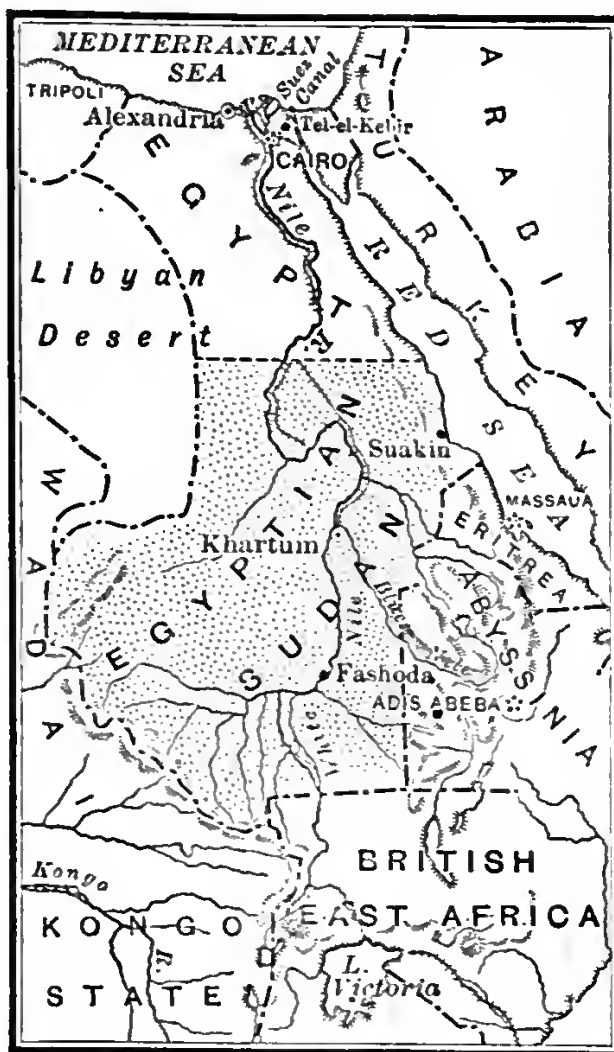
**Affairs in Egypt** were marked by success in the north and by disaster in the Sudan. A rising against Europeans in Egypt (1882), led by Arabi Pasha, an officer in the Egyptian army, resulted in the bombardment and destruction of Alexandria by the English. This was followed by the battle of Tel-el-Kebir, where Sir Garnet Wolseley defeated Arabi Pasha and took him prisoner. The Khedive has continued to be the nominal ruler of Egypt, but since 1882 England has really been in supreme control.

The Sudan is the great country south of Egypt and west of Abyssinia. The Egyptians, during Lord Beaconsfield's rule, had extended their authority into this region, and several garrisons were established at Khartum and other places. These garrisons were threatened by the rising of a new "Mahdi," or prophet, among the Arabs of the Sudan. The fanatical Mohammedans fought with great bravery and defeated an Egyptian army sent against them (1883). Gladstone's ministry then sent General Gordon, called "Chinese" Gordon from his successful work in putting down a great re-

bellion in China, to withdraw the garrisons from the Sudan. While waiting in Khartum for English troops which did not come, Gordon's army was massacred by the Mahdi and his followers, who were treacherously admitted into the fort. The weakness of the Gladstone government in supporting Gordon angered the people, and he had to resign in 1885.

**Reform Bills of 1884 and 1885.** Before Gladstone's resignation, however, he secured the passage of the third great reform bill, which gave the franchise to the laboring classes in the country as well as in the cities, adding two and one-half millions to the voting population. A year later, the kingdom was divided into districts, each one electing, as a rule, one representative to the House of Commons. These acts gave the House 670 members: 72 from Scotland, 103 from Ireland, and the rest from England and Wales.

**The Election of 1885** resulted in a victory for the Liberals. Gladstone again became prime minister. A strong Home Rule party had sprung up in Ireland, under the leadership of Charles Stewart Parnell, called the Nationalists. Their object was to repeal the Act of Union passed in 1800, and have Ireland governed by an Irish Parliament sitting at Dublin. The land reform act passed in 1870 had not worked well, and Gladstone now proposed a law to lend £50,000,000



EGYPTIAN SUDAN.

to the Irish tenants to enable them to purchase their farms of the landlords. This bill lacked thirty votes of passing, and Mr. Gladstone resigned.

**Election of 1886.** The home rule idea was not favored in England, and the Conservatives won the next election. Lord Salisbury became premier, and continued in office until 1892. During this period of six years several important measures were passed by Parliament. One of them abolished the fees paid by pupils in the elementary schools so that to-day England has a free school system.

**The Queen's "Jubilee"** was celebrated in 1887, in honor of the fiftieth year of her reign.

In contrast with the glory of the empire shown by the splendid pageants in London, was the general distress of the agricultural and laboring classes. The fall in the price of grain brought about by the repeal of the corn laws and by other causes had made the farmers unable to pay the high rents exacted by the landlords, and the government was obliged to give them assistance in purchasing the land, and in compelling the landlords to accept a lower rent.

**A Local Government Law** was made for England and Wales in 1888, giving to each county the power to elect officers to manage its own local affairs. Ten years later this law was extended to Ireland to console the Irish for the defeat of their last Home Rule Bill in 1894.

**Mr. Gladstone** became prime minister again in 1893, but retired from public life the next year, on the failure of his last effort to give home rule to Ireland. He had reached his eighty-fifth year, and had been over fifty years in the public service. Besides this, he had written many books on a variety of subjects, and was deeply interested in everything that was of interest to mankind. His noble and generous nature entitled him to the first place among the Englishmen of his time, and to the title that they lovingly gave him, "the

Grand Old Man." He died four years after his retirement, and one year after the "diamond jubilee" of the queen in celebration of her sixtieth year as Queen of England, and of her twentieth year as Empress of India.

**The Conservative Government** that went into power soon after Gladstone's resignation in 1894, completely changed the policy in Africa. Mr. Gladstone said that the invasion of the Sudan and the annexation of the Transvaal were entirely wrong, and that the Arabs and the Dutch should be allowed to carry on their government as they wished. Lord Salisbury and the Conservatives said that the British flag should not be hauled down where it had been once set up.

General Kitchener was sent into the Sudan from Egypt with a strong army of 25,000 men armed with magazine rifles and machine guns. He met the Arabs, numbering 50,000, near Khartum (1898). The mad rush of the enemy upon the English and Egyptians was met by a withering fire which mowed them down by thousands. Their short-range rifles could not reach the English. The supremacy of England in the Sudan was secured.

The Boer War in South Africa called Kitchener from his campaign in the Sudan, on the very eve of its completion. Things had gone badly with the British, and the strongest generals of the empire were needed. Let us now trace the events that led up to this war.

**Cecil Rhodes.** The most prominent man in South Africa at the time was Cecil Rhodes. When a young man he had left college and had gone to Africa for his health. While there he took an interest in the newly discovered diamond mines at Kimberley. The dry air of South Africa cured him of his lung disease, and he entered upon an active life. He became the head of the De Beers Diamond Company, which obtained entire control of the Kimberley mines, producing millions of dollars' worth of gems every year.



In 1889 Rhodes obtained a charter for the British South Africa Company, securing the right of trade and government in a vast territory west and north of the Transvaal, stretching away for nearly two thousand miles north of Cape Colony. His great ambition was to construct a railroad from Cape Town to Cairo and build up a great African empire for England which should stretch from Cape Colony to the Mediterranean Sea.

The Transvaal and the Orange Free State, the two Boer republics, lay in the way of his plan. A serious quarrel soon arose with the Boers on account of the discovery of gold in the mountain ridges along the southern borders of the Transvaal. There was a great rush of English miners into the country, and in a few years the flourishing "Gold City" of Johannesburg was built up in the mining regions.

The Boer government was unjust and narrow in its treatment of the "outlanders," as the foreign miners were called, who soon came to form the majority of the population. They paid two thirds of the taxes, but were not allowed to become citizens, and could neither vote nor have any share in the government. In 1895 the foreign population of Johannesburg published a "Bill of Rights" which they demanded from the Boer government.

**The Jameson Raid** followed immediately upon this demand. "Doctor" Jameson was an employee of Cecil Rhodes. In January, 1896, he led a raid of seven hundred men into the Transvaal, expecting that the foreigners would rise, and that together they would seize the government. The raiders were met by a force of Boers and defeated. Those not killed were captured. The British government apologized for the raid and punished the leaders, but began to prepare for war by moving soldiers and supplies into South Africa. The British soon demanded equal rights for Boers and British in the Transvaal. The demand was refused, and President Kruger



demanded the withdrawal of British troops from the borders of the Transvaal, and the removal of all troops from Africa that had been brought in since the failure of Jameson's raid. When England refused these demands, the Transvaal and the Orange Free State declared war, for the two republics had agreed to stand or fall together.

**The Boers were Prepared**, and sent their troops over the borders with a rush. In a few days, they defeated the British



A GROUP OF BOERS.

at every point, and laid siege to Kimberley, Mafeking, and Ladysmith, the three leading towns on the British frontier. Through the autumn and winter of 1899 the British met with frightful losses. The British general in chief, Buller, was no match for the swift movements of the Boer leaders. Volunteers from Canada, Australia, and the British Isles hastened to

Africa; 200,000 horses and mules were taken there from the United States and other countries to mount the British soldiers.

**Lords Roberts and Kitchener**, "the heroes of Kandahar and Khartum" were now sent to Africa. The British outnumbered the Boers three to one, and drove them in retreat from Cape Colony. The besieged towns had held out bravely,



QUEEN VICTORIA.

and the Boer besiegers were driven away from all of them after sieges lasting 134, 216, and 119 days. The British army entered Bloemfontein in March, and declared the Orange Free State a British colony. In June a similar declaration was made under the British flag in Pretoria. The war was ended, with the exception of guerrilla fighting on the part of several outlying bands of Boers. It had cost England thousands of soldiers and half a billion of dollars.

**Queen Victoria Died** in January, 1901, at Osborne House, her winter residence on the Isle of Wight. No sovereign ever died more generally loved and respected throughout the world. The boast of the old Greek patriot could be truthfully made of her, "that no citizen through any act of hers ever put on mourning."

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. Account for the attitude of the various classes of people in England toward the United States during the Civil War.
2. What were the effects of each of the three great reform measures?
3. What do you think of Gladstone's plans for curing the troubles in Ireland?
4. In what ways was the purchase of the Suez Canal beneficial to England? How did it affect commerce? Colonization?
5. What was the object sought in each of the wars of this period?

### TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. GORDON AT KHARTUM. Traill, *England, Egypt, and the Sudan*; Mackenna and O'Shea, *Brave Men of Action*.
2. THE DUTCH AND ENGLISH IN AFRICA. Doyle, *The Great Boer War*; Lee, *Source Book of English History*, pp. 369-385.
3. HOME RULE FOR IRELAND. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 391-400; McCarthy, *History of Our Own Times*, II., pp. 201-203.
4. GENERAL KITCHENER. Kendall, *Source Book*, pp. 448-459; E. N. Bennett, *The Downfall of the Dervishes*; Doyle, *The Great Boer War*.

### C. INDUSTRY, LITERATURE, GOVERNMENT, EMPIRE.

**The Change from Hand Labor to Machinery**, which took place during the early part of the nineteenth century, made such important changes in the life of the people and in the management of business, that this period is usually described as that of the "Industrial Revolution." In the days of hand labor, each workman had his spinning wheels and loom in his own house. But after the inventions made by Hargreaves, Crompton, and Cartwright, the machines used were large and cumbersome, and required steam or water power to run them. They were also expensive to make, and one man could no longer obtain money enough to own such machines. As a result, many men had to put their money together, to build factories and equip them with the machinery necessary to carry on manufacturing processes. Thus the factory system and companies arose. The workmen could no longer spin yarn and weave cloth in the old-fashioned way at home,

because this work could be done so much more cheaply by machinery. An amount of cotton thread worth 13 shillings in 1786 was worth only 1 shilling in 1832. A hand-weaver who earned 25 shillings a week in 1800 could earn only 5½ shillings in 1830. As men could not make a living by hand work, they moved into the towns and went to work in the factories.

**Two Classes** grew up; the capitalists, who owned the factories and mills with the machinery, and the laboring class, who did the work. These two classes were, on one point, opposed to each other. The capitalist wanted to hire his men as cheaply as possible in order to make a greater profit on his goods; and the laborer tried to get the highest price he could for his work.

The laborers soon found that by joining together in a demand for shorter hours and higher wages they could force the manufacturer to listen to them, since without workmen he could not carry on his business. Such a union of men engaged in a common occupation is called a "trades union."

If the employer refused their demands, the men would "strike;" that is, would stop all work until an understanding was reached. The trades unions caused so much disturbance by their strikes that Parliament in 1800 passed laws forbidding workmen to combine against their employers to raise wages. Labor unions did not stop, however, but continued to increase, and gradually grew into favor with the public. Laws against them have been repealed, and the rights of working people have been steadily upheld by their unions. There are now about 1,800 trades unions in Great Britain and Ireland.

**A Trade Council, or Federation**, is a meeting of delegates from the separate unions, and assembles every year, or oftener, to consider matters affecting laboring men throughout the country. They have a parliamentary committee, who

try to influence Parliament to pass factory acts (p. 357) and other laws favorable to the working people. In 1903, for instance, a trade council meeting at Sheffield petitioned Parliament to reduce the length of a working day to eight hours.

**Associations of Employers** have been formed to resist the demands of the trades unions. The Sheffield Manufacturing Union was one of the earliest of these, formed in 1814 to prevent a rise in wages. An association of the Employers of Engineers was made in 1851 to resist the demand of the Union of Engineers for higher wages. In 1873 a National Federation of the Employers of Labor was assembled to consider the demands of the Federation of Labor Unions. Besides these combinations of employers against the workmen, other associations are made to lessen expenses and keep up prices.

**Trusts and Trade Combinations** are the names by which such associations are known. To illustrate their working, let us suppose that there are several gas companies in the same city. Each company must have its own factories, pipe lines, offices, inspectors, and various employees. It may also employ salesmen to go among the people, to induce as many as possible to use the gas of that one company. If one company charges one dollar a thousand for gas, another may cut the price to ninety cents, and a third competing company may reduce it still further, until the price becomes so low that the business does not pay. Now suppose that all the companies join into one. Instead of three lines of pipe, they need only one; one office will do the work that before required three. No salesmen need be employed, because the people will be obliged to buy the gas supplied or go without. Thus by combining, the gas "trust," as we call such a union, will save a great deal of money in the cost of manufacturing and selling its product. As this trust has practically a monopoly, it may also increase the price of its gas, perhaps to one dollar and twenty-five

cents. In this manner some manufacturers in England, like many in America, have combined their interests; but gas works in England are now commonly owned and run by the city governments.

**Another Form of Trade Combination** consists only in an agreement upon uniform prices, terms of sale, length of credit, discounts, and so on. Each manufacturer selling the same product on the same terms, it will not matter to the purchaser where he buys. If two merchants in the same village agree to charge the same price for goods, they will divide the business between them.

**Profit Sharing** has, in many cases, proved a success in preventing strife between employers and their workmen in Great Britain. This consists in giving to the laborer a share of all the profit above a certain percentage on the capital invested. To illustrate, suppose that a certain factory with its machinery is worth a hundred thousand dollars. The owners agree to give to the employees half of the excess of the profits over ten per cent. If the annual profits should be twenty thousand dollars, the owners would reserve ten thousand for themselves, and divide five thousand, half the balance, among the laborers. This method gives the employees an interest in the business, and encourages them to work more earnestly for its success.

**The Victorian Age in Literature.** The reign of Victoria was marked by a wonderful increase in the number of books and authors, due largely to improved methods of printing, and to the growth of newspapers and magazines. More people now write because they can get their thoughts before the public more cheaply and easily than in the earlier times. Then, too, there is a greater demand for books as people become more intelligent.

**Alfred Tennyson** was the greatest poet of this period. His greatest works are "Idyls of the King," stories of the time of



Arthur (p. 31), and "In Memoriam," a long poem written in memory of his friend Arthur Hallam. But some of his shorter poems are better known: "The May Queen," "Locksley Hall," "The Charge of the Light Brigade," and many others are read and loved wherever the English language is spoken.

**Robert Browning** and his wife, Elizabeth Barrett Browning, were poets of the first rank, but their poetry is more difficult and has not the widespread popularity of Tennyson's.

**Dickens.** The greatest novelist since Scott is Charles Dickens. But while Scott revived the romantic tales of the days of chivalry and of the border wars, Dickens wrote about

real life and the humorous characters and incidents of his own time. He began the publication of his "Pickwick Papers" in 1836. The funny sayings of Sam Weller and Mr. Pickwick delighted everybody, and the book is still a favorite. "Oliver Twist," "David Copperfield," "Dombey and Son," and "Bleak House" are some of his best novels.

**William Makepeace Thackeray** was a clever satirist of the social follies of his time, while Dickens was the good-natured humorist and friend. Thackeray's "Virginians" deals with incidents of the reign of George III. "Vanity Fair," "The Newcomes," and "Pendennis" are his best novels. He wrote also a "History of the Four Georges" and numerous essays and lectures.



ALFRED TENNYSON.



**The Chief Historians** are Thomas B. Macaulay, Edward A. Freeman, James Anthony Froude, and Samuel Rawson Gardiner, all of whom wrote histories of their own country. Thomas Carlyle wrote also a history of the French Revolution, an event which influenced in so many ways the history of England.

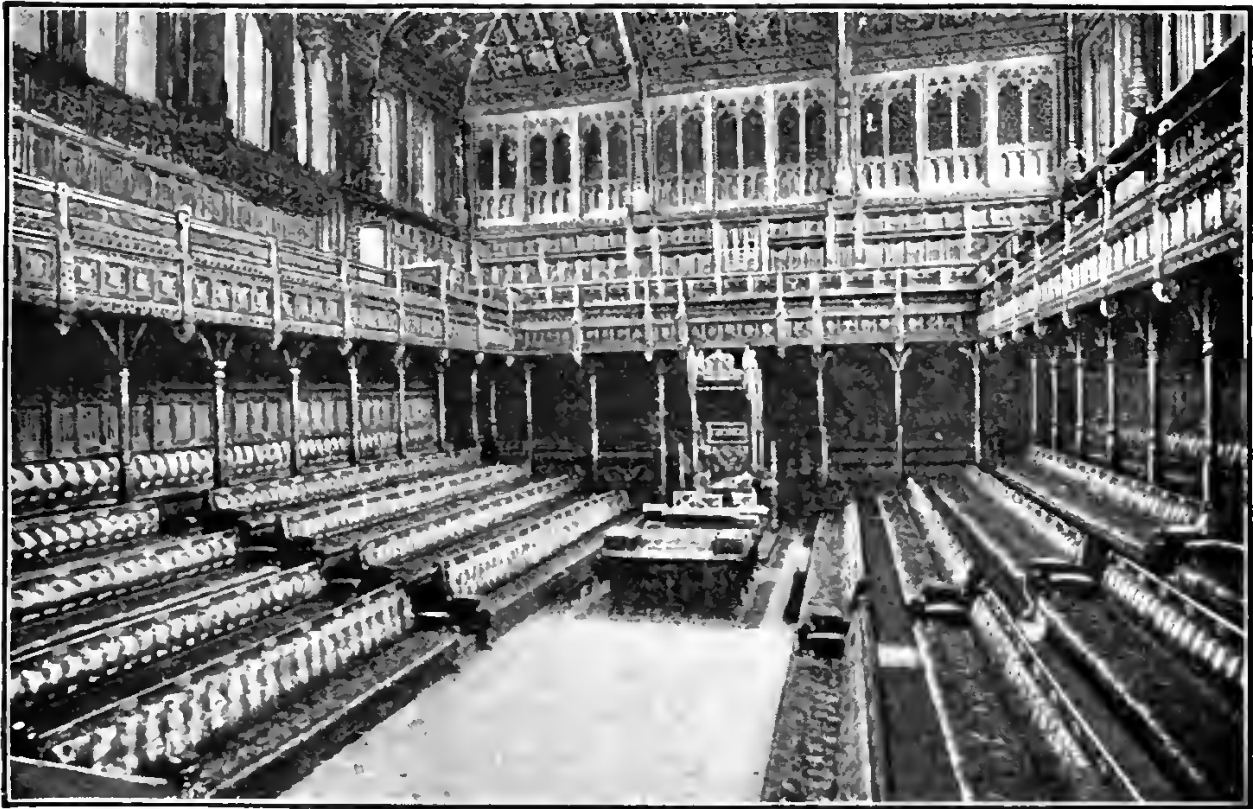
**Among Philosophers and Scientists** Herbert Spencer, Charles Darwin, Thomas Huxley and John Tyndall are the most important names. The first two are famous for their efforts to establish the theory of Evolution, which holds that all life is a development from lower forms. Huxley also studied animals, while Tyndall, following the methods of Bacon (p. 201) taught the world much about physical science. Lister revolutionized the practice of surgery by applying anti-septic methods.

**The British Government** has, since the time of William III., been marked by a continual decrease in the power of the crown, and a continual increase in the power of the House of Commons. When that king adopted the plan of choosing his ministry, not from several parties, but from the party having the majority of supporters in the House, he laid the foundation of popular power. After the passage of the reform measures (pp. 378, 385) giving the people the right to vote, it became possible for the will of the people to control the government as completely as in the United States.

**Parliament and Congress.** If we compare the power of Parliament with that of the United States Congress, we shall find three important differences.

First, there are practically no checks upon the power of the Commons. The veto power of the king is never used, the House of Lords seldom ventures to oppose a measure which has passed the Commons by a fair majority, and no British court can declare an act of Parliament unconstitutional, for Parliament can at any time change the constitution. In Congress,

on the contrary, the Senate (which is ~~is~~ elected by direct vote of the people) has equal power with the House of Representatives, and is under no compulsion to vote for a bill that has been passed by the House. And if a bill is passed by the Congress, it may be vetoed by the President and can be passed over his veto only by a two-thirds vote of both houses. And finally, the courts have power, in any case brought before them, to nullify any act of Congress which breaks our written Con-



THE MEETING PLACE OF THE HOUSE OF COMMONS.

stitution; the Constitution can be changed only by a three-fourths vote of the States.

In the second place it requires six years to obtain an entirely new Congress, since the senators hold office for that time. A new House of Commons is chosen whenever the Cabinet orders it. This enables the people of England to express their opinion on any given question at the polls at any time, and through their representatives to put it in the form of law.

In the third place, the House of Commons exercises far

greater control over the executive branch of government than our Congress has. We have seen (p. 285) how the prime minister took the place of the king as the presiding officer of the Cabinet in the time of George I. With the exception of George III., no sovereign since William III. has exercised much power in the administration of the government. All real authority is with the Cabinet, who are in reality a committee of the party having a majority in the House of Commons, and are responsible to the House for their actions. If their actions displease the House and it fails to support them, they must resign or order a new election.

**The Cabinet; King and President.** The number of officers composing the British Cabinet is not fixed by law, but depends on the needs of the government at the time. There are eleven, however, that always have seats in it: the First Lord of the Treasury, the Lord Chancellor, the Lord President of the Council, the Lord Privy Seal, the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the First Lord of the Admiralty, and the five Secretaries of State (for Home Affairs, for Foreign Affairs, for the Colonies, for India, and for War); of these the premier is usually the First Lord of the Treasury. Besides these eleven, several other administrative heads, as the Secretaries for Scotland and Ireland, the President of the Board of Trade, or of the Local Government Board, are usually given seats in the Cabinet.

The Cabinet officers are members of Parliament; some belong to the House of Lords, and some to the Commons. They frame and support bills affecting their several departments. Thus the Secretary for the Colonies would be expected to propose laws affecting the colonies; and the Chancellor of the Exchequer, those for raising revenue.

It will be readily seen that the powers of king and cabinet in England differ essentially from those of the president and his cabinet in the United States. The latter are strictly

executive officers and have nothing to do directly with law-making, except in the case of a veto (p. 397). The cabinet officers in the United States are responsible to the president rather than to Congress. Neither is the president responsible to Congress, but to the people only; the design of the Constitution of the United States being to make the legislative and executive departments of the government as far as possible independent of each other. In England, on the contrary, there is no such distinction of legislative and executive powers. There, the man who makes a law is supposed to be the one best fitted to carry it out.

The president selects his cabinet subject to the approval of the Senate; but he may choose any one he pleases. The king *must* choose as prime minister the man who leads the party that has a majority in the House of Commons, and the prime minister selects, subject to the formal approval of the king, the other members of the cabinet.

Thus we see that the differences between the national government of the United States and that of England are more numerous and important than the resemblances; and that government *by the people* may be more prompt and effective in England.

**The British Empire.** The little island of Great Britain has become the center of the most extensive empire the world ever saw. Twelve million square miles of territory, or over three times the area of all Europe, and four hundred millions of people now own allegiance to it. This empire stretches all the way around the globe, lies in all the zones with every climate, and includes people of every race, religion, and color, living in all the stages of civilization.

**In the Government of her Colonies,** the policy of Great Britain has, since the lesson taught by the American War (p. 317), been most liberal. We may conveniently group them into two classes. First are those that are almost entirely self governing; in them the prevailing race is English-speak-







ing. To this class belong the Dominion of Canada, Newfoundland, the Australian Federation, South Africa, and New Zealand. In each there is a legislature elected by the people and a governor-general appointed by the British government. He governs through a ministry, or cabinet, representing the majority of the popular branch of the legislature. The ministry is responsible for its actions to the legislature and not to the British government. But the British government has charge of the foreign relations of all the colonies, and makes treaties for them.

Colonies of the second class are known as the "crown colonies." These are more or less completely governed through the Secretary for the Colonies in London. There is in each of these a governor appointed by the crown, that is, by the British government. In some small establishments like Gibraltar and St. Helena, he is the only officer and has military power. In other colonies, like the Straits Settlements, there is a legislative council chosen by the colonial office to assist him. In Jamaica the people choose part of the legislature, while in the Bahamas and the Bermudas it is entirely elected by them. In all the crown colonies the governor is responsible to the Colonial Office in London, and not to the people of the colony.

**India** has a government of its own quite different from the rest of the empire. It is governed, through a governor-general and his council, directly by the Secretary of State for India, who is a member of the Cabinet. The secretary is assisted by a council of fifteen men experienced in Indian affairs. The governor-general also is assisted by a council, chosen partly by the secretary and partly by himself, who administer the affairs of India, and who have also some legislative power. Many states of India are still governed by native princes, subject to the control of English officials; the rest of it is divided into a number of provinces. The



provinces of Madras and Bombay have governor-generals chosen by the crown, while the rest are subject to lieutenant-governors chosen by the Governor-General of India.

**Protectorates and Spheres of Influence.** Besides the above classes of colonies, a large part of the empire consists of protectorates, which, though not counted as British soil, have their foreign relations subject to British control. These protectorates are in various stages. In some, as Nigeria and British East Africa, chartered companies are in control; others are directly managed by the Foreign Office; still others shade off into "spheres of influence," which are stepping-stones to protectorates and colonies.

**British Institutions in the Colonies.**—It will be noticed that the colonial governments in their full development are faithful copies of the home government. The principles of the Magna Charta have been extended to the colonies, and the freedom that Englishmen enjoy at home is assured to them wherever the flag flies. It is these common institutions that bind the scattered parts of the British Empire together, and that have given rise to the idea of an imperial confederation, or union of the whole empire, governed by a common Parliament sitting at Westminster. Whether this may be realized or not, it is certain that British colonial government has been productive of the highest good to mankind and that English-speaking colonists everywhere are loyal and take a patriotic pride in owning allegiance to the empire on which the "sun never sets."

### QUESTIONS FOR THOUGHT.

1. How did the introduction of machinery and the factory system affect the English people?
2. Mention some good and some bad effects of the organization of capital. Of labor. What benefits arise from profit sharing?
3. What advantages does the British Cabinet have over the American?
4. Would it be better to elect a new Senate every two years? Give reasons. In what way do the king and the president resemble each other? The prime minister and the president?

## TOPICS FOR HOME READING.

1. BRITISH COLONIAL GOVERNMENT. H. E. Egerton, *Origin and Growth of the English Colonies*, pp. 140-180.
2. THE BRITISH FLAG. Cumberland, *History of the Union Jack*.

## D. BEGINNING OF THE NEW CENTURY.

## Edward VII., 1901-1910.

The New King, Albert Edward, was sixty years of age when on the morning of January 23, the King-of-Arms



EDWARD VII.

from the balcony of St. James Palace announced the reign of "King Edward the VII." As Prince of Wales, he had long been a prominent figure in public life. He had traveled in many countries, and especially throughout the British Empire. He visited the United States in 1860, where he made many friends through his natural tact and good-fellowship. He visited the Holy Land in 1862, Egypt and Ireland in 1869, and made a tour of India in 1875.

**The Old and the New.** The death of Victoria and the opening of the new century marked the close of "The Victorian Age" (p. 394). It had been an age distinguished by

great accomplishments in art, literature, inventions, manufactures, commerce, and colonial expansion. Toward its close, however, it became evident that the British people were falling behind other great nations both in the art of war and in the arts of peace. The Prince of Wales, on returning from a tour of the colonies in 1901, had told the people of England that they must "wake up," not only in the organization of the army but also in methods of manufacturing and trade, if they were to meet the keen competition of Germany and America. The education of the lower classes had never been fully provided for in the academies and parish schools, and it was not until 1902 that a system of public education was established which included all grades of schools and all classes of people. An Army Council was created in 1904, and steps were taken to improve both the equipment and training of the army and the mechanical training of naval officers.

**The Year of the Coronation.** The coronation had been fixed for June, 1902, and distinguished persons had gathered from all parts of the Empire. A score of Indian potentates came to see the crowning of their new emperor. Premiers and ministers from the colonies, the crowned heads of Europe or their representatives, and regiments of soldiers from all parts of Europe gathered in the hotels or camped in the parks.

**Peace with the Boers.** The Boer representatives had come to London to discuss the South African question with General Kitchener and Mr. Joseph Chamberlain, the Colonial Secretary. It was agreed that the Boers should acknowledge themselves as subjects of the king and lay down their arms. The exiles and prisoners returned to their homes, and the British government appropriated 800,000 pounds for the relief of both the loyalists and the Boers who had been made destitute. The Transvaal and the Orange Free State were

organized into British colonies. Eight years later they were joined with Cape Colony and Natal in the "Union of South Africa."

**Cecil Rhodes; Education Bill.** On March 26 of the coronation year, Cecil Rhodes died. He will be remembered for his great contribution to the cause of higher education, as he left by will the sum of 2,000,000 pounds to the Oxford universities to found the "Rhodes Scholarships" for young men. Fifteen of the scholarships were to be assigned to Germany, 60 to the British colonies, and two to each of the United States.

The public education bill of 1902 revoked the Act of 1870 (page 378), and provided a national system of education, including elementary, secondary, and technical schools. The administration of these schools was placed with town and county committees, and funds were provided for both public and private schools. The Workers' Educational Association and the British Academy were also founded during the coronation year.

**Irish Land Purchase Bill.** There had been a long struggle to relieve the Irish people of the evils of landlordism. Mr. Gladstone had worked earnestly toward this end, but had failed of success (page 385). Numerous partial relief measures had been devised and the public had gradually been brought to the opinion that Ireland should belong to the Irish. The bills passed in 1885, 1887, 1891, and 1903 provided for the purchase of the land through government loans at a low rate of interest, so that every Irish farmer would presently own his farm.

**The Tibet Expedition.** In 1904 the Indian government dispatched an expedition under Colonel Younghusband to enter Tibet for the purpose of negotiating a treaty of commerce with the Grand Lama at Lassa. This city is the most sacred center of one form of the Buddhist religion, and there

was some opposition offered to the English but little serious fighting. The ruling Lama fled and a more friendly successor was left in authority. The treaty was signed after obtaining the assent of the Chinese government, to which Tibet owes allegiance.

**Political Parties and Policies.** When Mr. Gladstone retired from his fourth premiership in 1894 on the failure of Parliament to pass his Home Rule bill, he was succeeded by Lord Salisbury as the head of the new Conservative government (page 387); this party remained in power about ten years. It stood for strong government, and had successfully waged two wars in Africa by which the British power was established and consolidated in the Egyptian Sudan and in South Africa. Through the shrewd political management of Joseph Chamberlain a number of popular measures were incorporated into the Conservative program under the label of "Liberal Unionism." Among such measures were acts providing for sanitary tenements, protection of the water supply, and limiting and regulating the powers of corporations. The Public Education Bill and the Licensing Act restricting the sale of intoxicating liquors, were also the work of the Conservative Government.

**Restoration of Liberal Control.** The prime minister, Mr. Balfour, noting the growing strength of the Liberal party, resigned in December, 1905, and Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman became the head of the government. In January of the following year a new House of Commons was elected which was composed of 397 Liberals, 51 Labor members, 83 Nationalists, and 157 Conservatives or "Unionists." The old Conservative party had lost 212 members. In the new cabinet were Herbert Henry Asquith, Chancellor of the Exchequer, Sir Edward Grey, Foreign Secretary, and David Lloyd George, Secretary of the Board of Trade. After the illness and resignation of the prime minister in 1908, Mr.

Asquith succeeded to that place and Lloyd George became Chancellor of the Exchequer.

The new Parliament set to work on a number of popular measures. It wished to prevent the importation of contract labor into the colonies and to induce the colonies to establish "preferential tariffs" in favor of English goods. It legalized peaceful strikes and restricted the teaching of denominational religion in the public schools. It was at this time that the woman suffrage movement became prominent and numerous bills for giving the ballot to women were discussed during leisure moments in the House of Commons. A bill was passed pensioning all persons over 70 years of age, the pension to be five shillings per week.

**The Taxation Bill.** These various benevolent measures of the Liberal Parliament cost a large amount of money. When the Old Age Pension Bill was put into operation, it was found to require 12,000,000 pounds instead of 6,000,000. The appropriation for the navy had to be vastly increased to keep pace with the growth of the German navy. The Education Bill, the Trades Exchange Bill, and the numerous measures for improving the conditions of the working classes added greatly to the public expense. In order to provide funds, a new scheme of taxation was needed, and the taxation bill which was finally evolved became known as the "People's Budget"; as it was mainly the work of the new head of the Exchequer it was also known as the "Lloyd George Budget."

The new tax bill introduced in 1909 raised the rates on all incomes, especially the *unearned* incomes, and on landed property. The "unearned increment" of land, that is, the increased value due to no effort of the owner but to the general growth of business, was assessed 20%. On farms and small holdings generally the rate was unchanged. Hotels, restaurants, liquor purchased by clubs, motor vehicles used for pleasure and gasoline were also heavily taxed. The bill



bore hardest upon the rich landed proprietors and upon the wealthy classes generally, and was condemned by them as "revolutionary" and as a piece of "class legislation." The House of Lords rejected the bill, claiming that it was not strictly a revenue bill but a new piece of legislation "tied round with a budget string." The dissolution of Parliament and a new election followed, by which the Liberals won, although by a smaller majority than in 1906. The House of Lords was therefore obliged to pass the bill. The House of Commons now proceeded to enact a new measure which forbade the Lords to take any part in the future in the enactment of any law for raising revenue, and thus they precipitated a new struggle with the upper house, which was interrupted by the death of the king, May 6, 1910. His eldest son, Albert Victor, had died in 1892 and he was therefore succeeded by his second son, George.

### George V., 1910—

**The New King.** Like William IV., Prince George had followed the sea, and had not been trained with that careful regard for statesmanship that is usually bestowed upon the "heir apparent." He had mingled much with all classes of people and had visited most parts of the great empire over which he was called upon to rule.

**The Parliament Bill.** The king's speech on opening Parliament, February 6, 1911, referred to the necessity of settling the relations of the two Houses. The law enacted provided that all bills concerning the raising of revenue should not require the assent of the House of Lords; that all other bills, on any question whatever, might become law without the assent of the Lords, if passed by three successive Houses of Commons.

**Coronation; the Durbar.** The coronation of the new king and queen was the chief event during the summer of 1911.



The ceremonies took place in Westminster Abbey on June 22. In November, the king and queen visited India to attend a second magnificent coronation ceremony, or *darbar*, in the city of Delhi, in honor of the transfer of the capital of the Indian Empire from Calcutta to its ancient seat where the Great Moguls had ruled. Another important event of the year was the annual meeting of the Imperial Defense Conference held in London in May. All the colonies having independent governments — Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, and Newfoundland — were represented.

**The Home Rule Bill.** During the next two years the Irish Home Rule question was uppermost. Parliament enacted a law in 1914 which provided a separate parliament in Ireland to make all laws concerning that country, while reserving certain general powers relating to peace, war, and international relations to the existing British Parliament. The Protestant Irish of Ulster refused to countenance any measure which tended to dissolve their union with Great Britain. They actively opposed the bill and threatened revolution if it was passed. For a time it seemed the law would have to be put into effect at the point of the bayonet.

Owing to the outbreak of the World War, its execution, like many other matters, was postponed. Another measure passed by the same Parliament was a bill to disestablish the Church of England in Wales, but this also was held up by the war. A National Insurance Act went into effect July, 1912, which provided for the insurance of all working people against sickness and incapacitation. The cost of insurance was to be divided between the workingmen, the employers, and the government. A Plural Voting Bill also was passed, which took away the right of any man to vote in different counties where he happened to have estates; it had the effect of annulling many thousand Conservative votes.

## E. THE WORLD WAR, 1914-1918.

**Remote Causes.** At various periods in her history, England has joined with other nations in making war on some power which had grown so strong as to endanger the peace of Europe. (See pages 165, 271, 368, 381.) For the last fifty years, however, it had been the policy of British statesmanship to hold aloof from the quarrels of the continental states, and to devote the resources of the United Kingdom to developing and consolidating the Empire. This task had been formidable enough, as the Indian Mutiny and the Boer War proved.

**The Rise of Germany.** In this book only occasional mention has been made of Germany for the reason that she did not become a great political power until 1871, when the late German Empire was founded. After that time, however, she advanced by leaps and bounds in all the arts of life. Her story is inseparably connected with that of Prussia, the dominant state, and with the house of Hohenzollern, the ruling dynasty of Prussia and the Empire. Since 1701, when Prussia first became a kingdom, the army had been maintained in a high state of efficiency and made superior to the civil authority. The same military spirit had also animated Austria, the second great German power. It was the aim of Germany to be continually prepared for war. The province of Schleswig-Holstein was taken from Denmark in 1864, and the Kiel Canal was cut across it connecting the North Sea with the Baltic. Railroads were built for the purpose of moving troops rapidly from point to point, and underground wires connected the important military posts by telegraph and telephone.

In 1866, Prussia defeated Austria in the "Seven Weeks" War, and drove her out of the German Confederation, thus leaving Prussia supreme. In 1871 a six-months' war was

fought with France, by which Germany acquired the French province of Alsace-Lorraine, and levied an indemnity of \$1,000,000,000. During the forty-five years of the Empire's existence she acquired colonies and possessions in all parts of the world and extended her influence in southeastern Europe and western Asia. Her manufactures and commerce increased enormously, and her merchant vessels carried German goods into all parts of the world.

**Jealousy of Russia and England.** Germany's chief rival in the Balkan states and in western Asia was Russia. Both nations coveted Constantinople and the trade of western Asia. In extending her colonial system and her commerce, Germany always came into rivalry with Great Britain. Wherever she sent her ships and her merchants, she found the British merchant and trader.

The Slav states in southeastern Europe clung to Russia as their protector, while in opposition to this "pan-Slavic" movement, Germany and Austria drew together in a "pan-German" alliance which was joined by Italy in 1882 to form the "Triple Alliance," and which was renewed at various times and was still in force at the outbreak of the war in 1914.

As an offset to the Triple Alliance, Great Britain, Russia, and France also entered into a friendly understanding called the "Triple Entente," for the preservation of the balance of power in Europe.

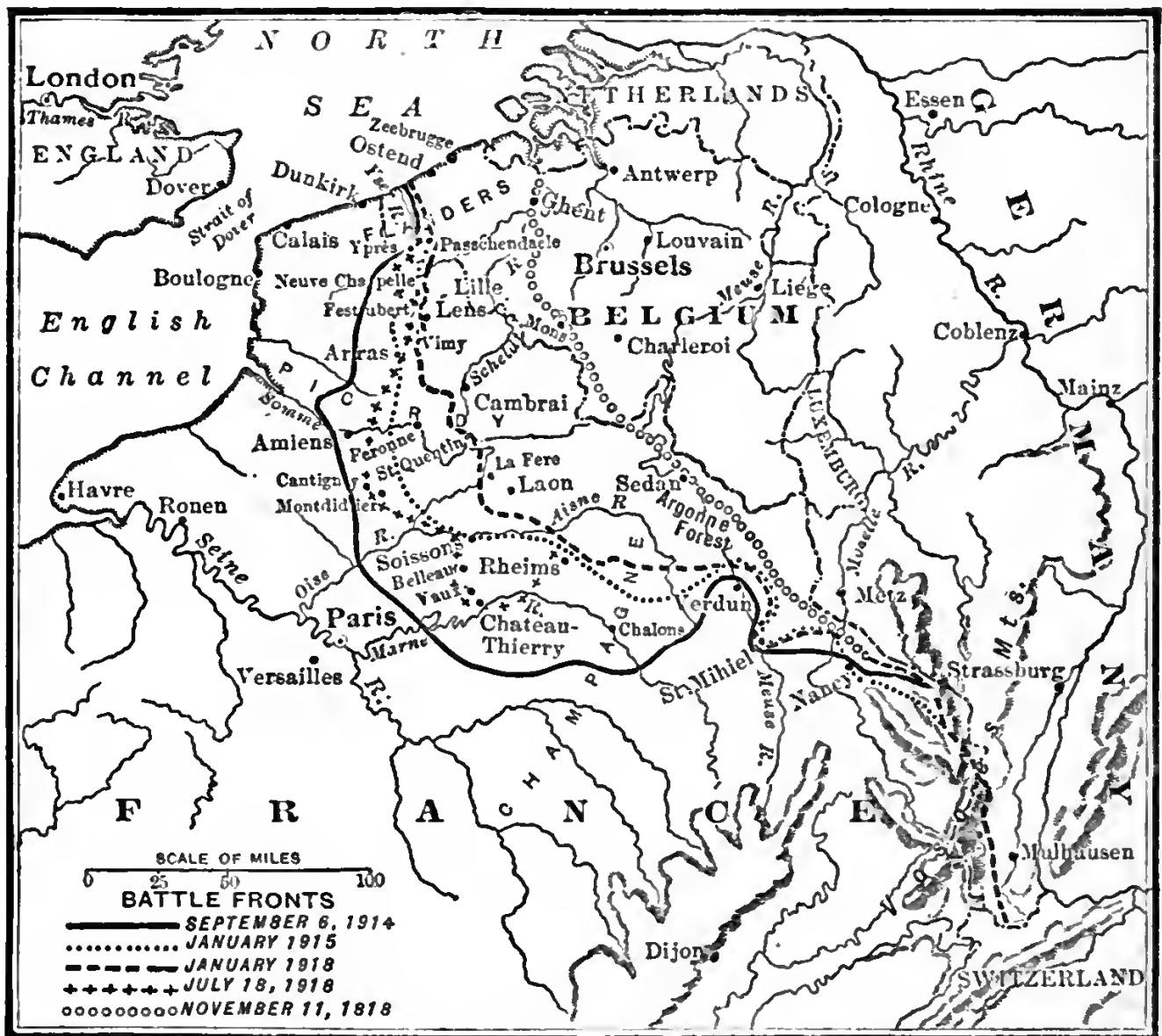
**German Interests in the Near East.** Gradually German statesmen developed a plan for the extension of trade and political power through southeastern Europe and into western Asia. They cultivated friendly relations with the Turks, and obtained concessions to build the Bagdad railroad. Eventually, Germany contemplated a "Berlin to Bagdad line," thus driving a wedge between her enemies on the East and West, and putting her into a favorable position for attacking the British in Egypt and India.

**The Spark that Kindled the War.** In 1908, Austria annexed the provinces of Bosnia and Herzegovina, which were chiefly inhabited by Serbs, and in 1913 she set up an independent Albania under a German prince, thus cutting off Serbia from access to the sea. This action doubtless led to the assassination of the heir presumptive to the Austrian throne, Archduke Francis Ferdinand, and his wife, while they were on an official visit to Sarajevo, the Bosnian capital. The murderer, though an Austrian subject, was a Serb, and Austria suspected, or pretended to suspect, that the murder had been instigated by the Serbian government. She accordingly, with the approval of Germany, made very severe demands on Serbia. Her failure to comply in full with the Austrian demands within the specified time was followed by the Austrian declaration of war, upon which Russia ordered the mobilization of her armies.

**England Declares War on Germany.** Sir Edward Grey, the British Foreign Secretary, strove hard to avert war, but in vain. Germany had resolved to strike! Very soon after the Russian threat of mobilization she declared war on Russia and France, and advanced her troops into Belgium and Luxemburg preparatory to the invasion of France. Upon this invasion — August 4, 1914 — Great Britain declared war on Germany. The neutrality of Belgium had been guaranteed in 1839 by all the European powers, including Prussia herself, but Frederick the Great had long ago declared that "he kept his treaties only so long as it was for his interest to keep them"; and now the German Chancellor, Bethmann-Hollweg, complained to the British ambassador that "just for a *scrap of paper*," meaning the Belgian treaty, "England was about to make war on a friendly power." In May, 1915, Italy entered the war on the side of the Allies; Bulgaria declared for Germany in October of the same year,

while Turkey under strong German pressure had taken the German side in November, 1914.

**Events of 1914; Battle of the Marne.** The German plan was to sweep through Belgium with a huge army, crush



THE WESTERN FRONT.

France, capture Paris, and collect a large indemnity before Russia could get her forces into action; but Belgium interposed so vigorous a resistance that Germany had to bring up heavy guns to reduce the fortresses of Liège and Namur, while England hurried across the Channel an expeditionary force under Sir John French to coöperate with the French army dispatched by General Joffre. The opposing armies

met at Mons but during a five-days battle the Anglo-French forces were steadily driven back to the river Marne. On September 5, Joffre issued his famous order "to stand and die on the field " rather than retreat farther. Then followed a four-days battle — "the miracle of the Marne" — involving 2,000,000 men. It was one of the "decisive" battles of the world, for the Germans were defeated and compelled to retreat. Paris was saved, and the world was saved from German domination. The German plan had miscarried, and the long struggle had fairly begun.

**Defense of the Channel Ports; Battle of Ypres.** Intrenching themselves behind the river Aisne, the Germans turned back north to complete the conquest of Belgium and to seize the seaports on the English Channel and thus cut off British aid from France. They succeeded in their first objective, but were balked in their attempt on the Channel ports by the long battle of Ypres, where a British force of 150,000 valiantly blocked the path of 500,000 Germans for nearly a month, while reënforcements were being hurried over. The year 1914 closed with the battle line marked out from the coast of Belgium to the Swiss mountains. During the next three years there was a continuous trench fighting along this line, but with no great advantage to either side.

**Conditions in England at the Beginning of the War.** The leading men in the cabinet at the outbreak of the war were H. H. Asquith, the premier, David Lloyd George, the Chancellor, and Sir Edward Grey, the Foreign Secretary. England's total military forces at the time numbered about half a million scattered throughout the Empire, and she could send only 60 000 men in August, 1914, to the defense of Belgium.

After several party conflicts, a "Coalition Cabinet," made up from all parties, was called together by Mr. Asquith in



May, 1915. It consisted of 22 members with an inner "War Cabinet," and fifty or more additional committees dealing with the various forms of war activities. Lord Kitchener, as War Secretary, set to work to recruit and equip the first "million," and Lloyd George as Minister of Munitions began the work of converting the manufacturing plants of the country into one vast system of munitions works.

**Government Control of Industry.** By a series of "Defense of the Realm Acts," the government gradually assumed control of lines of transportation and communication, and all industries. At the end of eighteen months the Coalition Cabinet was dissolved, and on December 6, 1916, Lloyd George was chosen premier. He proceeded to organize a most remarkable "cabinet," which continued in power until the close of the war. There was first a special War Cabinet of five, of which he was himself the head; second, an "outer circle" of heads of departments — 88 in all; third, a series of ministries which eventually numbered 400, for directing the energy of the kingdom to the successful prosecution of the war. A registration of all persons between the ages of 16 and 65 was made, to find out what each was willing and able to do for the public good. At first volunteers were depended on, but in February a Military Bill was passed, imposing compulsory service upon certain classes of citizens. By the summer of 1918, 2,500,000 men were in the army, and 2,000,000 men and women were working in munitions factories and related industries. In 1914 the government had three munitions factories; in 1918, it had 25,000 turning out guns, munitions, and supplies.

**The Dominions beyond the Seas.** It had been the expectation of the German Powers that the British Empire would fall to pieces on the outbreak of war. But the British dominions entered into the war with enthusiasm. New Zealand sent 220,000 men out of a population of 400,000



males of over 15 years of age. Canada's contribution was 640,886 men. Australia's total efforts included 416,809 men and \$1,250,000,000. Besides her contribution in men (136,070 men) and money, South Africa sent General Jan Smuts, who became a member of the War Cabinet. In India, 1,161,789 men were recruited during the war, and her war fund amounted to \$600,000,000 — a large sum considering the poverty of the country.

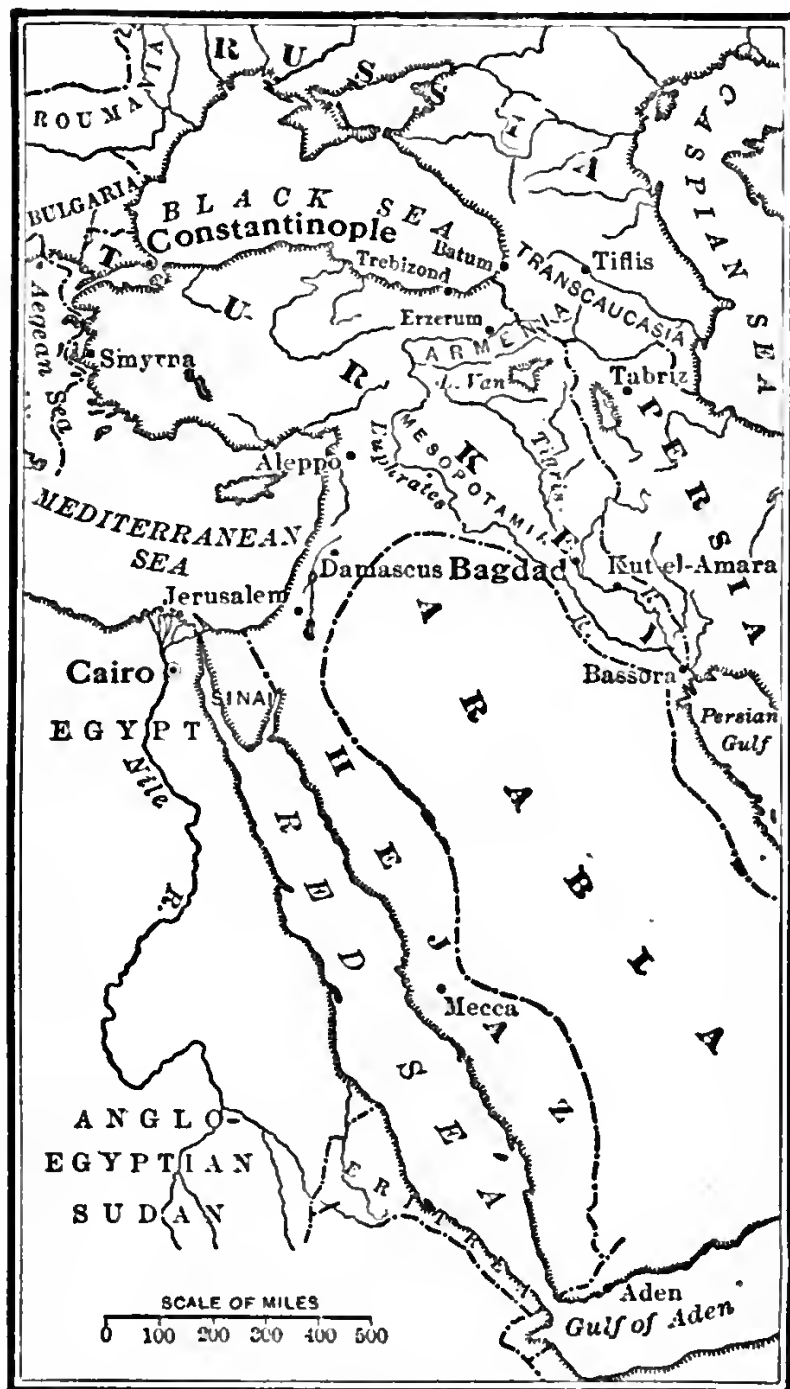
The World War involved three fourths of the people of the world, of which 60,000,000 were called to arms. 7,000,000 were killed in battle, and 20,000,000 more were wounded; of these, 6,000,000 were permanently maimed. The British Empire contributed 8,654,467 men and \$35,000,000,000. The total cost of the war is put at about \$186,000,000,000.

**Events in Eastern Europe.** Russia began the war by sending armies into Galicia and East Prussia, thereby diverting large German forces from the western frontier. For a time the Russians were victorious, but after the Germans had entrenched themselves in the West, they halted the Russian advance. In the following year they overran Poland and a wide strip of western Russia. During 1916, the Russian government, honeycombed by corruption, treachery, and inefficiency, gradually collapsed, and in March, 1917, the Czar abdicated and a republican form of government was established.

In the beginning of the war, Serbia had successfully repelled the Austrian attacks; but in October, General Mackensen, after his victory over the Russians at Dunajec, invaded Serbia, and with the help of Bulgaria utterly crushed that country. The remnant of the Serbian army was carried by the Italian navy to the Island of Corfu. ✕

**Failure at Gallipoli and Fall of Roumania.** While the Serbian tragedy was in progress the British and French had landed a force of 200,000 men on the peninsula of Gallipoli, between the Aegean Sea and the Dardanelles (April, 1915),

for the purpose of forcing a passage through to the Black Sea to open the way for Russian grain and to stop the Rumanians



WESTERN ASIA.

from supplying food-stuffs and oil to the Germans. The attempt failed, and the British lost three battleships through submarine attacks; the force was withdrawn in January, 1916, more hastily on account of the rapid progress of the German armies southward through Serbia. In August, 1916, Rumania entered the war on the side of the Allies, but was crushed by the Germans.

**Italy's Part in the War.** Italy entered the war in May, 1915, but accomplished little the first year beyond engaging the attention of a large Austrian

army. In 1917 a combined Austrian and German army forced the Italians back with heavy loss to the Piave River north of Venice, where they managed to hold on until ready for the spectacular counter-offensive in 1918, when they took 400,000 prisoners and 7000 guns within three days and forced Austria to agree to an armistice November 4.

**Egypt and the Near East.** As the native Egyptian government was strongly pro-German, a British and Colonial army occupied the country early in the war. In November, 1914, the Turks began massing troops in Syria, and the Khedive was busy among the Mohammedan tribe of the Senussi dwelling in the desert west of Egypt — both meditating an attack on that country. Under these circumstances England proclaimed a protectorate over Egypt. Both enemy campaigns proved unsuccessful. In December, 1916, the British took the offensive. General Allenby made his historic entrance into Jerusalem December 11, 1917. Hussein, the Sherif of Mecca, who claimed descent from the Prophet Mohammed, joined Allenby against his former Turkish master, and received for his aid the acknowledgment of his title "King of the Hedjaz."



ALLENBY'S ENTRANCE INTO JERUSALEM.

**The Winning of Mesopotamia and Bagdad.** For three centuries the British had been established in the Persian Gulf, the outlet of the Tigris-Euphrates river system. Where these rivers approach each other in the Mesopotamian plain stands Bagdad, the ancient capital of the Mohammedan Caliphs and the eastern terminus of the Kaiser's projected

railroad. In April, 1915, General Townshend led a drive into Mesopotamia, but was forced to surrender at Kut-el-Amara, a Turkish fortress on the Tigris. General Maude at the head of a fresh expedition recaptured Kut and entered Bagdad in March, 1917. Under the Treaty of Versailles the province of Mesopotamia became a British protectorate, and much has already been done to reclaim that fertile but desolate region from the havoc wrought by twelve centuries of Turkish misrule.

**Complete Conquest of Western Asia.** In the meantime, General Allenby and his Arab allies had defeated an army of 125,000 Turks and Germans, and completed the conquest of Syria in October, 1918. This campaign, together with that of General Maude, and the Allied advance against the Turkish front near Adrianople, forced Turkey to enter into an armistice on October 30, 1918. In the Far East, Japan, who had entered the war in August, 1914, had captured the German "concession" of Kiaochow in the Chinese province of Shantung, and had also gathered in all the Pacific islands lying north of the Equator belonging to Germany.

**German Colonies in Africa Seized.** Germany lost most of her African colonies in the first year of the war. French and Belgian troops took Togoland and Kamerun in August. The conquest of German Southwest Africa was left to the South African Union. At the beginning of the war a rebellion had broken out in South Africa, led by De Wet and Beyers, former Boer leaders who still cherished their hatred of the British. The South African government finally captured De Wet and brought the rebellion to an end. The conquest of German Southwest Africa was then seriously undertaken, and the last German forces surrendered in July, 1915. The conquest of German East Africa took four years, but was completed by combined armies, who forced

the German leader to surrender in Northern Rhodesia, where he had taken refuge, on November 14, 1918.

**The Western Front, 1915-1918.** The struggle for the Channel ports was marked in 1915 by the British drive at Neuve Chapelle, where they gained ground at a heavy sacrifice. This was followed by the German counter-attack and the resulting second battle of Ypres. Here it was that the Germans made the first use of poison gas, contrary to the rules of civilized war. The reply to Ypres was an Anglo-French drive in Champagne led by Marshal French, which failed, owing chiefly to lack of munitions and men. Nevertheless it was felt that the British commander was too slow, and Sir Douglas Haig was sent to command on the western front. In July, 1916, Haig began the series of drives known as the first battle of the Somme, to relieve the German pressure on the Verdun fortresses. The German aim — "to bleed France white" before Great Britain could fully muster her forces — was defeated. It was met by the rallying cry — "They shall not pass" — and more than 100,000 Frenchmen died on the battlefield of Verdun. The fortress was never taken.

**The German "Strategic Retreat."** As a result of the 1916 campaign the German commander, Von Hindenburg, retired to a selected line of defenses known as the "Hindenburg Line." This was a series of trenches, fortified heights, and barbed-wire entanglements, the most ingenious and formidable defenses ever used on the field of battle. It was deemed impregnable, but was, nevertheless, severely dented in the battle of Arras, where the Canadians captured Vimy Ridge. The blowing up of the Messines salient by planting 1,000,000 pounds of explosive was one of the spectacular British achievements of the year. The most important event of the year 1917, however, was the entrance of the United States into the conflict by its war declaration of April 6, 1917.

In order to understand this action of our country and the general condition of affairs in 1917, it is necessary to review the naval part of the war.



TANKS: AUTOMOBILE FORTS DESIGNED BY THE BRITISH.

The perfecting of the submarine, the most dangerous form of war craft ever devised, gave the Germans a tremendous advantage, for they were in great measure independent of the sea, while its free navigation was the very life blood of Allied powers. The sea routes had to be kept for the transportation of food, munitions, and troops. During the war British ships transported 22,000,000 men across the seas with a loss of only 4391; yet during the same period over 9,000,000 tons of British shipping were sunk, while her allies and neutrals lost about 6,000,000 more, about 3000 vessels in all.

**Important Naval Battles.** At the beginning of the war there were hundreds of German ships abroad on the high



seas and in foreign ports. Within two months about 1,000,000 tons of German shipping was either captured or interned. A German squadron of five ships, in command of Admiral Von Spee, was operating off the coast of Chile in the autumn of 1914. Admiral Craddock ventured to attack with four ships of an older and inferior type, and was defeated and killed at Coronel with a loss of three of the ships and 1600 men. The loss was quickly avenged by Admiral Sturdee, who caught the German fleet at the Falkland Islands, about one month after the Coronel disaster, and sent to the bottom Von Spee with four of his ships and their crews. The *Dresden* escaped, but was later taken off Juan Fernandez Island. In August, 1914, the British made an attack on German cruisers patrolling the waters about Heligoland, a strongly fortified island guarding the mouth of the Elbe and the Kiel Canal where the German fleet was blockaded. A few small vessels were sunk, but this area was found to be so well defended with mines and submarines that it was determined to wait for the Germans to come out.

**German Raids; Dogger Bank and Battle of Jutland.** The German plan was to send swift cruisers to the English coast, draw out the British, and scatter mines as they hurried away. Their raids against an undefended coast resulted only in the destruction of dwelling houses and churches and the killing of women and children. One of these raiding squadrons was intercepted on the Dogger Bank and one German cruiser, the *Blucher*, was sunk, and others damaged.

The chief naval battle of the war was that of Jutland off the Danish coast, fought May 31, 1916, when Admiral Beatty fell in with the German fleet out in full force. He chased back their advanced line of cruisers, but meeting with a superior force, turned north to await the arrival of Admiral Jellicoe, who had been signaled to come to his aid.



On the arrival of Jellicoe the German fleet retreated during a running fight and sought safety behind their mine fields. Both sides lost several ships, but the German fleet never came out again to fight in the open, but remained "bottled up" until their final surrender November 21, 1918.

**Sinking of the *Lusitania* and the *Sussex*; Unrestricted Submarine Warfare.** According to the rules of civilized warfare, when passenger vessels and merchant vessels are taken, the lives of passengers and crew must be safeguarded. Disregarding this rule the Germans sunk the *Lusitania*, an unarmed British passenger ship, drowning 1134 men, women, and children, many of whom were Americans. Another violation of the rules of naval war was the sinking of the *Sussex*, an unarmed British Channel steamer also carrying neutral passengers, including Americans. On January 31, 1917, Germany announced that thereafter all ships without distinction would be sunk without warning if found in the waters near the British Isles. The response to this was the American declaration of war, and the development of new methods of destroying submarines and of avoiding their attacks; by the spring of 1918 submarines were being destroyed faster than they could be built and the menace drew to a close. The last sinking by a submarine occurred November 2, 1918.

**The Last German Offensive — March to July, 1918.** In the early part of the year, Germany, victorious in the east, made a treaty of peace with Russia, by which she secured large additions of territory. She then turned to the west to strike the great blow for which she had long been preparing. On March 21 she launched an army of 750,000 men against the French and British lines west of St. Quentin with the purpose of breaking through, separating the two allies, and driving the British back upon the Channel and the French toward Paris. In this attack, called the battle

of Picardy, a salient 35 miles deep was driven into the Allied lines, which steadily drew back. Another German army struck farther south, forcing the French back across the Marne at Chateau Thierry, making another deep dent in the Allied line. Other hard blows were struck at different points, while the famous long-range gun, the "Big Bertha," bombarded Paris at a distance of 75 miles.

**The Darkest Period of the War.** Foch made Supreme Commander. As it is "darkest just before day," so this — the darkest period of the war — came just before the final victory. Marshal Haig issued an order to his armies warning them of the seriousness of the situation and declaring that the lines must be held at any sacrifice. The great danger forced the Supreme War Council to appoint Foch supreme commander of all the Allied armies (March 29). For six weeks the Germans poured shot and shell upon the Allied lines and sacrificed their best troops to break through, but their efforts after the first great rush soon showed signs of weakness. In June they began to send troops across the Marne at Chateau Thierry, but were promptly halted by French and American forces.

**Allied Counter-attack and End of the War.** Immediately after his appointment as supreme commander, Foch began to prepare for the great counter-attack which he believed would bring the great struggle to a successful close. As soon as the German drive was halted, he struck the first blow. On July 18 a combined French and American force attacked the Germans on the Marne and drove them back eight miles the first day with heavy losses. This, the second battle of the Marne, was followed by other blows. The British drive began in August, southeast of Amiens, and within a few weeks the Germans had lost all the ground they had gained since March and were back behind the fortifications of the Hindenburg Line. Foch continued his attacks on the weaken-

ing German lines. The Americans took the St. Mihiel salient, and soon the Germans were in full retreat.



KING GEORGE REVIEWING AMERICAN TROOPS.

**Abdication of the Kaiser; the Armistice.** When the German leaders recklessly forced the United States to declare war, they did not believe that we could send enough soldiers across the ocean in time to save the day for the Allied cause; but when they saw Americans in the front of battle and learned that millions were on the way, they knew the war was lost. The German Emperor fled to Holland on November 9, and two days later German delegates met Foch at Campiegne and agreed to an armistice, by which they surrendered 40,000 guns, 74 war craft, and other military supplies. They agreed to withdraw from all the countries they had invaded and to surrender temporary control of the

west bank of the Rhine. The war was over, and it now remained to create new nations who had won their freedom, draw new boundaries, and build again the cities and homes which had been destroyed.

**Versailles Congress: Peace Treaty and League of Nations.** The chief event of 1919 was the assembling at Versailles of the representatives of thirty of the leading powers of the world to make a treaty of peace with Germany and to create a League of Nations, which thereafter should arbitrate disputes and prevent war. The treaty was signed on June 28, 1919, on the anniversary of the tragedy at Sarajevo and was ratified early in 1920. It sets forth the terms of peace with Germany, restores Alsace-Lorraine to France, recognizes the independence of the new nations, defines boundaries, provides for reparations on the part of Germany for the damage she had done, and creates a new "League of Nations," composed of those whose delegates signed the treaty and of others who may hereafter care to join it. Geneva was selected as the meeting-place of the representatives of the League.

By the treaty with Germany and agreements under the League of Nations, several of the German colonies in Africa and in the Pacific Ocean came under the control of the British Empire. By treaty with Turkey and agreements under the League of Nations, the British control also Palestine and Mesopotamia.

**Political Events.** The shock of the war had tended to draw the members of the Empire closer together and to break down the barriers between classes at home. Henceforth the dominions were to be consulted on all international questions affecting their interests, and the Imperial Conference had its beginning. It was decided that such a conference should be held annually, and should be composed of the British premier and such of his associates as were

concerned with international affairs, and of the premiers on the dominions and a representative from India.

**Extension of the Franchise to Women.** At the beginning of the war the right to vote was still withheld from domestic servants and women. Other restrictions tended to favor the possession of property as a qualification for voting. The militant suffragettes who had favored violence to win their cause before the war had laid aside every prejudice, and entered whole-heartedly into all sorts of occupations to help the nation. Their splendid service was recognized, and when the Franchise Act of 1918 was drawn the right to vote was given to women over 30 years of age, with certain exceptions, the age for men being 21. The membership of the House of Commons was increased from 670 to 707.

At the general election held December, 1918, the Coalition party elected 467 members, and their opponents, the labor party who had withdrawn from the Coalition, 63 members. The country refused to support the extreme measures proposed by the Labor party, which was really an alliance of the trade unions. It was a personal triumph for David Lloyd George, who continued to head the British Government. Two great problems remaining for him to solve were to establish a government for Ireland which should be acceptable to all classes and to adjust the manifold disputes between laborers and employers and the general public.

**The Labor Problem.** Great Britain has developed to a far greater extent than any other country the trade union. The various unions have joined in a national federation and that Labor party has elected many members of Parliament. They have through these means secured various recognized rights—collective bargaining, right to picket during strikes, besides shorter hours and higher wages. In recent times, and especially since the World War, some of the labor leaders have entered into alliance, more or less openly, with those

radical elements of society who wish to have the state own and operate the industries of the country for the benefit of the workers.

**The Treasury Conference.** In the spring of 1915 when the Minister of Munitions was making effort to speed up production, he was confronted by the twin problems of profiteering and strikes. A conference was arranged between the government officers and thirty-five trade unions, by which it was agreed that there should be no strikes on government work during the war and that any kind of labor and machinery could be used which should serve to increase output. The government guaranteed the wage scale and promised to limit the profits of employers.

**The Labor Commission and the Present Problem.** The labor parties to this agreement failed to keep it, and strikes went on during the remaining years of the war. In 1917, the British Labor party published a report, written by Mr. Arthur Henderson, setting forth "The Aims of Labor" at great length, which "aims" involved nothing less than the confiscation of all property, both public and private, in the interests of the laboring classes, home rule for all nations, and the creation of a new social order "based not on fighting but fraternity." In July, 1917, the Ministry of Labor published an official report prepared by J. H. Whitley, M.P., recommending "industrial councils" composed of employers and workmen — one for each plant or factory, one for each industrial district, and one for the whole nation. The labor problem still confronts the British public, and what its ultimate solution shall be must be left for the future to reveal.

**Government of India Bill.** On August 20, 1917, the announcement of the new policy toward India was made in the House of Commons. This policy included "The increasing association of Indians in every branch of the administration,

and the gradual development of self-governing institutions with a view to the progressive realization of responsible government in India as an integral part of the British Empire." The "Government of India Act" of December, 1919, provides for a government more directly responsible to the people than it has been heretofore.

**The Government of Ireland.** The Home Rule Bill, passed in 1914, was utterly unacceptable to the people of Ulster, who threatened civil war if its enforcement was attempted. It was equally unacceptable to the Irish Republicans, who cherished the hope of complete independence, and who gradually drew together into an organization called "Sinn Fein," a Gaelic phrase meaning "We Ourselves." The Sinn Fein was founded by Arthur Griffith in 1915, and combined the elements in Irish politics who favored setting up an independent republic in Ireland by "direct action" or physical force.

**The Rebellion of April, 1916.** During the dark days of 1915 certain Irish leaders thought they saw a chance to break the bonds with Great Britain and set up an independent state. To this end they sought the aid of Germany, and Sir Roger Casement, a retired official and a pensioner of the Crown, went first to America and then to Germany to arrange for the dispatch to Ireland of a German army with arms and munitions, and for a simultaneous attack in force on the coast of Britain. All loyal Irish Republicans were to be aroused, and a general attack was to be made on the British on Easter Eve, April 22. All these plans miscarried; the German army did not come, the munitions ship was blown up by its own crew, and Casement and his companions were captured. Nothing daunted by this situation, the Dublin Irish Volunteers seized the public buildings and proclaimed the Irish Republic. Padraic Pearse announced himself as commander in chief of the Army of the Republic, and



president of the provisional government, and declared: "We have written with fire and steel the most glorious chapter in the history of Ireland." On Monday British troops began to arrive, martial law was declared, and on Saturday, April 29, Pearse surrendered and the rebellion was at an end. About 1000 Sinn Fein prisoners were taken and fourteen of the leaders were convicted under martial law and shot; 55 others were sentenced to life imprisonment; the remainder of the prisoners were interned.

**Later Developments in Ireland.** The failure of the uprising did not discourage the Sinn Fein, and they declared a war to the death with Britain. In the greater part of Ireland they carried the elections of 1918, refused to attend the British Parliament, and set up an independent legislature in Dublin, called the Dail Eireann. For the next two years Ireland continued in a state of war, not only of Irish Republicans against the forces of the Crown, but civil war as well. Hundreds of people were killed, homes invaded and burned and the inmates murdered, and public buildings and private property looted and destroyed.

**The Revised Home Rule Bill.** In 1920, a new Home Rule Bill was framed for the government of Ireland, which provided for separate parliaments for the North and South; that of Ulster was to sit at Belfast, and that of southern Ireland at Dublin. The Belfast parliament was formally opened by the king in July, 1921, but the southern parliament could not be organized because the elected delegates refused to attend. During 1920 and part of 1921, the "war" went on; but in the summer of 1921 a truce was agreed on, and the British premier and the Irish Republican leaders met in conferences in an effort to secure lasting peace.

# APPENDIX.

## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE: IMPORTANT EVENTS AND DATES IN ENGLISH HISTORY.

### THE ROMAN PERIOD, 55 B. C.—410 A. D.

Cæsar's first invasion . . . . .	55 B. C.
Claudius begins conquest of Britain . . . . .	43 A. D.
Revolt of Boadicea . . . . .	61
Agricola builds line of forts . . . . .	81
Hadrian's Wall begun . . . . .	121
Romans leave Britain . . . . .	410

### THE ANGLO-SAXON PERIOD, 449–1066.

First Anglo-Saxon invasion of Britain . . . . .	449
Augustine preaches in Kent . . . . .	597
Church Council of Whitby . . . . .	664
First invasion of the Danes . . . . .	787
Death of Egbert, first king of all England . . . . .	839
Reign of Alfred the Great . . . . .	871–901
Peace of Wedmore . . . . .	878
Massacre of Danes in England . . . . .	1002
Danish Conquest of England . . . . .	1013–6
Canute becomes king . . . . .	1016
Edward the Confessor becomes king . . . . .	1042
Battle of Hastings . . . . .	1066

### THE NORMAN PERIOD, 1066–1154.

<i>William I.</i> . . . . .	1066
Charter granted to London . . . . .	1066
Hereward defeated at Ely . . . . .	1071
Landholders swear allegiance to William . . . . .	1086
<i>William Rufus.</i> . . . . .	1087
The king robs the church of its revenue . . . . .	1094
<i>Henry I.</i> . . . . .	1100
The first charter of liberties granted . . . . .	1100
Normandy conquered at Tinchebrai . . . . .	1106
Princess Matilda marries Geoffrey Plantagenet . . . . .	1128
<i>Stephen.</i> . . . . .	1135
Civil war begins . . . . .	1139
Treaty with Henry Plantagenet . . . . .	1153

## THE PLANTAGENET PERIOD, 1154-1399.

<i>Henry II.</i> . . . . .	1154
Payment of scutage established . . . . .	1160
Constitutions of Clarendon . . . . .	1164
Murder of Becket . . . . .	1170
Strongbow's invasion of Ireland . . . . .	1170
Circuit judges appointed . . . . .	1178
<i>Richard I.</i> . . . . .	1189
Third crusade . . . . .	1190-1194
<i>John.</i> . . . . .	1199
Battle of Bouvines . . . . .	1214
The Great Charter . . . . .	1215
John's war with the barons and death . . . . .	1216
<i>Henry III.</i> . . . . .	1216
The Charter confirmed . . . . .	1216
The Friars land in England . . . . .	1221
Coal mines opened . . . . .	1234
Battle of Lewes . . . . .	1264
De Montfort's Parliament . . . . .	1265
Battle of Evesham . . . . .	1265
<i>Edward I.</i> . . . . .	1272
Statute of Mortmain . . . . .	1279
The Conquest of Wales . . . . .	1282-4
Jews driven from England . . . . .	1290
Model Parliament . . . . .	1295
Confirmation of Charters . . . . .	1297
Scotland conquered . . . . .	1296-1304
<i>Edward II.</i> . . . . .	1307
Battle of Bannockburn . . . . .	1314
Edward deposed and murdered . . . . .	1327
<i>Edward III.</i> . . . . .	1327
Independence of Scotland admitted . . . . .	1328
Woolen manufacture introduced . . . . .	1331
House of Commons becomes a distinct body . . . . .	1333
Hundred Years' War begun . . . . .	1337
Battle of Crécy . . . . .	1346
Capture of Calais . . . . .	1347
The Black Death . . . . .	1348-9
Staples (market towns) established . . . . .	1354
Battle of Poitiers . . . . .	1356
Peace of Bretigny . . . . .	1360
<i>Richard II.</i> . . . . .	1377
Revolt of the peasants . . . . .	1381
Chaucer begins the "Canterbury Tales" . . . . .	1384
Henry Bolingbroke returns to England . . . . .	1399
Parliament chooses Henry king . . . . .	1399

## THE LANCASTRIAN PERIOD, 1399-1461.

<i>Henry IV.</i> . . . . .	1399
Revolt of Glendower . . . . .	1400
Battle of Shrewsbury . . . . .	1403
<i>Henry V.</i> . . . . .	1413
Battle of Agincourt . . . . .	1415
Treaty of Troyes . . . . .	1420
<i>Henry VI.</i> . . . . .	1422
Siege of Orleans . . . . .	1428-9
Joan of Arc burned . . . . .	1431
Jack Cade's Insurrection . . . . .	1450
End of Hundred Years' War . . . . .	1453
Wars of the Roses begin; battle of St. Albans . . . . .	1455
Battles of second St. Albans and Towton . . . . .	1461

## THE YORKIST PERIOD, 1461-1485.

<i>Edward IV.</i> . . . . .	1461
Warwick restores Henry VI. . . . .	1470
Battles of Barnet and Tewkesbury . . . . .	1471
Death of Henry VI. in the Tower . . . . .	1471
Caxton prints the first book in England . . . . .	1477
<i>Edward V.</i> ; murdered . . . . .	1483
<i>Richard III.</i> . . . . .	1483
Battle of Bosworth; end of Wars of the Roses . . . . .	1485

## THE TUDOR PERIOD, 1485-1603.

<i>Henry VII.</i> . . . . .	1485
Court of Star Chamber . . . . .	1487
Laws against retainers . . . . .	1487
First voyage of John Cabot . . . . .	1497
<i>Henry VIII.</i> . . . . .	1509
Battle of the Spurs and battle of Flodden . . . . .	1513
Wolsey becomes chief minister . . . . .	1515
Beginning of Protestant Reformation in Germany . . . . .	1517
Henry makes himself Supreme Head of the English Church . . . . .	1531
Death of Sir Thomas More . . . . .	1535
Dissolution of the monasteries . . . . .	1536-9
<i>Edward VI.</i> . . . . .	1547
Battle of Pinkie . . . . .	1547
First English Prayer Book . . . . .	1549
Act of Uniformity . . . . .	1549
The Forty-two Articles . . . . .	1552
Grammar schools and hospitals founded . . . . .	1552-3
<i>Mary.</i> . . . . .	1553
Wyatt's rebellion; Lady Jane Grey executed . . . . .	1554
Reconciliation with the Pope . . . . .	1554
Loss of Calais . . . . .	1558

<i>Elizabeth.</i> . . . . .	1558
Protestantism restored . . . . .	1559
John Knox preaches in Scotland . . . . .	1559
Mary Stuart lands in Scotland . . . . .	1561
Thirty-nine Articles . . . . .	1562
Slave trade begun by Hawkins . . . . .	1562
Drake's great voyage . . . . .	1577-80
Raleigh sends first colony to Virginia . . . . .	1585
Execution of Mary, Queen of Scots . . . . .	1587
The defeat of the Armada . . . . .	1588
East India Company chartered . . . . .	1600
Conquest of Ireland completed . . . . .	1603

#### THE STUART PERIOD, 1603-1689.

<i>James I.</i> . . . . .	1603
Hampton Court Conference . . . . .	1604
Founding of Jamestown . . . . .	1607
Death of Shakespeare . . . . .	1616
Execution of Raleigh . . . . .	1618
Landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth in America . . . . .	1620
<i>Charles I.</i> . . . . .	1625
The Petition of Right . . . . .	1628
Wentworth sent to Ireland as Deputy . . . . .	1633
Laud made Archbishop of Canterbury . . . . .	1633
Hampden refuses to pay ship money . . . . .	1637
Long Parliament meets . . . . .	1640
Execution of Strafford . . . . .	1641
Civil War begins at Edgehill . . . . .	1642
Cromwell's Ironsides organized . . . . .	1642
The Solemn League and Covenant . . . . .	1643
Marston Moor . . . . .	1644
Naseby . . . . .	1645
Execution of Charles I. . . . .	1649
<i>The Commonwealth.</i> . . . . .	1649-1653
Cromwell in Ireland . . . . .	1649-1650
Battle of Dunbar . . . . .	1650
Battle of Worcester . . . . .	1651
Blake's battles with the Dutch . . . . .	1652-3
Cromwell dismisses the Long Parliament . . . . .	1653
<i>The Protectorate.</i> . . . . .	1653-1660
Death of Oliver Cromwell; Richard Cromwell Protector . . . . .	1658
<i>Charles II., the Restoration</i> . . . . .	1660
Second Dutch War. . . . .	1664-7
The Plague in London . . . . .	1665
The Great Fire in London . . . . .	1666
Secret treaty of Dover . . . . .	1670
Third Dutch War . . . . .	1672-4

# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

v

The Test Act . . . . .	1673
Habeas Corpus Act . . . . .	1679
Rise of Whigs and Tories . . . . .	1680
Town charters revoked . . . . .	1683-4
James II. . . . .	1685
Monmouth's Rebellion . . . . .	1685
Trial of the Seven Bishops, June . . . . .	1688
William of Orange lands in England, November . . . . .	1688
William III. and Mary II. . . . .	1689
The Bill of Rights . . . . .	1689
Mutiny and Toleration Acts . . . . .	1689
War of the Palatinate . . . . .	1689-97
Battle of the Boyne . . . . .	1690
Battle of La Hogue . . . . .	1692
Bank of England founded . . . . .	1694
Freedom of the press . . . . .	1695
Act of Settlement . . . . .	1701
Anne. . . . .	1702
War of the Spanish Succession . . . . .	1702-13
Battle of Blenheim . . . . .	1704
Gibraltar taken . . . . .	1704
Union of England and Scotland . . . . .	1707

## THE HANOVERIAN PERIOD, 1714-

George I. . . . .	1714
Jacobite Rebellion in Scotland . . . . .	1715-16
Septennial Act . . . . .	1716
South Sea Company and others fail . . . . .	1721
Walpole prime minister; rise of the Cabinet . . . . .	1721-42
George II. . . . .	1727
War of Jenkins's Ear begins . . . . .	1739
England in War of the Austrian Succession . . . . .	1744-48
Second Jacobite Rebellion in Scotland . . . . .	1745-46
Battle of Culloden . . . . .	1746
"New Style" calendar adopted . . . . .	1752
French and Indian War . . . . .	1754-63
The Seven Years' War . . . . .	1756-63
William Pitt (the elder) in power . . . . .	1757-61
Clive wins the battle of Plassey . . . . .	1757
Capture of Quebec . . . . .	1759
George III. . . . .	1760
The Stamp Act . . . . .	1765
Watt invents the condensing steam engine . . . . .	1765
Prison reform begun by John Howard . . . . .	1774
Port of Boston closed . . . . .	1774
American Declaration of Independence . . . . .	1776
Burgoyne's surrender at Saratoga . . . . .	1777

Gordon riots . . . . .	1780
Surrender of Cornwallis . . . . .	1781
Treaty of Versailles; United States independent . . . . .	1783
French Revolution begun . . . . .	1789
Battle of the Nile . . . . .	1798
Union of Great Britain and Ireland . . . . .	1800
Peace of Amiens . . . . .	1802
Battle of Trafalgar . . . . .	1805
Slave trade abolished . . . . .	1807
War with the United States . . . . .	1812-14
Battle of Waterloo . . . . .	1815
<i>George IV</i> . . . . .	1820
Repeal of Corporation and Test Acts . . . . .	1828
Catholic Emancipation . . . . .	1829
<i>William IV</i> . . . . .	1830
Opening of Liverpool and Manchester Railroad . . . . .	1830
Passage of the Reform Bill . . . . .	1832
Slavery abolished in British colonies . . . . .	1833
Monopoly of East India Company abolished . . . . .	1833
New poor law . . . . .	1834
<i>Victoria</i> . . . . .	1837
Chartist agitation . . . . .	1837-48
The Opium War . . . . .	1839
Penny postage established . . . . .	1840
Famine in Ireland . . . . .	1845
Repeal of the Corn Laws . . . . .	1846
First World's Fair . . . . .	1851
Crimean War . . . . .	1854-5
The Indian Mutiny . . . . .	1857
Government of India taken from East India Company . . . . .	1858
Second Reform Act . . . . .	1867
Canadian Federation . . . . .	1867
Irish Church disestablished . . . . .	1869
Public schools established . . . . .	1870
Irish Land Act . . . . .	1870
Victoria proclaimed Empress of India . . . . .	1877
Third Reform Act . . . . .	1884
Sudan War . . . . .	1884-5
Queen's Jubilee . . . . .	1887
Jameson Raid . . . . .	1896
Sudan recovered . . . . .	1898
War with the Boer Republics . . . . .	1899-1902
<i>Edward VII.</i> . . . .	1901
Balfour becomes Premier . . . . .	1902
Free schools made universal . . . . .	1902
Boer War ended . . . . .	1902



# CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

vii

Transvaal and Orange Free State annexed . . . . .	1902
Irish land purchase bill . . . . .	1903
Army reform begins . . . . .	1904
Campbell-Bannerman becomes Premier . . . . .	1905
Workingmen's compensation act . . . . .	1906
First Imperial Conference . . . . .	1907
Old-age Pension act . . . . .	1909
Asquith becomes Premier . . . . .	1909
The Lloyd-George budget . . . . .	1909
Death of Edward VII. . . . .	1910
George V. . . . .	1910
The Parliament bill . . . . .	1911
Plural voting bill . . . . .	1912
National insurance act . . . . .	1912
Home Rule bill passes . . . . .	1914
Welsh church disestablished . . . . .	1914

## EVENTS OF THE WORLD WAR, 1914-1918.

Germany declares war on France . . . . .	August 3, 1914
Great Britain declares war on Germany . . . . .	" 4, "
Great Britain declares war on Austria . . . . .	" 12, "
Marshal French lands troops at Boulogne . . . . .	" 13, "
First British shot fired on West Front . . . . .	" 22, "
Louvain destroyed by Germans . . . . .	" 26, "
Rebellion in South Africa . . . . .	1914-15
New Zealand captured German Samoa . . . . .	August 31, 1914
First Battle of the Marne . . . . .	September 6, "
First Battle of Ypres . . . . .	October "
The <i>Emden</i> destroyed by the <i>Sydney</i> . . . . .	November 9, "
Battle of Falkland Islands . . . . .	December 7, "
Egyptian Protectorate declared . . . . .	December 18, "
Battle of Dogger Bank . . . . .	January 24, 1915
Gallipoli expedition . . . . .	1915-1916
Battle of Neuve Chapelle . . . . .	March 10, 1915
Naval attack on Dardanelles . . . . .	" 18, "
Second Battle of Ypres — poison gas first used . . . . .	April 22, "
<i>Lusitania</i> sunk — 1134 lives lost . . . . .	May 7, "
German S. W. Africa surrendered . . . . .	July 9, "
Edith Cavell shot . . . . .	October 12, "
Great Britain declares war on Bulgaria . . . . .	" 15, "
Haig appointed to command in the West . . . . .	January 1, 1916
Gallipoli evacuated . . . . .	" 8, "
German Kamerun taken . . . . .	February 18, "
The <i>Sussex</i> torpedoed . . . . .	March 24, "
French Counter-attack at Verdun . . . . .	" 29, "
Sinn Fein Rebellion . . . . .	April 22, "

Battle of Vimy Ridge . . . . .	May 15, 1916
Military service act passed . . . . .	" 25, "
Battle of Jutland . . . . .	" 31, "
Kitchener drowned . . . . .	June 5, "
First Battle of the Somme . . . . .	July 1, "
Captain Fryatt shot . . . . .	" 27, "
Tanks first used . . . . .	September 15, "
French Victory at Verdun . . . . .	October 24, "
Germany begins "unrestricted submarine warfare" .	February 1, 1917
Capture of Bagdad by British . . . . .	March 11, "
Russian Czar abdicates . . . . .	" 15, "
Second Battle of the Somme . . . . .	" 16, "
United States enters the war . . . . .	April 6, "
Battle of Arras . . . . .	" 9, "
French advance on the Aisne . . . . .	" 16, "
Australians break the "Hindenburg Line" . . . .	May 3, "
Battle of Messines . . . . .	June 7, "
Third Battle of Ypres . . . . .	July 31, "
General Allenby enters Jerusalem . . . . .	December 10, "
Treaty of Brest-Litovsk . . . . .	March 2, 1918
Great German Offensive begins . . . . .	" 21, "
Third Battle of the Somme . . . . .	" 21, "
Foch made supreme commander . . . . .	" 29, "
Attack on Zeebrugge and Ostend . . . . .	April, "
Battle of Chateau-Thierry . . . . .	June 2, "
Belleau Wood taken by Americans . . . . .	" 10, "
Second Battle of the Marne . . . . .	July 15, "
Allied counter-offensive begins . . . . .	" 18, "
Retreat of the Germans in the West . . . . .	September 1, "
Surrender of Turkey . . . . .	October 30, "
German Kaiser abdicates . . . . .	November 9, "
Armistice Day . . . . .	" 11, "
German fleet surrenders . . . . .	" 21, "
British troops enter Germany . . . . .	December 1, "
General election — Great Coalition victory . . .	" "
Treaty of Peace signed at Versailles . . . . .	June 28, 1919
Government of India act . . . . .	December 23, "

## BOOKS FOR REFERENCE.

---

**Source Books:** C. W. Colby, *Selections from the Sources of English History* (Longmans, N. Y.). E. Kendall, *Source Book of English History* (Macmillan, N. Y.). G. C. Lee, *Source Book of English History* (Macmillan).

**General Works:** J. F. Bright, *English History*, 4 vols. E. P. Dutton & Co., N. Y.). E. P. Cheyney, *Industrial and Social History of England* (Macmillan, N. Y.). J. A. Froude, *History of England*, 12 vols. (Scribner, N. Y.). S. R. Gardiner, *Student's History of England* (Longmans, N. Y.); *Atlas of English History* (Longmans). J. R. Green, *A Short History of the English People* (American Book Company); *Readings from English History* (Harper, N. Y.). Guest and Underwood, *Handbook of English History* (Macmillan). David Hume, *History of England* (Student's Series, American Book Company). J. Lingard, *The History of England* (Murphy, Baltimore). H. D. Traill, *Social England*, 6 vols. (Putnam, N. Y.).

**Special Works:** A. J. Church, *Story of Early Britain* (Putnam, N. Y.). E. A. Freeman, *Old-English History* (Macmillan, N. Y.). S. O. Jewett, *Story of the Normans* (Putnam). W. Stubbs, *The Early Plantagenets* (Longmans, N. Y.). M. Creighton, *The Tudors and the Reformation* (Longmans); *Age of Elizabeth* (Longmans). E. J. Payne, *Voyages of Elizabethan Seamen* (Oxford). E. E. Hale, *Fall of the Stuarts* (Longmans). T. B. Macaulay, *History of England from the Time of James II.*, 3 vols. (Longmans). E. E. Morris, *The Age of Anne* (Estes, N. Y.). J. McCarthy, *A Short History of Our Own Times*, 2 vols. (F. A. Stokes, N. Y.). W. S. Churchill, *London to Ladysmith* (Longmans). J. R. Seeley, *The Expansion of England* (Little, Boston). J. Hight, *The English as a Colonizing Nation* (Whitcombe & Tombs, London). G. E. Bolen, *Plain Facts as to the Trusts and the Tariff* (Macmillan). E. Lawless, *Story of Ireland* (Putnam).

**Government:** Acland and Ransome, *A Handbook in Outline of the Political History of England to 1896* (Longmans, N. Y.). E. S. Creasy, *Rise and Progress of the English Constitution* (Appleton, N. Y.). Louise Creighton, *The Government of England* (Longmans). T. F. Moran, *The English Government* (Longmans).

**Biography:** T. Hughes, *Life of King Alfred* (Macmillan, N. Y.). Agnes Strickland, *The Queens of England* (American Book Company). Alice Green, *Henry the Second* (Macmillan). M. Creighton, *Simon de Montfort* (Longmans, N. Y.). R. H. Blades, *Caxton* (Hardwicke, London). Goldwin Smith, *Three English Statesmen* (Pym, Pitt, and Cromwell) (Macmillan). C. H. Firth, *Cromwell* (Putnam, N. Y.). J. Morley, *Walpole* (Macmillan). W. Besant, *Captain Cook* (Macmillan, N. Y.). W. C. Russell, *Nelson* (Putnam). G. Russell, *Life of Gladstone* (Harper, N. Y.).

# PRONOUNCING INDEX

Key to pronunciation: ā in lāte, â in senate, ă in făt, â in câre, ä in fär, á in lăst, ą in fall, a in final; ē in mē, ê in évent, ě in met, ě in term, e in recent; ĭ in fīne, ĭ in tĭn; ō in nōte, ô in ôbey, ǒ in nǒt, ô in fôr, ōō in lōop, ȳ in bȳok; ɳ = ng, in its effect on the preceding vowel, but is itself silent; ŭ in tūne, ů in nūt, ȳ in rȳde, ȳ in full, û in bûrn, ü = French u.

Aboukir Bay (ă-bōō-kēr')	330	Ar-gyle', Earl of . . . . .	285
Acadia . . . . .	271	Ark'low . . . . .	334
Acre (ă'kēr) . . . . .	85	Arkwright, Richard . . . . .	322
Addington, Henry . . . . .	334	Arma'da, the Great . . . . .	192
Addison, Joseph . . . . .	281	Armagnac (ăr-măn-yăk')	137
Aëtius (ă-ē'shĭ-ŭs) . . . . .	25	Armistice, World War . . . . .	426
Afghanistan (ăf-găn'ĭs-tăn')	365, 382	Arras (ă-răs'), battle of . . . . .	421
Aghrim (ăg'rĭm) . . . . .	268	Arthur, Duke of Brittany . . . . .	90, 91
Agincourt (ă-zhăn-kōor')	137	Arthur, King . . . . .	31
Agriculture . . . . .	171, 174, 191, 201, 320	Arthur, son of Henry VII . . . . .	160
Aids . . . . .	61	Articles . . . . .	172, 175
Aix-la-Chapelle (ăks-lă-shă-pĕl')		Attainder, act of . . . . .	221, 267
treaty of . . . . .	292	Au'gustine . . . . .	34
Akbar Khan (ăk'bĕr kăn) . . . . .	365	Australia . . . . .	364, 402, 417
Alabama claims . . . . .	377	Austria . . . . .	272, 292, 341, 351, 413, 418
Albert, Prince Consort . . . . .	359, 360, 367, 376	Austrian Succession, War of the . . . . .	292
Al'bi-on . . . . .	13	Bacon, Francis . . . . .	200, 201, 207
Alexander I. . . . .	332	Bacon, Roger . . . . .	101
Alfred the Great . . . . .	39-46	Ba'don Hill . . . . .	31
Algiers (ăl-jĕr'z') . . . . .	234	Bagdad (băg-dăd'), capture of . . . . .	419-420
Al'len-by, General . . . . .	419	Bagdad Railroad . . . . .	412
Alsace-Lorraine (ăl-săs'-lô-răn')	412, 427	Bakewell, Robert . . . . .	320
American colonies, 199, 211, 212, 217, 240, 253, 254, 261, 290, 291, 302-307, 309-315		Balaclava (bă-lă-klă'vâ) . . . . .	368-370
Amiens (ă-mĕ-ăn'), treaty of . . . . .	333	Balance of power . . . . .	165, 271
Amusements, time of Elizabeth . . . . .	201, 202	Bal'foûr, Arthur J. . . . .	404
Anderi'da . . . . .	29	Baliol (bă'li-ŭl), Edward . . . . .	114
Angles . . . . .	26-28, 32	Baliol, John . . . . .	105
An'gle-sey . . . . .	21	Ball, John . . . . .	127
Anglican Church, see <i>Church of England</i> .		Ballot Act . . . . .	380
Anglo-Saxon Chronicle 38, 45, 62, 71, 72		Baltic, battle of the . . . . .	331
Anglo-Saxon kingdoms . . . . .	31, 32	Baltimore, Lord . . . . .	240
Anglo-Saxons . . . . .	26-35	Bank of England . . . . .	269
Anjou (ăn-zhōō') . . . . .	71, 73, 83	Bannockburn, battle of . . . . .	110, 111
Anne, Queen . . . . .	249, 273, 274	Barba'dos . . . . .	240, 241
Anne of Cleves (klĕvz) . . . . .	170	Barebones' Parliament . . . . .	236
Anselm . . . . .	66, 68	Bar'net, battle of . . . . .	148
Anti-Corn-Law League . . . . .	366	Barons' War . . . . .	98
Antoni'nus . . . . .	23	Battle Abbey . . . . .	54
Appeals to the Pope . . . . .	169	Bavaria . . . . .	275
Aquitaine (ăk-wĕ-tăn') . . . . .	73, 120, 121	Bayeux tapestry (bă-yĕ') . . . . .	53, 54
Arabi Pasha (ă-ră'bĕ pá-shă') . . . . .	384	Baylen (bĭ-lăn') . . . . .	340
Archer, Thomas . . . . .	157	Beachy Head, battle of . . . . .	268
Archery, English . . . . .	108, 116	Beaû'fort, Jane . . . . .	136
Arcot (ăr-kôt'), siege of . . . . .	300, 301	Becket, Thomas à . . . . .	80, 81

- Bede (bēd), the Venerable . . . . . 33  
 Benedict, Saint . . . . . 34  
 Benevolences . . . . . 149, 159  
 Bethmann-Hollweg (bāt'män-hōl'-vāk) . . . . . 413  
 Big'od, Roger . . . . . 98  
 Bill of Rights . . . . . 263  
 Bishops, the seven . . . . . 259, 260  
 Bishops' Wars, the . . . . . 220, 221  
 Black death . . . . . 118, 119  
 Black Prince . . . . . 117, 120, 121, 123  
 Blake, Robert . . . . . 234  
 Blenheim (blēn'īm) . . . . . 275  
 Blockade Runners . . . . . 377  
 Blois (blwā) . . . . . 71  
 Bloody Assizes . . . . . 257  
 Blore Heath, battle of . . . . . 145  
 Blücher (blü'kēr) . . . . . 343  
 Bo-a-di-ce'a . . . . . 21, 22  
 Board Schools . . . . . 378  
 Boer Wars (bōor) . . . . . 383, 387-390  
 Boers . . . . . 405  
 Boleyn (bōol'īn), Anne . . . . . 167  
 Bolingbroke (bōl'īn-brōok), Henry 130-136  
 Bombay' . . . . . 243  
 Book of Common Prayer . . . . . 175  
 Bordeaux (bōr-dō') . . . . . 121  
 Bosworth, battle of . . . . . 154  
 Bothwell, Lord . . . . . 187  
 Boulogne (bōō-lōn') . . . . . 336  
 Bouvines (bōō-vēn'), battle of . . . . . 91  
 Boyle (boil), Robert . . . . . 282  
 Boyne (boin), battle of the . . . . . 268  
 Braddock, General . . . . . 304  
 Bradshaw, John . . . . . 231  
 Brahe (brā), Tycho . . . . . 282  
 Braose (brā-ōz'), William of . . . . . 93  
 Bretigny (brē-tēn-yī'), peace of . . . . . 121  
 Bret'walda . . . . . 32  
 Bridgewater, Duke of . . . . . 321  
 Bright, John . . . . . 366  
 Brindley, James . . . . . 321  
 Britain, early races in . . . . . 9, 11, 13  
 British Empire . . . . . 399-403  
 British Isles . . . . . 10  
 Britons . . . . . 13, 14-20, 32  
 Bronze Age . . . . . 12, 13  
 Browning, Elizabeth Barrett . . . . . 395  
 Browning, Robert . . . . . 395  
 Bruce, David . . . . . 113, 121  
 Bruce, Robert . . . . . 109, 110, 111  
 Bruges (brū'jēz) . . . . . 115, 125  
 Buckingham (būk'ing-am), Henry Stafford, Duke of . . . . . 151-154  
 Buckingham, George Villiers, Duke of . . . . . 209, 214, 215  
 Bulgaria . . . . . 413  
 Bunker Hill, battle of . . . . . 313  
 Bunyan, John . . . . . 244  
 Burgh, Hubert de . . . . . 97  
 Burgoyne (bur-goin') . . . . . 313  
 Bur'gundy, Duke of . . . . . 135, 139  
 Burns, Robert . . . . . 111  
 Bury St. Edmunds . . . . . 93, 94  
 Butter, Nathaniel . . . . . 281  
 Byng, Admiral . . . . . 304  
 Byron, Lord . . . . . 347, 351  
 Cabal', the . . . . . 247, 248  
 Cabinet . . . . . 278, 284, 285, 398, 399  
 Cabots, the . . . . . 161  
 Cade, Jack . . . . . 144  
 Ca'diz . . . . . 214  
 Caerleon (kār-lē'ūn) . . . . . 31  
 Cæsar, Julius . . . . . 14-20  
 Calais (kā-lā') . . . . . 117, 125, 181  
 Calcut'ta, Black Hole of . . . . . 301, 302  
 Cal'vin, John . . . . . 186  
 Calvinists . . . . . 195  
 Canada . . . . . 307, 362, 402  
 Canals . . . . . 320, 321  
 Canning, George . . . . . 339, 340, 352  
 Canon Law . . . . . 219  
 Can'terbury, Archbishop of . . . . . 79  
 "Canterbury Tales" . . . . . 123, 124  
 Canute (kā-nūt') . . . . . 48  
 Cape Colony . . . . . 383, 402  
 Capital and labor . . . . . 392-394  
 Carac'tacus . . . . . 20  
 Car'adoc . . . . . 20  
 Carlyle (kār-līl'), Thomas . . . . . 396  
 Carnar'von . . . . . 104  
 Carolinas . . . . . 253  
 Carr, Robert . . . . . 208  
 Cartwright, Edward . . . . . 322  
 Carver, John . . . . . 211  
 Casement, Sir Roger . . . . . 430  
 Cassivelaunus . . . . . 16  
 Castles . . . . . 43, 56, 71, 77, 157  
 Caswal'lon . . . . . 16  
 Catesby, Robert . . . . . 206  
 Catherine of Ar'agon 160, 162, 167, 168  
 Catherine of Bragan'za . . . . . 243  
 Catholic Emancipation Act . . . . . 350  
 Catholics, English . . . . . 194, 213, 214, 350  
 Cato Street conspiracy . . . . . 349  
 Cavalier Parliament . . . . . 244  
 Cavaliers' . . . . . 224, 240  
 Cav'endish, Thomas . . . . . 199  
 Cawnpur (caṇ-pōor') . . . . . 372  
 Caxton, William . . . . . 150  
 Cecil (sēs'īl), Robert . . . . . 203  
 Cecil, Sir William . . . . . 184  
 Celts (see *Britons*, and *Scots*) . . . . . 13, 14  
 Cet-e-wa'yo . . . . . 383  
 Chaluz (shā-lūs') . . . . . 87

- Chancellor, Richard . . . . . 198  
 Char'ing Cross . . . . . 103  
 Chariots, British war . . . . . 18  
 Charles I.,  
     208-210, 213-215, 217-221, 225-229  
 Charles II. . . . . 233, 239, 242-244, 248  
 Charles V., German emperor . . . . . 163, 169  
 Charles VI., King of France . . . . . 135  
 Charles X. of France . . . . . 354  
 Charles, Archduke of Austria . . . . . 271  
 Charles, son of James Edward . . . . . 292  
 Charters, Confirmation of . . . . . 107  
 Charters, town . . . . . 85, 251  
 Chartists . . . . . 360, 361  
 Chateau-Thierry (shâ-tô'-tyâr-rê') . . . . . 425  
 Chau'cer, Geoffrey . . . . . 123, 124  
 Chev'y Chase, Ballad of . . . . . 129  
 China, wars with . . . . . 363, 373, 374  
 Chivalry . . . . . 88  
 Church, early . . . . . 25, 34, 69, 79, 80  
 Church of England,  
     169, 172, 175, 180, 183, 194, 205, 222, 252  
 Churchill, John . . . . . 274-278  
 Churls . . . . . 27  
 Civil War, American . . . . . 376, 377  
 Civil War, English . . . . . 225-228  
 Clare, Richard de . . . . . 82  
 Clarence, Duke of . . . . . 148, 150  
 Clâr'endon, Constitutions of . . . . . 80  
 Clarendon, Edward Hyde, Earl of . . . . . 245  
 Clau'di-us . . . . . 20  
 Claverhouse (klâ'vêrz) . . . . . 255, 265  
 Clive, Robert . . . . . 299-302  
 Cloth, manufacture of . . . . . 124, 197, 280  
 Coalition Cabinet . . . . . 415  
 Cobden, Richard . . . . . 366  
 Cœur de Lion (kêr de lê-ôn') . . . . . 87  
 Coinage . . . . . 197, 270  
 Coke, Sir Edward . . . . . 209  
 Col'chester . . . . . 21  
 Coleridge, Samuel Taylor . . . . . 347  
 Col'et, John . . . . . 165  
 Cologne (kô-lôn') . . . . . 125  
 Colonial policy . . . . . 312, 317, 399  
 Colonies, German . . . . . 420  
 Colonies, government of . . . . . 399, 402  
 Colum'ba, Saint . . . . . 36  
 Columbus . . . . . 160  
 Commerce, see *Trade*  
 Commonwealth, the . . . . . 231-236  
 Compurgation . . . . . 44, 45  
 Conquests of England . . . . . 54, 55  
 Conventicle . . . . . 244  
 Convention Parliament . . . . . 243, 244  
 Copenhâ'gen . . . . . 331  
 Corn Laws . . . . . 345, 366, 367  
 Cornwal'is . . . . . 315  
 Coronation chair . . . . . 107  
 Corun'na, battle of . . . . . 341  
 Cor'yat, Thomas . . . . . 211, 212  
 Count of the Saxon Shore . . . . . 23  
 Covenant . . . . . 220, 226, 227, 255  
 Covenanters . . . . . 221, 252, 255  
 Cranmer, Thomas . . . . . 168, 169, 175, 180  
 Crécy (krâ-sê'), battle of . . . . . 116  
 Cri-me'an War . . . . . 367-371  
 Criminal law . . . . . 294, 345, 349  
 Criminals . . . . . 175  
 Croft, James . . . . . 320  
 Crompton, Samuel . . . . . 322  
 Cromwell, Oliver . . . . . 227, 228, 231-238  
 Cromwell, Richard . . . . . 238  
 Cromwell, Thomas . . . . . 168, 170  
 Crusades . . . . . 67, 84-86  
 Crystal Palace . . . . . 367  
 Cullo'den, battle of . . . . . 293  
 Cumberland, Duke of . . . . . 358  
 Cy'prus . . . . . 313  
 Dail Eireann (däl ä'ran) . . . . . 431  
 Danes . . . . . 38, 39, 40-43, 47, 48  
 Darnley, Lord . . . . . 187  
 Darwin, Charles . . . . . 396  
 Declaration of Independence . . . . . 313  
 Declaration of Indulgence . . . . . 248, 258, 259  
 De Foe, Daniel . . . . . 281  
 De'i-ra . . . . . 33  
 Delaware . . . . . 254  
 De Lesseps' . . . . . 382  
 Delhi (dêl'ê) . . . . . 299, 410  
 Denmark . . . . . 272, 331  
 Dispensers, the . . . . . 112  
 Det'ting-en, battle of . . . . . 292  
 Dickens, Charles . . . . . 395  
 Directory, French . . . . . 325  
 Dispensing power . . . . . 258  
 Disraeli (dîz-râ'li), Benjamin, Lord  
     Beaconsfield . . . . . 366, 381  
 Dissenters . . . . . 194, 205, 244  
 Divine right of kings . . . . . 204  
 Dogger Bank, naval battle . . . . . 423  
 Domesday Book . . . . . 62  
 Dom'inic, Saint . . . . . 100  
 Domrémi (dôn-râ-mê') . . . . . 141  
 Dost Mohammed (dôst mō-hām'ed)  
     365, 366  
 Dover, secret treaty of . . . . . 248  
 Drake, Sir Francis . . . . . 190, 191, 195  
 Dresden, ship . . . . . 423  
 Drog'heda . . . . . 231, 233  
 Druids . . . . . 19, 21  
 Dū'nā-jec (yêk), battle of . . . . . 417  
 Dunbar', battle of . . . . . 233  
 Duncan, Admiral . . . . . 328  
 Dun'kirk . . . . . 235, 245  
 Dunstan . . . . . 47

- Dupleix (dū-plā') . . . . . 299  
 Duquesne (dū-kān'), Fort . . . . . 302  
 Dur'bar . . . . . 409  
 Dutch Wars . . 233, 234, 245, 246, 248  
 Duty, export . . . . . 103  
     import 214, 255, 318, 365, 366, 367  
 East India Company .  
     199, 211, 241, 299, 357, 358, 373  
 Eastern Question . . . . . 363, 381  
 Eddington, battle of . . . . . 41  
 Edgar . . . . . 47  
 Edgehill, battle of . . . . . 226  
 Education Acts . . 378, 405, 407, 408  
 Edward the Confessor . . . . . 48  
 Edward the Martyr . . . . . 47  
 Edward I. . . . . 99-109  
 Edward II. . . . . 109-112  
 Edward III. . . . . 113-123  
 Edward IV. . . . . 146-148  
 Edward V. . . . . 150-153  
 Edward VI. . . . . 173-176  
 Edward VII. . . . . 404-409  
 Edwin, Earl . . . . . 51, 58, 59  
 Edwin, King of Northumbria . . . . . 35  
 Egbert . . . . . 37-39  
 Egypt . . . . . 382, 384, 387, 419  
 Eleanor of Castile . . . . . 102, 103  
 Eleanor of France . . . . . 73, 83  
 Eliot, Sir John . . . . . 214, 216  
 Elizabeth . . . 182-185, 190, 193, 197  
 Emma of Normandy . . . . . 48, 49  
 English Church, see *Church of England*  
 English race . . . . . 9, 32, 38, 91  
 Eras'mus . . . . . 165, 166  
 Established Church, see *Church of England*  
 Eth'elbert . . . . . 34  
 Eth'elred I. . . . . 40  
 Ethelred II. . . . . 47, 48  
 Evesham (ēvz'hām) . . . . . 99, 100  
 Excommunication . . . . . 92  
 Factory legislation . . . . . 357, 393  
 Factory system . . . . . 391-393  
 Fairfax, Lord . . . . . 227  
 Fairs . . . . . 103, 125  
 Falkirk, battle of . . . . . 108  
 Farming improved . . . 171, 201, 320  
 Fawkes (faks), Guy . . . . . 206, 207  
 Fealty . . . . . 62  
 Federation of employers . . . . . 393  
 Federation of unions . . . . . 392, 393  
 Fenian movement . . . . . 378, 379  
 Feudal system . . . . . 62  
 Field of the Cloth of Gold . . . . . 165  
 Fitzwalter, Robert . . . . . 95  
 Flanders . . . . . 115, 197  
 Flemish in England . . . . . 197  
 Flodden Field, battle of . . . . . 163  
 Foch (fōsh), Marshal . . . . . 425  
 Forests . . . . . 62, 218, 222  
 Foth'eringay Castle . . . . . 188  
 France, wars with, 83, 90, 91, 96, 114-118,  
     120, 121, 126, 137-142, 163, 181, 214,  
     215, 235, 264, 265, 268-279, 292, 299-  
     307, 314, 327-344  
 Francis I., King of France . . . . . 165  
 Francis Ferdinand . . . . . 413  
 Francis, Saint . . . . . 100  
 Frederick the Elector . . . . . 208, 212  
 Frederick the Great . . . . . 305  
 Freeman, Edward Augustus. . . . . 396  
 French and Indian War . . . . . 305-307  
 Friars . . . . . 100  
 Frob'isher, Martin . . . . . 199  
 Froude (frōōd), James Anthony . . . . . 396  
 Gāels . . . . . 13, 23  
 Galile'o . . . . . 282  
 Gallipoli (gāl-lē'pō-lē) . . . . . 417  
 Garter, Order of the . . . . . 118  
 Gas, poison . . . . . 421  
 Gaul . . . . . 14, 16, 17, 19  
 Gav'eston, Piers . . . . . 109, 110  
 Genoa (jēn'ō-ā), trade of . . . . . 126  
 George I. . . . . 284, 285  
 George II. . . . . 289-292  
 George III. . . . . 308-315, 346  
 George IV. . . . . 348, 354  
 George V. . . . . 406, 409  
 Georgia . . . . . 291  
 German Empire . . . . . 380, 411-413  
 Germanic races . . . . . 26, 27, 28  
 Ghent (gēnt), treaty of . . . . . 344  
 Gibbon, Edward . . . . . 347  
 Gibraltar (jī-brāl'tēr) . . . . . 277, 402  
 Gladstone (glād'stūn), William Ewart  
     379, 380, 385-387  
 Glendower (glēn'dōōr), Owen . . . . . 134  
 Gloucester (glōs'ter), Richard, Duke  
     of . . . . . 150-154  
 Gloucester, Thomas, Duke of . . . . . 128-130  
 Gloucester, Robert, Earl of . . . . . 73  
 Godwin, Earl . . . . . 48  
 Goldsmith, Oliver . . . . . 347  
 Gordon, General . . . . . 384, 385  
 Gordon Riots . . . . . 315, 316  
 Government . . . . . 396-403  
 Grand Alliance . . . . . 272  
 Grand jury . . . . . 78  
 Grand Remonstrance . . . . . 223  
 Great Britain . . . . . 11, 277  
 Great Charter . . . . . 93-95  
 Great Council, Norman . . . . . 64  
 Great Fire . . . . . 246, 247  
 Great Plague . . . . . 246



- Greece . . . . . 351  
 Greg'ory the Great . . . . . 33, 34, 45  
 Gregory VII. . . . . 63  
 Grenville, George . . . . . 308, 309, 310  
 Grenville, Sir Richard . . . . . 195, 196  
 Grey, Lady Jane . . . . . 177, 180  
 Grey, Sir Edward . . . . . 407  
 Griffith, Arthur . . . . . 430  
 Guienne (gē-ēn') . . . . . 121  
 Guilds . . . . . 45, 100, 124, 126  
 Gunpowder . . . . . 157  
 Gunpowder plot . . . . . 206  
 Guthrum (gōoth'rōom) . . . . . 41, 43  
  
 Ha'be-as Corpus Act . . . . . 250  
 Ha'drian, Wall of . . . . . 23  
 Haidarabad (hī-dār-ā-bād') . . . . . 314  
 Haig, Sir Douglas . . . . . 421  
 Hal'idon Hill . . . . . 113  
 Hampden, John . . . . . 214, 219, 226  
 Hampton Court Conference . . . . . 205  
 Han'over . . . . . 279, 292, 358  
 Hanover, House of . . . . . 284  
 Han-se-at'ic League . . . . . 125  
 Har'dicanute . . . . . 48  
 Har'drada, King of Norway . . . . . 51, 52  
 Har'greāves, James . . . . . 321  
 Harold I. . . . . 48  
 Harold II. . . . . 49-53  
 Harold Har'drada . . . . . 51, 52  
 Hasting, the Dane . . . . . 43  
 Hastings, battle of . . . . . 52-54  
 Hastings, Warren . . . . . 316  
 Havelock (hāv'e-lōk), General . . . . . 373  
 Hawkins, Captain John . . . . . 189, 195  
 Hedjaz (hěj-āz') . . . . . 419  
 Hengist (hěng'gīst) . . . . . 29  
 Henry I. . . . . 65, 68-70  
 Henry II. . . . . 73-84  
 Henry III. . . . . 96-97, 100  
 Henry IV. . . . . 130-133, 135, 136  
 Henry V. . . . . 137-139  
 Henry VI. . . . . 140-145, 148  
 Henry VII. . . . . 153-161  
 Henry VIII. . . . . 162-172  
 Heretics . . . . . 133  
 Hēr'eward . . . . . 59, 60  
 High Church party . . . . . 194, 216, 277  
 High Commission Court . . . . . 194, 222  
 Hill, Rowland . . . . . 362  
 Hin'denburg, von . . . . . 421  
 Hindenburg Line . . . . . 421  
 Hoche (ōsh), General . . . . . 333  
 Hohenzollern (hō-en-tsōl'ern), House  
   of . . . . . 411  
 Holland,  
   189, 233, 234, 245, 246, 248, 275, 298  
 Holy Alliance . . . . . 351, 352  
  
 Hom'ildon Hill, battle of . . . . . 134  
 Hōngkōng' . . . . . 363  
 House of Commons, 64, 65, 121, 126, 136,  
   396-398; see *Reform*  
 Howard, Admiral . . . . . 192, 195  
 Howard, Catherine . . . . . 170  
 Howard, John . . . . . 296  
 Hume, David . . . . . 347  
 Hundred Years' War  
   114-121, 126, 137-142  
 Hussein (hōō-sān'), Sherif of Mecca . . . . . 419  
 Huxley, Thomas . . . . . 396  
  
 Impeachment . . . . . 143  
 Imperial Conference . . . . . 427  
 Independents . . . . . 228  
 India, 199, 243, 299-302, 316, 330,  
   371-373, 402, 417, 429  
 Indian Mutiny . . . . . 371-373  
 Industrial revolution . . . . . 391  
 Innocent III. . . . . 92  
 Instrument of Government . . . . . 236  
 Insurance Act . . . . . 410  
 Interdict . . . . . 92  
 Inventions, mechanical 321, 322, 352, 353  
 Ireland . . . . . 23, 196  
   union with England . . . . . 334  
   famine . . . . . 366  
   Home Rule Bill . . . . . 410, 430, 431  
   reforms in . . . . . 379, 380, 386, 404  
 Isabella of France . . . . . 112, 113  
 Italy . . . . . 161, 163, 166, 351, 418  
   in World War . . . . . 418  
  
 Jac'obites . . . . . 264, 285  
 Jamaica . . . . . 241, 402  
 James I. . . . . 203-212  
 James II. . . . . 249-253, 255-261, 268, 271  
 James, Prince of Scotland . . . . . 135, 136  
 James Edward, "the Pretender," son  
   of James II. . . . . 279, 285  
 Jameson's raid . . . . . 388  
 Jeffreys, Judge . . . . . 257  
 Jenkinson, Anthony . . . . . 199  
 Jenkins's Ear, War of . . . . . 290, 291  
 Jennings, Sarah . . . . . 278  
 Jerusalem . . . . . 419  
 Jes'u-its . . . . . 191  
 Jews . . . . . 85, 104, 238, 375  
 Joan of Arc . . . . . 140-142  
 Joffre (zhō'fr'), Marshal . . . . . 414-415  
 Johannesburg (yō-hān'nēs-bürg) . . . . . 388  
 John, King of England 83, 84, 86, 90-96  
 John, King of France . . . . . 120  
 John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster,  
   121, 122, 128, 129  
 Johnson, Samuel . . . . . 347  
 Judges, the king's . . . . . 77

- Junius . . . . . 319  
 Jurors . . . . . 45  
 Jury trial . . . . . 78  
 Justiciar . . . . . 89  
 Jutes . . . . . 29  
 Jutland, naval battle . . . . . 423  
  
 Kabul (kā'būl), retreat from . . . . . 365  
 Kandahar' . . . . . 382  
 Ken'ilworth Castle . . . . . 146  
 Kent . . . . . 29  
 Ket, Robert . . . . . 176  
 Khartum (kār-tōom') . . . . . 384  
 Kiaochow (kyou'chō') . . . . . 420  
 Kīm'berley . . . . . 389, 390  
 King, compared with President . . . . . 398, 399  
 King George's War . . . . . 292  
 King William's War . . . . . 271  
 King's judges . . . . . 77  
 King's Mountain, battle of . . . . . 314  
 Kitchener, General . . . . . 387, 390  
 \*Knighthood . . . . . 87, 88  
 Knight's fees . . . . . 61  
 Knox (nōks), John . . . . . 186  
 Kruger (krū'gēr), President . . . . . 388  
 Kut-el-A-mā'ra . . . . . 420  
  
 Labor, organization of . . . . . 392  
 Labor Problem . . . . . 428-429  
 Laborers, statute of . . . . . 119  
 Ladysmith . . . . . 389, 390  
 La Hogue (là hōg'), battle of . . . . . 268  
 Lake School of Poetry . . . . . 347  
 Lancaster (lāng'kās-tēr), John of  
   Gaunt, Duke of . . . . . 121, 122, 128, 129  
 Lancaster, House of . . . . . 133  
 Land Acts, Irish . . . . . 380, 385, 404  
 Lan'franc . . . . . 64  
 Langton, Stephen . . . . . 91, 92, 96  
 La Rochelle (là rô-shēl') . . . . . 215  
 Laud, William . . . . . 216, 219  
   impeachment and death of . . . . . 222  
 Layamon (lā'-ya-mōn) . . . . . 100  
 League of Nations . . . . . 427  
 Learning, the New . . . . . 166  
 Leicester (les'tēr), Earl of . . . . . 189  
 Leipzig (līp'sīk), battle of . . . . . 342  
 Le'opold, Duke of Austria . . . . . 85  
 Lewes (lū'īs), battle of . . . . . 98  
 Lexington, battle of . . . . . 313  
 Liberal Unionism . . . . . 407  
 Liége (lē-ēzh') . . . . . 414  
 Ligny (līn-yē'), battle of . . . . . 343  
 Lincoln (līng'kūn), battle of . . . . . 73  
 Lisle (līl), Alice . . . . . 257  
 Literature, English,  
   123, 200, 281, 346, 394-396  
 Little Parliament . . . . . 236  
  
 Llewellyn (lōō-ēl'līn) . . . . . 104  
 Lloyd George, David,  
   407, 408, 415, 416, 428  
 Local Government Law . . . . . 386  
 Loch Lev'en (lōk) . . . . . 187  
 Lollards . . . . . 127, 136, 137  
 London 21, 32, 56, 125, 224, 226, 251  
 London Company . . . . . 210, 211  
 Londonderry . . . . . 267  
 Long Parliament . . . . . 221, 235, 239  
 Loom . . . . . 322  
 Lords Ordainers . . . . . 111, 112  
 Louis IX. of France . . . . . 98  
 Louis XIV. of France . . . . . 258, 272, 324  
 Louisburg . . . . . 292  
 Low Church party . . . . . 277  
 Lü'beck . . . . . 125  
 Luck'now . . . . . 373  
 Lusitania (lū-si-tā'ni-a) . . . . . 424  
 Luther, Martin . . . . . 166  
  
 McAdam . . . . . 354  
 Macaulay, Thomas Babington . . . . . 396  
 Madras' . . . . . 299  
 Ma-fe-king' . . . . . 389, 390  
 Mag'na Charta (kār'tà) . . . . . 93-95  
 Mahrattas (mā-rāt'táz) . . . . . 316, 330  
 Maid of Norway . . . . . 105  
 Maju'ba Hill, battle of . . . . . 384  
 Malcolm (māl'kūm), King of Scotland . . . . . 60  
 Malplaquet (māl-plā-kā') . . . . . 276  
 Manchester Massacre . . . . . 348  
 Manorial system . . . . . 119  
 Manufactures, beginning of 124, 197, 280  
   domestic system of 322, 391  
 Margaret of Anjou . . . . . 142, 146, 148  
 Marlborough (māl'būr-ō), John  
   Churchill, Duke of . . . . . 274-278  
 Marne (mār'n), battles of the  
   414, 415, 425  
 Marston Moor . . . . . 227, 228  
 Mary I. . . . . 176-180  
 Mary II. . . . . 249  
 Mary of Guise (gēz) . . . . . 186  
 Mary Queen of Scots . . . . . 186-191  
 Maryland . . . . . 240  
 Massachusetts . . . . . 217, 240  
 Masséna (mā-sā-ná') . . . . . 341  
 Matilda . . . . . 71-73  
 Maude, General . . . . . 420  
 Mehemet Ali (mā'he-mēt ā'lē) . . . . . 364  
 Melbourne (mēl būrn), Lord . . . . . 364  
 Mercia . . . . . 32, 50  
 Mesopotā'mia . . . . . 419  
 Messines (mes-sēn') Ridge . . . . . 421  
 Methodism . . . . . 294-296  
 Middle Ages . . . . . 161  
 Mil'an Decree . . . . . 339

- Militia . . . . . 43, 103  
 Milton, John . . . . . 244  
 Minden, battle of . . . . . 305  
 Mining . . . . . 11, 13, 280, 321  
 Model, the new . . . . . 228  
 Model Parliament . . . . . 107  
 Mon'asteries . . . . . 34, 98, 170, 171  
 Monastic system . . . . . 34  
 Monk, George . . . . . 227, 239  
 Monmouth (mōn'mūth), James  
     Stuart, Duke of . . . . . 251, 256, 257  
 Monopolies . . . . . 197, 218  
 Mon-roe' Doctrine . . . . . 352  
 Mont'fort, Simon de . . . . . 98, 99, 100  
 Moore, Sir John . . . . . 341  
 More, Sir Thomas . . . . . 165, 169  
 Mor'kar, Earl . . . . . 51, 59  
 Mor'timer, Roger . . . . . 112, 113  
 Mortimer's Cross . . . . . 145  
 Mortmain, Statute of . . . . . 103  
 Murshidabad (mōor-shēd-ā-bād') . . . . . 302  
 Mutiny Act . . . . . 264  
 Mutiny at Spithead and Nore . . . . . 328  
 My-sore' . . . . . 314, 330  
  
 Na-mur' . . . . . 269, 414  
 Nantes (nānts), edict of . . . . . 258  
 Napo'leon 325-330, 338, 339, 342, 344  
 Napoleon III. . . . . 375  
 Naseby (nāz'bī), battle of . . . . . 228  
 Nationalists . . . . . 385  
 Navigation Laws . . . . . 234, 352  
 Nelson, Horatio . . . . . 327, 337, 338  
 Neth'erlands, 188, 189, 271, 272, 275, 276,  
     279, 327; see *Holland and Dutch*  
 Nev'ille's Cross, battle of . . . . . 117  
 New Forest . . . . . 62, 67  
 New Jersey . . . . . 253  
 New Netherlands . . . . . 246  
 New Or'le-ans, battle of . . . . . 344  
 New York . . . . . 246  
 New Zealand . . . . . 364, 402, 416  
 Newcastle (nū'kās'l), Duke of . . . . . 291, 304  
 Newspapers . . . . . 281  
 Newton, Sir Isaac . . . . . 282  
 Ney (nā), Marshal . . . . . 342  
 Nicolas, Czar of Russia . . . . . 370  
 Nightingale, Florence . . . . . 370  
 Nile, battle of the . . . . . 330  
 Non-jurors . . . . . 264  
 Norfolk (nōr'fak), Duke of . . . . . 191  
 Norfolk, Earl of . . . . . 107  
 Norman Great Council . . . . . 64  
 Norman Kings . . . . . 56  
 Normandy . . . . . 49, 69, 91  
 North, Lord . . . . . 312, 315  
 Northamp'ton, battle of . . . . . 145  
 Northum'berland. Earl of . . . . . 134  
 Northumberland, John, Duke of . . . . . 176  
 Northum'bria . . . . . 35, 52, 59  
  
 Oates (ōts), Titus . . . . . 249, 250, 255  
 O'Connell, Daniel . . . . . 350  
 O'glethorpe, James . . . . . 291  
 Ohio Land Company . . . . . 302  
 Old Age Pension Bill . . . . . 408  
 Oldeastle . . . . . 137  
 Open door policy . . . . . 406  
 Opium War . . . . . 363  
 Orange Free State . . . . . 383, 388, 390  
 Ordeal . . . . . 44, 45, 78  
 Orders in Council . . . . . 339  
 Or'le-ans, Duke of . . . . . 135  
 Orleans, siege of . . . . . 141, 142  
 Or'mu-lum . . . . . 100, 101  
 Oswy, King . . . . . 36  
 Ot'terburn . . . . . 129  
 Oudenarde (ou'den-ār-de) . . . . . 270  
 Oxford . . . . . 98, 226, 259  
  
 Pāl'es-tīne . . . . . 427  
 Palat'inate, War of the 264, 265, 267-271  
 Pale, the English . . . . . 130  
 Palmerston (pām'ēr-stūn), Lord . . . . . 375  
 Paris, treaty of . . . . . 307  
 Parker, Sir Hyde . . . . . 331  
 Parliament . . . . . 64, 65, 122, 207, 396-398  
 Parliament Bill . . . . . 409  
 Parr, Catherine . . . . . 170  
 Patrick, Saint . . . . . 35, 36  
 Pearse, Pad'raic . . . . . 430  
 Peasant Revolt . . . . . 126-128  
 Peel, Sir Robert . . . . . 364, 365, 366  
 Peers, creation of . . . . . 355  
 Peking' . . . . . 374  
 Pelham (pēl'am), Henry . . . . . 291, 292  
 Pelham, Thomas, Duke of Newcastle,  
     291, 304  
 Peninsular War . . . . . 340-342  
 Penn, William . . . . . 253  
 Pennsylvania . . . . . 253, 254  
 Perey, Harry . . . . . 135  
 Perey, House of . . . . . 129, 134  
 Petition and Advice, the Humble . . . . . 237  
 Petition of Right . . . . . 215  
 Philip II. of France . . . . . 85, 86, 90, 92  
 Philip II. of Spain . . . . . 178, 188, 192  
 Philippa of Hainault (hā-nō') 113, 117, 124  
 Pie'ar-dy, battle of . . . . . 424-425  
 Piets . . . . . 23, 26, 60  
 Pilgrimage of Grace . . . . . 171, 172  
 Pilgrims . . . . . 211  
 Pinkie, battle of . . . . . 173  
 Pitt, William, the Elder . . . . . 304, 305  
 Pitt, William, the Younger . . . . . 318, 319  
 Plague, the Great . . . . . 246

- Plantagenet (plăn-tăj'ê-nět), Geoffrey . . . 73, 75
- Plantagenet kings . . . . . 75, 102
- Plassey, battle of . . . . . 302
- Plymouth (plîm'ŭth) . . . . . 211
- Plymouth Company . . . . . 210, 211
- Poitiers (pwă-tyă'), battle of . . . . . 120
- Poitou (pwă-tōō') . . . . . 73
- Pondicherry (pôn-dî-shěr'ri) . . . . . 299
- Pope, Alexander . . . . . 281
- Popish Plot . . . . . 249, 250
- Portugal . . . . . 275, 340, 341, 342, 351
- Postage, penny . . . . . 362
- Prayer Book . . . . . 175
- Presbyterianism . . . . . 195, 222
- President and king, powers of . . . . . 398, 399
- Press, freedom of the . . . . . 269
- Preston, battle of . . . . . 229
- Prestonpans, battle of . . . . . 292
- Pretender, the Old . . . . . 279, 285
- Pretender, the Young . . . . . 292, 293
- Prince of Wales . . . . . 104
- Printing . . . . . 150
- Profit sharing . . . . . 394
- Protectorate, the . . . . . 236, 237
- Protectorates . . . . . 403
- Provisions of Oxford . . . . . 98
- Prussia . . . . . 342, 343, 351, 364
- Puritans . . . . . 194, 216, 227, 238  
emigration to New England . 240
- Pym, John . . . . . 214, 217, 221
- Quakers . . . . . 252, 253
- Que-bec', capture of . . . . . 306
- Raikes (rāks), Robert . . . . . 296
- Railroads . . . . . 352-354
- Raleigh (ră'li), Sir Walter . . . . . 199, 200, 209-211
- Reform, parliamentary, . . . . . 345, 350, 354-357, 377, 378, 385
- Reform Bills . . . . . 355, 377, 378, 385
- Reformation, Protestant . . . . . 166, 167, 175
- Regicides, the . . . . . 244
- Reims (rēmz) . . . . . 141
- Reliefs . . . . . 61
- Restoration . . . . . 242
- Retainers . . . . . 134, 158
- "Revenge," the . . . . . 195
- Revolution, American . . . . . 312-315
- Revolution, English . . . . . 260, 261
- Revolution, French . . . . . 324, 351
- Rhodes, Cecil . . . . . 387, 388, 406
- Richard I. . . . . 84-89
- Richard II. . . . . 126-131
- Richard III. . . . . 150-154
- Rizzio (rêt'sê-ô) . . . . . 187
- Roads . . . . . 320, 354
- Ro-a-noke' . . . . . 199
- Robert of Normandy . . . . . 65, 67, 69
- Roberts, General . . . . . 382, 390
- Robertson, William . . . . . 347
- Romans in Briton . . . . . 20-24
- Rome . . . . . 14, 19, 24
- Rom'illy, Sir Samuel . . . . . 345
- Rotten boroughs . . . . . 312, 318, 319
- Rouen (rōō-ăn'), siege of . . . . . 138, 139
- Round Table, Knights of the . . . . . 31
- Roundheads . . . . . 224
- Royal Exchange . . . . . 198
- Royal Society . . . . . 282
- Rumania (rōō-mă'nî-a) . . . . . 418
- Rump Parliament . . . . . 229, 235, 236, 239
- Run'nymedè . . . . . 95
- Rupert, Prince . . . . . 225, 226, 227
- Russell, Lord John . . . . . 350, 351, 355
- Russell, Lord William . . . . . 252
- Russia 198, 338, 341, 342, 364, 367, 370
- Rye House plot . . . . . 251
- Rys'wick, peace of . . . . . 270
- Sacheverell (să-shěv'ēr-ěl), Dr. . . . . 278
- St. Albans (ăl'banz), battles of . . . . . 144, 145
- St. He-le'na . . . . . 344, 402
- St. Vincent, battle of . . . . . 327
- Saladin . . . . . 84
- Salisbury (sălz'bēr-f), Lord . . . . . 386, 404
- Sarajevo (să'ră-yă-vô) . . . . . 413
- Sa-voy' . . . . . 275
- Saxon Kings . . . . . 37
- Saxons . . . . . 26-32
- Schleswig-Holstein (shlăs'vîk-höl'shtîn) . . . . . 411
- Schools . . . . . 45, 175, 176, 294, 378, 405
- Scotland, . . . . . 60, 105, 108, 110, 111, 129, 186, 277
- Scots of Ireland . . . . . 23, 26, 60
- Scott, Sir Walter . . . . . 346
- "Scrap of Paper" . . . . . 413
- Scrooby . . . . . 211
- Scu'tage . . . . . 61, 78
- Scutari (skōō'tă-rē) . . . . . 370
- Sebas'topol . . . . . 368
- Sedgemoor, battle of . . . . . 257
- Self-government . . . . . 27, 28, 126, 386
- Sen'lac Hill . . . . . 52
- Separatists . . . . . 194
- Sepoy Rebellion . . . . . 371-373
- Septennial Act . . . . . 286
- Serbia . . . . . 413
- Serfs or villeins . . . . . 119, 128
- Settlement, Act of . . . . . 272
- Seven Weeks' War . . . . . 411
- Seven Years' War . . . . . 305-307
- Seymour (sē'môr), Jane . . . . . 170
- Shaftesbury, Lord . . . . . 243, 250, 251

- Shakespeare, William . . . . . 11, 200  
 Sheriff . . . . . 44, 77  
 Sher-iff-muir', battle of . . . . . 285  
 Shield money . . . . . 61, 78  
 Ship money . . . . . 218, 219, 222  
 Shrewsbury, battle of . . . . . 134, 135  
 Sidney, Algernon . . . . . 252  
 Sidney, Sir Philip . . . . . 189  
 Simnel, Lambert . . . . . 159  
 Sinn Fein (shĭn fān) . . . . . 430  
 Slave . . . . . 27, 119  
 Slave trade . . . . . 189  
 Slavery abolished . . . . . 357  
 Slidell', John . . . . . 377  
 Smith, Adam . . . . . 317  
 Smuts (smōōts), Jan . . . . . 417  
 Somme (sōm), battle of the . . . . . 421  
 South Africa Company . . . . . 388  
 South African Republic . . . . . 383  
 South Sea Company . . . . . 286, 287  
 Spain,  
     184, 188-195, 208, 209, 271, 290, 291  
 Spanish Succession, War of the  
     271, 274-277  
 Spence, Herbert . . . . . 396  
 Spenser, Edmund . . . . . 200  
 Sphere of influence . . . . . 403  
 Spinning jenny . . . . . 321  
 Spurs, battle of the . . . . . 163  
 Stamford Bridge, battle of . . . . . 51  
 Stamp Act . . . . . 309, 310  
 Standard, battle of the . . . . . 72, 73  
 Staples . . . . . 125  
 Star Chamber Court . . . . . 158, 220, 222  
 Steam engine . . . . . 322, 323, 324  
 Steelyard . . . . . 125  
 Stephen . . . . . 71-73  
 Stephenson, George . . . . . 353  
 Stone Age . . . . . 12  
 Stone of Destiny . . . . . 106  
 Stonehenge (stōn'hēnj) . . . . . 19  
 Strafford, Earl of . . . . . 217, 220, 221  
 Straw, Jack . . . . . 127  
 Strikes . . . . . 392  
 Strongbow . . . . . 82, 83  
 Stuart, House of . . . . . 203  
 Stur'dee, Admiral . . . . . 423  
 Submarines . . . . . 422  
 Succession, Act of . . . . . 169  
 Sudan (sōō-dān') . . . . . 384, 385, 387  
 Suetonius (swe-tō'nĭ-us) . . . . . 21, 22  
 Suez' Canal . . . . . 382  
 Suffolk, Duke of . . . . . 143  
 Suffrage, the 311, 350, 356, 378, 380, 385  
 Supremacy, Act of . . . . . 169  
 Surajah (sōō-rā'jā) Dow'lah . . . . . 301  
 Surat (sōō-rāt') . . . . . 299  
 Sussex, ship . . . . . 424  
 Sweden . . . . . 272, 331, 332  
 Sweyn (swān) . . . . . 48  
 Swift, Jonathan . . . . . 281  
 Tab'ard Inn . . . . . 124  
 Tacitus (tās'ĭ-tūs) . . . . . 26-28  
 Talavera (tā-lā-vā'rā) . . . . . 341  
 Tariff, or duties 103, 214, 255, 318, 365-367  
 Tasma'nia . . . . . 364  
 Taxation Bill . . . . . 408  
 Taxes, 61, 78, 95, 108, 127, 136, 215; see  
     *Duty*  
 Tea tax . . . . . 311  
 Tel-el-Kebir (kě-bēr'), battle of . . . . . 384  
 Tennyson, Alfred . . . . . 394  
 Test Act . . . . . 249  
 Tewkesbury, battle of . . . . . 148  
 Thack'era, William Makepeace . . . . . 395  
 Thames (tēmz) . . . . . 16  
 Thane . . . . . 44  
 Thirty-nine Articles . . . . . 175  
 Thirty Years' War . . . . . 166, 167  
 Thorough, policy of . . . . . 220  
 Thralls . . . . . 27  
 Thurstan . . . . . 72  
 Ti-bet' Expedition . . . . . 406  
 Til'sit, treaty of . . . . . 338  
 Tippoo' Sahib (sā'hēb) . . . . . 330  
 Tobacco . . . . . 211  
 Toleration Act . . . . . 264  
 Tone, Wolfe . . . . . 333  
 Tory . . . . . 250, 251  
 Tos'tig . . . . . 51  
 Tournament . . . . . 88, 89  
 Tower of London . . . . . 56, 131  
 Town meeting and officers . . . . . 27, 28, 44  
 Towton, battle of . . . . . 145  
 Trade 160, 280, 289, 290, 297, 298, 318, 339  
     effect of crusades on . . . . . 86  
     with the East . . . . . 212  
 Trade combinations . . . . . 393, 394  
 Trades unions . . . . . 392  
 Traf-al-gar' . . . . . 337  
 Transportation . . . . . 320, 321, 352, 353  
 Transvaal (trāns-vāl') 383, 388-390, 405  
 "Trent" affair . . . . . 376  
 Triennial Act . . . . . 286  
 Triple Alliance . . . . . 412  
 Triple Entente (ān-tānt') . . . . . 412  
 Troyes (trwā), treaty of . . . . . 139  
 Trusts . . . . . 393, 394  
 Tudor, House of . . . . . 156  
 Tun'ge-mot . . . . . 27, 28  
 Tyler, Wat . . . . . 127, 128  
 Tyndall, John . . . . . 396  
 Ty-rone', Earl of . . . . . 196  
 Uniformity, Act of . . . . . 175

- Union of South Africa . . . . . 406  
 Union with Ireland, Act of . . . . . 334  
 Union with Scotland, Act of . . . . . 277  
 United Irishmen . . . . . 333  
 United States . 315, 344, 352, 376, 377  
 Utrecht (ū'trēkt), peace of . . . 279, 290  
  
 Vagrant Act . . . . . 174  
 Van Tromp, Admiral . . . . . 234  
 Venice, trade routes of . . . . . 126, 164  
 Verdun (vēr-dūn') . . . . . 421  
 Versailles (vēr-sālz'), treaty of (1783) 315  
     Congress . . . . . 427  
     peace treaty (1919) . . . . . 427  
 Victoria . . . . . 359, 360, 386, 390  
 Victorian Age . . . . . 404  
 Vill . . . . . 44, 119  
 Villeins and villenage . . . . . 119, 128  
 Villeneuve (vēl-nēv') . . . . . 336, 337  
 Villiers (vīl'lērz), Charles . . . . . 366  
 Villiers, George, Duke of Bucking-  
     ham . . . . . 209, 214, 215  
 Vimeiro (vē-mā'ē-rōō) . . . . . 340  
 Vimy (vē-mē') Ridge . . . . . 421  
 Vinegar Hill . . . . . 333  
 Vittoria (vēt-tō'rē-ā), battle of . . . 342  
 Vor'tigern . . . . . 28, 29  
  
 Wagram (vā'grām), battle of . . . . . 341  
 Wakefield, battle of . . . . . 145  
 Wales . . . . . 31, 104, 134  
 Wallace, William . . . . . 108  
 Walls, Roman . . . . . 23  
 Walpole, Sir Robert . . . . . 285, 288  
 Walter, Hubert . . . . . 89  
 War of 1812 . . . . . 344  
 Warbeck, Perkin . . . . . 160  
 Wars of the Roses . . . . . 143-148, 154  
 Warwick (wōr'ik), Earl of . . . . . 146-148  
 Washington, George . . . . . 302, 313  
 Waterloo', battle of . . . . . 343  
 Watt, James . . . . . 322, 323  
 Wedmore, peace of . . . . . 41-43  
  
 Wellington, Arthur Wellesley, Duke  
     of . . . . . 330, 340, 341, 343, 351, 357  
 Wentworth, Thomas . . . . . 217, 220, 221  
 Wesley, John . . . . . 294-296  
 Wesleyan movement . . . . . 296  
 Wessex . . . . . 31, 32, 39  
 Westminster Abbey . . . . . 58, 97, 161  
 Wexford . . . . . 233  
 Whig . . . . . 250, 251  
 Whitby, council at . . . . . 36  
 "White Ship" . . . . . 70  
 Whitefield (whīt'fēld), George . . . . . 294, 295  
 Wilberforce, William . . . . . 319  
 Wilkes (wīlks), John . . . . . 311, 312  
 William I. . . . . 50, 57-65  
 William II. . . . . 65-67  
 William III. . . . . 249, 262-272  
 William IV. . . . . 354-358  
 Windsor, House of . . . . . 284  
 Winthrop, John . . . . . 240  
 Wit'e-na-ge-mote . . . . . 44, 64  
 Wolfe, General . . . . . 306  
 Wolseley (wōōlz'li), Sir Garnet . . . . . 384  
 Wolsey (wōōl'zi), Thomas . . . . . 165, 167  
 Woman suffrage . . . . . 428  
 Woodville, Elizabeth . . . . . 147  
 Wool . . . . . 115, 143, 197  
 Worcester (wōōs'tēr), battle of . . . . . 233  
 Wordsworth, William . . . . . 347  
 World's fair, first . . . . . 367  
 World War . . . . . 411-427  
 Wren, Sir Christopher . . . . . 247, 270  
 Wyatt's Rebellion . . . . . 178, 179  
 Wye'lif, John . . . . . 122  
  
 York, House of . . . . . 146  
 York, James, Duke of . . . . . 249-253, 254  
 York, Richard, Duke of . . . . . 143, 145  
 Ypres (ē'pr') . . . . . 415, 421  
  
 Zulu (zōō'lōō) War . . . . . 383  
 Zut'phen, battle of . . . . . 189